NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS
This TM series is used for documentation and timely communication of preliminary results, interim reports, or special purpose information. The TMs have not received complete formal review, editorial control, or detailed editing.

DRAFT U.S. PACIFIC MARINE MAMMAL STOCK ASSESSMENTS: 2010

James V. Carretta[1], Karin A. Forney[2], Erin Oleson[3],
Karen Martien[1], Marcia M. Muto[4], Mark S. Lowry[1],
Jay Barlow[1], Jason Baker[3], , Brad Hanson[5],
Deanna Lynch[6], Lilian Carswell[7], Robert L. Brownell Jr.[8],
Jooke Robbins[9], David K. Mattila[10], Katherine Ralls[11], and Marie C. Hill[3]

with contributions from
Patrick Opay, Brent Norberg, Jeff Laake,
Dan Lawson, Joe Cordaro, Elizabeth Petras,
Dale Sweetnam, and Chris Yates

NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-xxx
U. S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
National Marine Fisheries Service
Southwest Fisheries Science Center

1 - NOAA Fisheries, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 N. Torrey Pines Ct., La Jolla, CA 92037
2 - NOAA Fisheries, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 110 Shaffer Road, Santa Cruz, CA 95060.
3 - NOAA Fisheries, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, 2570 Dole Street, Honolulu, HI 96822.
4 - NOAA Fisheries, NOAA Fisheries, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way, N.E., Seattle, WA 98115.
5 - NOAA Fisheries, Northwest Fisheries Science Center, 2725 Montlake Boulevard, East Seattle WA 98112.
6 - U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Western Washington Fish and Wildlife Office, 510 Desmond Drive SE, Suite 102, Lacey, WA 98503.
7 - U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2493 Portola Road, Suite B, Ventura, California, 9300
8 - NOAA Fisheries, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 1352 Lighthouse Ave., Pacific Grove, CA 93950.
9 - Provincetown Center for Coastal Studies, 5 Holway Avenue, Provincetown, MA 02657.
10 - NOAA Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary, 6600 Kalaniana'ole Hwy, #301, Honolulu, HI 96825.
11 - Center for Conservation and Evolutionary Genetics, National Zoological Park, Smithsonian Institution, PO Box 37012, MCR 5503, Washington DC 20013-7012.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Draft stock assessment reports and appendices revised in 2010 are highlighted; all others will be reprinted in the as they appear in the 2009 Pacific Region Stock Assessment Reports (Carretta *et al.* 2010).

PINNIPEDS

CALIFORNIA SEA LION (*Zalophus californianus californianus*): U.S. Stock....x
HARBOR SEAL (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*): California Stock....x
HARBOR SEAL (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*): Oregon & Washington Coast Stock....1
HARBOR SEAL (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*): Washington Inland Waters Stock....9
NORTHERN ELEPHANT SEAL (*Mirounga angustirostris*): California Breeding Stock....xx
GUADALUPE FUR SEAL (*Arctocephalus townsendi*)....xx
NORTHERN FUR SEAL (*Callorhinus ursinus*): San Miguel Island Stock....17
HAWAIIAN MONK SEAL (*Monachus schauinslandi*)....23

CETACEANS - U.S. WEST COAST

HARBOR PORPOISE (*Phocoena phocoena vomerina*): Morro Bay Stock....xx
HARBOR PORPOISE (*Phocoena phocoena vomerina*): Monterey Bay Stock....xx
HARBOR PORPOISE (*Phocoena phocoena vomerina*): San Francisco-Russian River Stock....xx
HARBOR PORPOISE (*Phocoena phocoena vomerina*): Northern California/Southern Oregon Stock....xx
HARBOR PORPOISE (*Phocoena phocoena vomerina*): Northern Oregon/Washington Coast Stock....xx
HARBOR PORPOISE (*Phocoena phocoena vomerina*): Washington Inland Waters Stock....xx
DALL'S PORPOISE (*Phocoenoides dalli dalli*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....31
PACIFIC WHITE-SIDED DOLPHIN (*Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*):
California/Oregon/Washington, Northern and Southern Stocks....36
RISSO'S DOLPHIN (*Grampus griseus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....42
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): California Coastal Stock....xx
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*):
California/Oregon/Washington Offshore Stock....47
STRIPED DOLPHIN (*Stenella coeruleoalba*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....52
SHORT-BEAKED COMMON DOLPHIN (*Delphinus delphis delphis*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....56
LONG-BEAKED COMMON DOLPHIN (*Delphinus capensis capensis*): California Stock....63
NORTHERN RIGHT-WHALE DOLPHIN (*Lissodelphis borealis*): California/Oregon/Washington....69
KILLER WHALE (*Orcinus orca*): Eastern North Pacific Offshore Stock....74
KILLER WHALE (*Orcinus orca*): Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident Stock....80
SHORT-FINNED PILOT WHALE (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*): California/Oregon/Washington....86
BAIRD'S BEAKED WHALE (*Berardius bairdii*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....91
MESOPLODONT BEAKED WHALES (*Mesoplodon* spp.): California/Oregon/Washington Stocks....95
CUVIER'S BEAKED WHALE (*Ziphius cavirostris*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....100
PYGMY SPERM WHALE (*Kogia breviceps*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....104
DWARF SPERM WHALE (*Kogia sima*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....109
SPERM WHALE (*Physeter macrocephalus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....113
HUMPBACK WHALE (*Megaptera novaeangliae*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....119
BLUE WHALE (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*): Eastern North Pacific Stock....128
FIN WHALE (*Balaenoptera physalus physalus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....135
SEI WHALE (*Balaenoptera borealis borealis*): Eastern North Pacific Stock....140
MINKE WHALE (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata scammoni*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock....145

CETACEANS – HAWAII & WESTERN PACIFIC

ROUGH-TOOTHED DOLPHIN (*Steno bredanensis*): Hawaiian Stock 150
ROUGH-TOOTHED DOLPHIN (*Steno bredanensis*): American Samoa Stock (new) 153
RISSO'S DOLPHIN (*Grampus griseus*): Hawaiian Stock 156
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): Hawaii Pelagic 161
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): Kaua'I and Ni'ihau Stock (new) 161
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): O'ahu Stock (new) 161
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): 4 Islands Region Stock (new) 161
COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): Hawaii Island (new) 161
PANTROPICAL SPOTTED DOLPHIN (*Stenella attenuata attenuata*): Hawaiian Stock 173
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): Hawaii Pelagic Stock 178
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): Hawaii (island) Stock (new) 178
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): O'ahu / 4 Islands Stock (new) 178
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): Kaua'I / Ni'ihau Stock (new) 178
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): Kure / Midway Stock (new) 178
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): Pearl and Hermes Reef Stock (new) 178
SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): American Samoa Stock (new) 183
STRIPED DOLPHIN (*Stenella coeruleoalba*): Hawaiian Stock 186
FRASER'S DOLPHIN (*Lagenodelphis hosei*): Hawaiian Stock 190
MELON-HEADED WHALE (*Peponocephala electra*): Hawaiian Stock 193
PYGMY KILLER WHALE (*Feresa attenuata*): Hawaiian Stock 197
FALSE KILLER WHALE (*Pseudorca crassidens*): Pacific Islands Region Stocks (Hawaii Pelagic, Hawaii Insular, and Palmyra Atoll) 201
FALSE KILLER WHALE (*Pseudorca crassidens*): American Samoa Stock (new) 211
KILLER WHALE (*Orcinus orca*): Hawaiian Stock 214
SHORT-FINNED PILOT WHALE (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*): Hawaiian Stock 218
BLAINVILLE'S BEAKED WHALE (*Mesoplodon densirostris*): Hawaiian Stock 224
CUVIER'S BEAKED WHALE (*Ziphius cavirostris*): Hawaiian Stock 229
LONGMAN'S BEAKED WHALE (*Indopacetus pacificus*): Hawaiian Stock 233
PYGMY SPERM WHALE (*Kogia breviceps*): Hawaiian Stock 237
DWARF SPERM WHALE (*Kogia sima*): Hawaiian Stock 241
SPERM WHALE (*Physeter macrocephalus*): Hawaiian Stock 245
BLUE WHALE (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*): Central North Pacific Stock 250
FIN WHALE (*Balaenoptera physalus physalus*): Hawaiian Stock 254
BRYDE'S WHALE (*Balaenoptera edeni*): Hawaiian Stock 257
SEI WHALE (*Balaenoptera borealis borealis*): Hawaiian Stock 261
MINKE WHALE (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata scammoni*): Hawaiian Stock 264
HUMPBACK WHALE (*Megaptera novaeangliae)*: American Samoa Stock xxx

APPENDICES

APPENDIX 1: Description of U.S. Commercial Fisheries 267
APPENDIX 2: Cetacean Survey Effort xxx
APPENDIX 3: Summary of 2010 U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports 301
APPENDIX 4: Sea Otter stock assessments xxx

PREFACE

Under the 1994 amendments to the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA), the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) are required to publish Stock Assessment Reports for all stocks of marine mammals within U.S. waters, to review new information every year for strategic stocks and every three years for non-strategic stocks, and to update the stock assessment reports when significant new information becomes available. This draft 2010 Pacific marine mammal stock assessment report presents revised stock assessments for 63 Pacific marine mammal stocks under NMFS jurisdiction, including 12 "strategic" stocks, 48 "non-strategic" stocks, and three stocks of unknown status (see summary table in Appendix 3). Information on the remaining 12 Pacific region stocks will be reprinted without revision in the final 2010 reports and currently appears in the 2009 reports (Carretta *et al.* 2010). Twelve new stock assessments in the Pacific Islands region are included in the 2010 draft Pacific stock assessments for the first time, including six spinner dolphin stocks, four bottlenose dolphin stocks, one false killer whale stock, and one rough-toothed dolphin stock. New or revised abundance estimates are available for 41 stocks. Where available, information on subspecies designations has been included in these reports to reflect local taxonomic and conservation issues (Perrin 2009). Information updates for longline fisheries in the Pacific Islands region are also included in a fishery description appendix. Stock Assessments for Alaska region marine mammals are published by the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML) in a separate report.

Pacific region stock assessments include those studied by the Southwest Fisheries Science Center (SWFSC, La Jolla, California), the Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center (PIFSC, Honolulu, Hawaii), the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML, Seattle, Washington), and the Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC, Seattle, WA).

Draft versions of the 2010 stock assessment reports were reviewed by the Pacific Scientific Review Group at the November 2009 Pacific Scientific Review Group meeting. The authors also wish to thank those who provided unpublished data, especially Robin Baird and Joseph Mobley, who provided valuable information on Hawaiian cetaceans.

This is a working document and individual stock assessment reports will be updated as new information on marine mammal stocks and fisheries becomes available. Background information and guidelines for preparing stock assessment reports are reviewed in Wade and Angliss (1997). The authors solicit any new information or comments which would improve future stock assessment reports.

These Stock Assessment Reports summarize information from a wide range of original data sources and an extensive bibliography of all sources is given in each report. We strongly urge users of this document to refer to and cite *original* literature sources rather than citing this report or previous Stock Assessment Reports. If the original sources are not accessible, the citation should follow the format: [Original source], as cited in [this Stock Assessment Report citation].

Cover photograph: TBD

References:

Carretta, J.V., K.A. Forney, M.S. Lowry, J. Barlow, J. Baker, D. Johnston, Brad Hanson, Robert L. Brownell Jr., Jooke Robbins, David. K. Mattila, Katherine Ralls, M.M. Muto, Deanna Lynch, and Lilian Carswell. 2010. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2009. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-453. 336p.

Perrin, W.F. 2009. World Cetacea Database. Available online at http://www.marinespecies.org/cetacea.

Wade, P.R. and R.P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for assessing marine mammal stocks: Report of the GAMMS workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-12. Available from Office of Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD. 93p.

Revised ~~10/30/2007~~ 04/15/2010

HARBOR SEAL (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*): Oregon/Washington Coast Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Harbor seals inhabit coastal and estuarine waters off Baja California, north along the western coasts of the continental U.S., British Columbia, and Southeast Alaska, west through the Gulf of Alaska and Aleutian Islands, and in the Bering Sea north to Cape Newenham and the Pribilof Islands. They haul out on rocks, reefs, beaches, and drifting glacial ice and feed in marine, estuarine, and occasionally fresh waters. Harbor seals generally are non-migratory, with local movements associated with such factors as tides, weather, season, food availability, and reproduction (Scheffer and Slipp 1944; Fisher 1952; Bigg 1969, 1981). Harbor seals do not make extensive pelagic migrations, though some long distance movement of tagged animals in Alaska (174 km) and along the U.S. west coast (up to 550 km) have been recorded (Pitcher and McAllister 1981, Brown and Mate 1983, Herder 1986). Harbor seals have also displayed strong fidelity for haulout sites (Pitcher and Calkins 1979, Pitcher and McAllister 1981).

For management purposes, differences in mean pupping date (Temte 1986), movement patterns (Jeffries 1985, Brown 1988), pollutant loads (Calambokidis et al. 1985), and fishery interactions have led to the recognition of three separate harbor seal stocks along the west coast of the continental U.S. (Boveng 1988): 1) inland waters of Washington State (including Hood Canal, Puget Sound, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca out to Cape Flattery), 2) outer coast of Oregon and Washington, and 3) California (Fig. 1). ~~Recent g~~Genetic analyses provide additional support for this stock structure (Huber et al. 1994, 2010; Burg 1996~~,~~; Lamont et al. 1996). Samples from Washington, Oregon, and California demonstrate a high level of genetic diversity and indicate that the harbor seals of Washington inland waters possess unique haplotypes not found in seals from the coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California (Lamont et al. 1996). Recent genetic evidence suggests that the population of harbor seals in Washington inland waters has more structure than is currently recognized (Huber et al. 2010). This report considers only the Oregon/Washington Coast stock. Stock assessment reports for Washington Inland Waters and California harbor seals also appear in this volume. Harbor seal stocks that occur in the inland and coastal waters of Alaska are discussed separately in the Alaska Stock Assessment Reports. Harbor seals occurring in British Columbia are not included in any of the U.S. Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports.

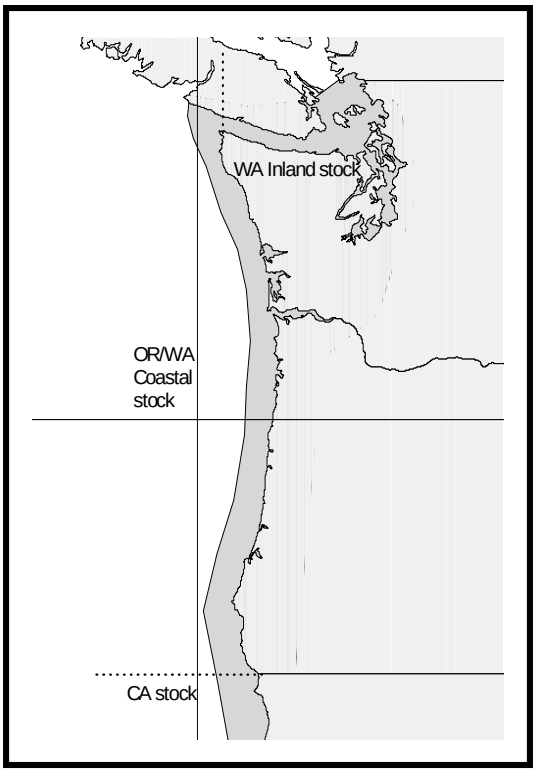


Figure 1. Approximate distribution of harbor seals in the U.S. Pacific Northwest (shaded area). Stock boundaries separating the three stocks are shown.

POPULATION SIZE

Aerial surveys of harbor seals in Oregon and Washington were conducted by personnel from the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML) and the Oregon and Washington Departments of Fish and Wildlife (ODFW and WDFW) during the 1999 pupping season. Total numbers of hauled-out seals (including pups) were counted during these surveys. In 1999, the mean count of harbor seals occurring along the Washington coast was 10,430 (CV=0.14) animals (Jeffries et al. 2003). In 1999, the mean count of harbor seals occurring along the Oregon coast and in the Columbia River was 5,735 (CV=0.14) animals (Brown 1997; ODFW, unpubl. data). Combining these counts results in 16,165 (CV=0.10) harbor seals in the Oregon/Washington Coast stock.

Radio-tagging studies conducted at six locations (three Washington inland waters sites and three Oregon and Washington coastal sites) collected information on haulout patterns from 63 harbor seals in 1991 and 61 harbor seals in 1992. Haulout data from coastal and inland sites were not significantly different and were thus pooled, resulting in a correction factor of 1.53 (CV=0.065) to account for animals in the water which are missed during the

aerial surveys (Huber et al. 2001). Using this correction factor results in a population estimate of 24,732 (16,165 x 1.53; CV=0.12) for the Oregon/Washington Coast stock of harbor seals in 1999 (Jeffries et al. 2003; ODFW, unpubl. data). However, because the most recent abundance estimate is >8 years old, there is no current estimate of abundance available for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

~~The minimum population estimate (N_{MIN}) for this stock is calculated as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of the 1999 population estimate of 24,732, which is 22,380 harbor seals.~~ No current information on abundance is available to obtain a minimum population estimate for the Oregon/Washington Coast stock of harbor seals.

Current Population Trend

Historical levels of harbor seal abundance in Oregon and Washington are unknown. The population apparently decreased during the 1940s and 1950s due to state-financed bounty programs. Approximately 17,133 harbor seals were killed in Washington by bounty hunters between 1943 and 1960 (Newby 1973). More than 3,800 harbor seals were killed in Oregon between 1925 and 1972 by bounty hunters and a state-hired seal hunter (Pearson 1968). The population remained relatively low during the 1960s but, since the termination of the harbor seal bounty program and with the protection provided by the passage of the MMPA in 1972, harbor seal counts for this stock have increased from 6,389 in 1977 to 16,165 in 1999 (Jeffries et al. 2003; ODFW, unpubl. data). Based on the analyses of Jeffries et al. (2003) and Brown et al. (2005), both the Washington and Oregon portions of this stock have reached carrying capacity and are no longer increasing (Fig. 2).

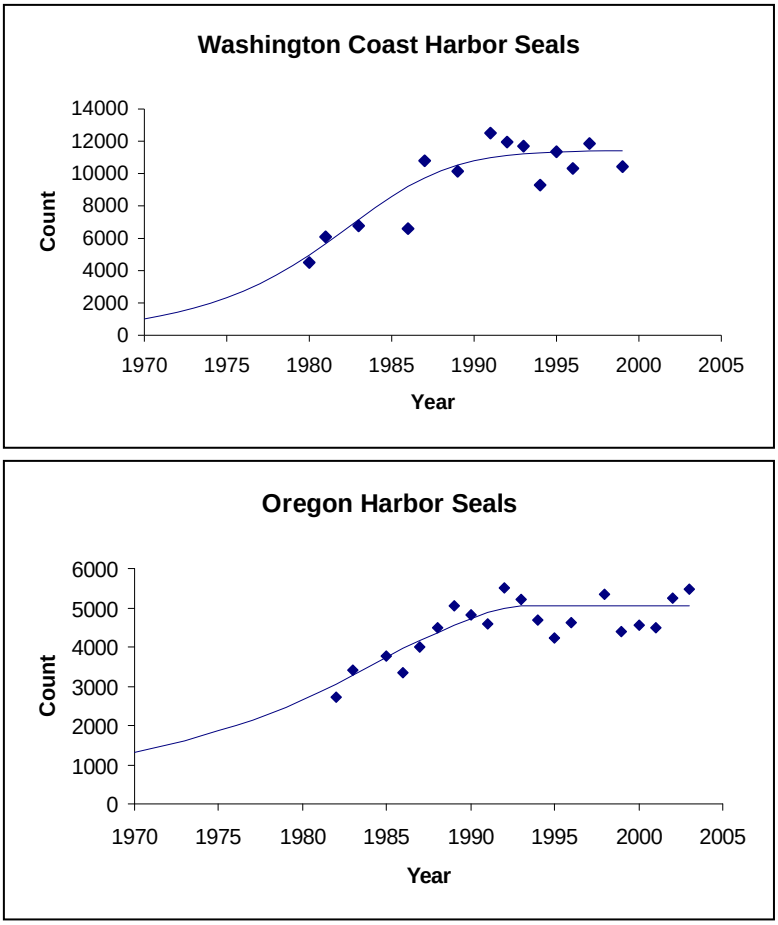


Figure 2. Generalized logistic growth curves of Washington Coast (Jeffries et al. 2003) and Oregon (Brown et al. 2005) harbor seals.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

The Oregon/Washington Coast harbor seal stock increased at an annual rate of 7% from 1983 to 1992 and at 4% from 1983 to 1996 (Jeffries et al. 1997). Because the population was not at a very low level by 1983, the observed rates of increase may underestimate the maximum net productivity rate (R_{MAX}). When a logistic model was fit to the Washington portion of the 1975-1999 abundance data, the resulting estimate of R_{MAX} was 18.5% (95% CI = 12.9-26.8%) (Jeffries et al. 2003). When a logistic model was fit to the Oregon portion of the 1977-2003 abundance data, estimates of R_{MAX} ranged from 6.4% (95% CI = 4.6-27%) for the south coast of Oregon to 10.1% (95% CI = 8.6-20%) for the north coast (Brown et al. 2005). Until a combined analysis for the entire stock is completed, the pinniped default maximum theoretical net productivity rate (R_{MAX}) of 12% will be used for this harbor seal stock (Wade and Angliss 1997).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

~~The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population estimate (22,380) times one-half the default maximum net growth rate for pinnipeds (½ of 12%) times a recovery factor of 1.0 (for stocks within OSP, Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 1,343 harbor seals per year.~~ Because there is no current estimate of minimum abundance, a potential biological removal (PBR) cannot be calculated for this stock.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fisheries Information

Fishing effort in the northern Washington marine set gillnet tribal fishery (areas 4, 4A, 4B, and 5) is conducted within the range of both stocks of harbor seals (Oregon/Washington Coast and Washington Inland Waters) occurring in Washington State waters. Some movement of animals between Washington's coastal and inland waters is likely, although data from tagging studies have not shown movement of harbor seals between the two locations (Huber et al. 2001). For the purposes of this stock assessment report, the animals taken in waters south and west of Cape Flattery, WA (areas 4 and 4A), are assumed to have belonged to the Oregon/Washington Coast stock, and Table 1 includes data only from that portion of the fishery. ~~NMFS o~~Observers monitored 100% ~~of the 50 net days (1 net day equals a 100 fathom length net set for 24 hours)~~ of the fishing effort in coastal area 4A ~~waters~~ in 2004 and 2008 and reported five harbor seal deaths in 2004 and one in 2008~~-2000~~; no fishing effort occurred in this area ~~the coastal portion of the fishery~~ in 2005-2007 ~~2001-2003; and complete records of observer coverage and fishing effort in 2004 are not available, but one vessel fished at least 60 net days in areas 4 and 4A and the vessel operator reported six harbor seal deaths~~ (~~Gearin et al. 1994, 2000; P. Gearin, unpubl. data;~~ N. Pamplin, unpubl. data; Jon Scordino, unpubl. data). There was no observer coverage in coastal area 4 in 2004; however, there was one fisher self-report of a harbor seal mortality in this area. No fishing effort has occurred in area 4 since 2004. The mean estimated mortality for this fishery in ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008 is ~~0.8~~ 1.2 (CV=0) harbor seals per year from observer data plus ~~1.2~~ 0.2 seals per year from fisher self-reports.

The Washington/Oregon/California (WA/OR/CA) groundfish trawl fishery (Pacific hake at-sea processing component) was monitored for incidental take during ~~2000-2004~~ 2002-2006 (~~Perez 2003; J. Cusick, unpubl. data~~ NWFSC 2008), and harbor seal ~~mortality~~ deaths were observed ~~occurred~~ in ~~2000 and~~ 2004, 2005, and 2006. The mean estimated mortality for this fishery in ~~2000-2004~~ 2002-2006 is ~~0.6~~ 0.4 (CV=~~0.35~~ 0.30) harbor seals per year.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and serious injury of harbor seals (Oregon/Washington Coast stock) in commercial and tribal fisheries that might take this species and calculation of the mean annual mortality rate; n/a indicates that data are not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008 data unless otherwise noted.

Fishery name	Years	Data type	Percent observer coverage	Observed mortality	Estimated mortality	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
Northern WA marine set gillnet (tribal fishery in coastal waters: area~~s 4 and~~ 4A)	~~2000~~	observer data	~~100%~~	~~3~~	~~3 (0)~~	~~0.8 (0)[1]~~
	~~2001~~		~~no fishery~~	~~0~~	~~0 (0)~~	1.2 (0)
	~~2002~~		~~no fishery~~	~~0~~	~~0 (0)~~	
	~~2003~~		~~no fishery~~	~~0~~	~~0 (0)~~	
	2004		~~unknown[2]~~100%	~~n/a~~ 5	~~n/a~~ 5 (0)	
	2005		no fishery	0	0 (0)	
	2006		no fishery	0	0 (0)	
	2007		no fishery	0	0 (0)	
	2008		100%	1	1 (0)	
Northern WA marine set gillnet (tribal fishery in coastal waters: area 4)[1]	2004	fisher self-reports		~~6~~ 1	n/a	~~1.2 (n/a)~~ ≥0.2 (n/a)

Fishery name	Years	Data type	Percent observer coverage	Observed mortality	Estimated mortality	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
WA/OR/CA groundfish trawl (Pacific hake at-sea processing component)	~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ 2002 2003 2004 2005 2006	observer data	~~80.6%[3]~~ ~~96.2%[3]~~ 100%[~~4~~2] 100%[~~4~~2] 100%[~~4~~2] 100%[2] 100%[2]	~~2~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 ~~1~~ 0 1 1	~~2 (0.21)~~ ~~0 (0)~~ 0 (0) 0 (0) ~~1~~ 0 (0) 1 (0.42) 1 (0.44)	~~0.6 (0.35)~~ 0.4 (0.30)
WA Grays Harbor salmon drift gillnet[3]	1991-1993	observer data	4-5%	0, 1, 1	0, 10, 10	~~6.7 (0.50)~~ see text[3]
WA Willapa Bay drift gillnet[3]	1991-1993	observer data	1-3%	0, 0, 0	0, 0, 0	~~0~~ see text[3]
WA Willapa Bay drift gillnet[3]	1990-1993	fisher self-reports	n/a	0, 0, 6, 8	n/a	~~≥3.5 (n/a)~~ see text[3]
Unknown ~~w~~West ~~c~~Coast fisheries	~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008	stranding data	n/a	~~0, 0, 0, 4, 0~~ 0, 0, 0, 0, 0	n/a	~~≥0.8 (n/a)~~ 0
Minimum total annual takes						~~≥13.6 (0.41)~~ ≥1.8 (0.08)

~~[1]2000-2003 mortality estimates are included in the average.~~
~~[2]Complete records of observer coverage in 2004 are not available.~~
~~[3]Percent observer coverage equals percent of observed catch; observers were present on 100% of the vessels.~~
[1]There has not been a marine set gillnet tribal fishery in area 4 since 2004.
[~~4~~2]Percent observer coverage equals percent of vessels with observers.
[3]This fishery has not been observed since 1993 (see text); these data are not included in the calculation of recent minimum total annual takes.

The Washington and Oregon Lower Columbia River drift gillnet fishery was monitored during the entire year in 1991-1993 (Brown and Jeffries 1993, Matteson et al. 1993c, Matteson and Langton 1994a). Harbor seal mortality, incidental to the fishery, was observed only in the winter season and was extrapolated to estimate total harbor seal mortality. However, the structure of the fishery has changed substantially since the 1991-1992 fishing seasons, and this level of take no longer applies to the current fishery (see Appendix 1). The Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife (ODFW) conducted test fisheries in the lower Columbia River in 2000-2002 to evaluate the use of small-mesh (3½"-6") tangle (tooth) nets in commercial, spring chinook fisheries to effectively harvest target stocks, while allowing the live release of non-target stocks and species (G. Whisler, pers. comm.). An experimental commercial permit fishery and a full-fleet commercial demonstration fishery were also conducted in 2001 and 2002, respectively, to test the small-mesh gear. Due to high steelhead bycatch in the 2002 fishery, harvest managers used in-season test fishing during the 2003 and 2004 fishing seasons to determine the optimum timing and gear requirements for each subsequent full-fleet commercial fishing period. Both large-mesh (8-9.75") and small-mesh tangle net (≤4.25") fishing periods were adopted in each year, although the 2003 season was severely curtailed to limit the catch of spring chinook stocks listed under the Endangered Species Act (ESA). With the focus on greater selectivity in winter/spring commercial salmon fisheries, levels of observer coverage were much higher in 2002-2004 than in previous years. To meet management needs, this increased level of observer coverage in test fisheries and full-fleet commercial fisheries is expected to continue into the foreseeable future (J. North and G. Whisler, pers. comm.). Data on marine mammal interactions (predation, entanglement) recorded by observers during the permit and demonstration commercial fisheries in 2001-2002 and the full-fleet commercial fisheries in 2003-2004 have not yet been summarized; however, no marine mammal mortality or serious injuries were reported to NMFS by vessel operators.

The Washington Grays Harbor salmon drift gillnet fishery was also monitored in 1991-1993 (Herczeg et al. 1992a; Matteson and Molinaar 1992; Matteson et al. 1993a; Matteson and Langton 1994b, 1994c). During the 3-year period, 98, 307, and 241 sets were monitored, representing approximately 4-5% observer coverage in each year. No mortality was recorded in 1991. In 1992, observers recorded one harbor seal mortality incidental to the fishery, resulting in an extrapolated estimated total kill of 10 seals (CV=1.0). In 1993, observers recorded one harbor seal mortality incidental to the fishery, though a total kill was not extrapolated. Similar observer coverage in 1992 and

1993 (4.2% and 4.4%, respectively) suggests that 10 is also a reasonable estimate of the total kill in 1993. Thus, the mean estimated mortality for this fishery in 1991-1993 is 6.7 (CV=0.50) harbor seals per year ~~(Table 1)~~. No observer data are available for this fishery after 1993, however, harbor seal takes are unlikely to have increased since the fishery was last observed, due to reductions in the number of participating vessels and available fishing time (see details in Appendix 1). Fishing effort and catch have declined throughout all salmon fisheries in the region due to management efforts to recover ESA-listed salmonids.

The Washington Willapa Bay drift gillnet fishery was also monitored at low levels of observer coverage in 1991-1993 (Herczeg et al. 1992a, 1992b; Matteson and Molinaar 1992; Matteson et al. 1993b; Matteson and Langton 1994c, 1994d). In those years, 752, 576, and 452 sets were observed, representing approximately 2.5%, 1.4%, and 3.1% observer coverage, respectively. No harbor seal mortality was reported by observers. However, because mortality was self-reported by fishers in 1992 and 1993, the low level of observer coverage failed to document harbor seal mortality that had apparently occurred. Due to the low level of observer coverage for this fishery, the self-reported fishery mortality has been included in Table 1 and represents a minimum mortality estimate resulting from that fishery (3.5 harbor seals per year). Harbor seal takes are unlikely to have increased since the fishery was last observed in 1993, due to reductions in the number of participating vessels and available fishing time (see details in Appendix 1).

Combining ~~the~~ recent estimates from the northern Washington marine set tribal gillnet (~~0.8~~ 1.2 from observer data + ~~1.2~~ 0.2 from fisher self-reports), and WA/OR/CA groundfish trawl (~~0.6~~ 0.4 from observer data), ~~Washington Grays Harbor salmon drift gillnet (6.7), and Washington Willapa Bay drift gillnet (3.5 from fisher self-reports)~~ fisheries results in an estimated mean mortality rate of ~~12.8~~ 1.8 harbor seals per year from these fisheries.

The Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP) fisher self-reports, required of commercial vessel operators by the MMPA, are an additional source of information on the number of harbor seals killed or seriously injured incidental to commercial fishery operations. Between ~~2000 and 2004~~ 2002 and 2006, there were ~~no~~ two fisher self-reports of harbor seal ~~mortality~~ deaths in the WA/OR/CA groundfish trawl (Pacific hake at-sea processing) fishery ~~from any MMAP-listed fishery operating in waters off the coasts of Oregon or Washington~~. Since this is an observed fishery, these deaths are not included in Table 1. Although these reports are considered incomplete (see details in Appendix 1), they represent a minimum mortality. ~~In 2002 one harbor seal from this stock was reported incidentally taken in an in-river gillnet test fishery in southern Oregon, and one harbor seal mortality was reported in a Washington coastal river gillnet fishery in 2003.~~

Strandings of harbor seals entangled in fishing gear or with serious injuries caused by interactions with gear are a final source of fishery-related mortality information. According to Northwest Marine Mammal Stranding Network records, maintained by the NMFS Northwest Region (NMFS, Northwest Regional Office, unpubl. data), there were no fishery-related strandings of harbor seals from this stock reported in 2004-2008, resulting in an average annual mortality of zero harbor seals. ~~A fishery-related stranding, in which four harbor seals were entangled in derelict gillnet gear in the Columbia River, was reported in 2003 (B. Norberg, pers. comm.). Since the gear could not be attributed to a particular fishery, this mortality is listed in Table 1 as occurring in an unknown west coast fishery. Fishery-related strandings during 2000-2004 resulted in an estimated annual mortality of 0.8 harbor seals from this stock.~~ This estimate is considered a minimum because not all stranded animals are found, reported, or examined for cause of death (via necropsy by trained personnel).

Other Mortality

According to Northwest Marine Mammal Stranding Network records, maintained by the NMFS Northwest Region (NMFS, Northwest Regional Office, unpubl. data), a total of ~~eight~~ 10 human-caused harbor seal deaths or serious injuries were reported from non-fisheries sources in ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008. Seven animals were shot ~~(one each in 2000 and 2004, two in 2001, and three in 2002)~~, two ~~and one~~ animals were ~~was~~ struck by ~~a~~ boats, ~~in 2004~~ and one animal was entangled in line, resulting in an estimated mortality of ~~1.6~~ 2.0 harbor seals per year from this stock. This estimate is considered a minimum because not all stranded animals are found, reported, or examined for cause of death (via necropsy by trained personnel).

Subsistence Harvests by Northwest Treaty Indian Tribes

~~Pacific Northwest treaty Indian tribes may have tribal regulations allowing tribal members to exercise treaty rights for subsistence harvest of harbor seals. There have been only a few reported takes of harbor seals from directed tribal subsistence hunts. It is possible that very few seals have been taken in directed hunts because tribal fishers use seals caught incidentally to fishing operations for their subsistence needs before undertaking a ceremonial or subsistence hunt.~~ Tribal subsistence takes of this stock may occur, but no data on recent takes are available.

STATUS OF STOCK

Harbor seals are not considered to be "depleted" under the MMPA or listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the ESA. Based on currently available data, the level of human-caused mortality and serious injury ~~(13.6 + 1.6 = 15.2)~~ is 3.8 (1.8 + 2.0) harbor seals per year ~~not known to exceed the PBR (1,343)~~. A PBR cannot be calculated for this stock because there is no current abundance estimate. The previous estimate of PBR was 1,343 (Carretta et al. 2009). Human-caused mortality relative to PBR is unknown, but it is considered to be small relative to the stock size. Therefore, the Oregon/Washington Coast stock of harbor seals is not classified as a "strategic" stock. The minimum total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock (~~13.6:~~ based on recent observer data (~~8.1~~ 1.6) and self-reported fisheries information (~~4.7~~ 0.2) or stranding data (~~0.8~~ 0) where observer data were not available or failed to detect harbor seal mortality) is 1.8 ~~less than 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, appears to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate~~. Since a PBR cannot be calculated for this stock, fishery mortality relative to PBR is unknown. The stock is within its Optimum Sustainable Population (OSP) level (Jeffries et al. 2003, Brown et al. 2005).

REFERENCES

Bigg, M. A. 1969. The harbour seal in British Columbia. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. Bull. 172. 33 pp.

Bigg, M. A. 1981. Harbour seal, *Phoca vitulina*, Linnaeus, 1758 and *Phoca largha*, Pallas, 1811. Pp. 1-27, *In:* Ridgway, S. H., and R. J. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals. Vol. 2: Seals. Academic Press, New York. 359 pp.

Boveng, P. 1988. Status of the Pacific harbor seal population on the U.S. west coast. Admin. Report LJ-88-06. Southwest Fisheries Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 43 pp.

Brown, R. F. 1988. Assessment of pinniped populations in Oregon: April 1984 to April 1985. NWAFC Processed Report 88-05. 44 pp. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Brown, R. F. 1997. Abundance of Pacific harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in Oregon: 1977-1996. Oregon Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Wildlife Diversity Program, Tech. Report No. 97-6-04. 12 pp.

Brown, R. F., and S. J. Jeffries. 1993. Preliminary report on estimated marine mammal mortality in Columbia River fall and winter salmon gillnet fisheries, 1991-1992. Unpubl. Report. Columbia River Area Gillnet Fishery Observer Program. 13 pp. Available at Oregon Dept. Fish and Wildlife, 2040 SE Marine Science Dr., Newport, OR 97365.

Brown, R. F., and B. R. Mate. 1983. Abundance, movements, and feeding habits of the harbor seal, *Phoca vitulina*, at Netarts and Tillamook Bays, Oregon. Fish. Bull. 81:291-301.

Brown, R. F., B. E. Wright, S. D. Riemer, and J. Laake. 2005. Trends in abundance and current status of harbor seals in Oregon: 1977-2003. Mar. Mammal Sci. 21(4):657-670.

Burg, T. M. 1996. Genetic analysis of eastern Pacific harbour seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) from British Columbia and parts of Alaska using mitochondrial DNA and microsatellites. MS Thesis, Univ. of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC. 77 pp.

Calambokidis, J., S. Speich, J. Peard, G. Steiger, D. M. Fry, J. Lowenstine, and J. Cubbage. 1985. Biology of Puget Sound marine mammals and marine birds: Population health and evidence of pollution effects. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOS-OMA-18. 159 pp.

Carretta, J. V., K. A. Forney, M. S. Lowry, J. Barlow, J. Baker, D. Johnston, B. Hanson, M. M. Muto, D. Lynch, and L. Carswell. 2009. U.S. Pacific marine mammal stock assessments: 2008. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-434. 336 pp.

~~Cusick, J. West Coast Groundfish Observer Program, Fishery Resource Analysis and Monitoring Division, NWFSC, NMFS, 2725 Montlake Blvd. E, Seattle, WA 98112.~~

Fisher, H. D. 1952. The status of the harbour seal in British Columbia, with particular reference to the Skeena River. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. Bull. 93. 58 pp.

~~Gearin, P. J. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

~~Gearin, P. J., S. R. Melin, R. L. DeLong, H. Kajimura, and M. A. Johnson. 1994. Harbor porpoise interactions with a chinook salmon set-net fishery in Washington State. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:427-438.~~

~~Gearin, P. J., M. E. Gosho, J. L. Laake, L. Cooke, R. L. DeLong, and K. M. Hughes. 2000. Experimental testing of acoustic alarms (pingers) to reduce bycatch of harbour porpoise, *Phocoena phocoena*, in the state of Washington. J. Cetacean Res. Manage. 2(1):1-9.~~

Herczeg, K. M., A. A. Abajian, and V. M. C. Molinaar. 1992a. Summary report on the 1991 summer dip-in salmon gillnet fisheries in Willapa Bay and Grays Harbor. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries

Commission, Astoria, OR. 10 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Herczeg, K. M., V. M. C. Molinaar, and A. A. Abajian. 1992b. Summary report on the 1991 fall Willapa Bay salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 10 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Herder, M. J. 1986. Seasonal movements and hauling site fidelity of harbor seals, *Phoca vitulina richardsi*, tagged at the Klamath River, California. MA Thesis, Humboldt State Univ., Arcata, CA. 52 pp.

Huber, H., S. Jeffries, R. Brown, and R. DeLong. 1994. Harbor seal, *Phoca vitulina richardsi*, stock assessment in Washington and Oregon, 1993. 1993 Annual Report to the MMPA Assessment Program, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, NOAA, 1335 East-West Highway, Silver Spring, MD 20910. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Huber, H. R., S. J. Jeffries, R. F. Brown, R. L. DeLong, and G. VanBlaricom. 2001. Correcting aerial survey counts of harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in Washington and Oregon. Mar. Mammal Sci. 17(2):276-293.

Huber, H. R., S. J. Jeffries, D. M. Lambourn, and B. R. Dickerson. 2010. Population substructure of harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in Washington State using mtDNA. Can. J. Zool. 88:280-288.

Jeffries, S. J. 1985. Occurrence and distribution patterns of marine mammals in the Columbia River and adjacent coastal waters of northern Oregon and Washington. Pp. 15-50, *In:* Beach, R. J., A. C. Geiger, S. J. Jeffries, S. D. Treacy, and B. L. Troutman, Marine mammals and their interactions with fisheries of the Columbia River and adjacent waters, 1980-1982. NWAFC Processed Report 85-04. 316 pp. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Jeffries, S. J., R. F. Brown, H. R. Huber, and R. L. DeLong. 1997. Assessment of harbor seals in Washington and Oregon, 1996. Pp. 83-94, *In:* Hill, P. S., and D. P. DeMaster (eds.), MMPA and ESA Implementation Program, 1996. AFSC Processed Report 97-10. 255 pp. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Jeffries, S., H. Huber, J. Calambokidis, and J. Laake. 2003. Trends and status of harbor seals in Washington State: 1978-1999. J. Wildl. Manage. 67(1):208-219.

Lamont, M. M., J. T. Vida, J. T. Harvey, S. Jeffries, R. Brown, H. H. Huber, R. DeLong, and W. K. Thomas. 1996. Genetic substructure of the Pacific harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) off Washington, Oregon, and California. Mar. Mammal Sci. 12(3):402-413.

Matteson, K. M., and J. A. Langton. 1994a. Summary report on the 1993 fall Columbia River salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 19 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., and J. A. Langton. 1994b. Summary report on the 1993 fall Grays Harbor salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 18 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., and J. A. Langton. 1994c. Summary report on the 1993 summer dip-in salmon gillnet fisheries in Willapa Bay and Grays Harbor. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 22 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., and J. A. Langton. 1994d. Summary report on the 1993 fall Willapa Bay salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 18 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., and V. M. C. Molinaar. 1992. Summary report on the 1992 summer dip-in salmon gillnet fisheries in Willapa Bay and Grays Harbor. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 13 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., W. B. Barnett, and J. A. Langton. 1993a. Summary report on the 1992 fall Grays Harbor salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 17 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., W. B. Barnett, and J. A. Langton. 1993b. Summary report on the 1992 fall Willapa Bay salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 17 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

Matteson, K. M., J. A. Langton, and R. L. Hadley. 1993c. Summary report on the 1993 winter Columbia River salmon gillnet fishery. Unpubl. Report. Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission, Astoria, OR. 29 pp. Available at PSMFC, 205 SE Spokane Street, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97202.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), Northwest Regional Office, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Newby, T. C. 1973. Changes in Washington State harbor seal population, 1942-1972. Murrelet 54:5-6.

~~Norberg, B. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Region, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

North, J. Ocean Salmon and Columbia River Program, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, 17330 SE Evelyn Street, Clackamas, OR 97015.

Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC). 2008. Report on the bycatch of marine mammals and seabirds by the U.S. West Coast groundfish fleet. At-sea Hake Observer Program, West Coast Groundfish Observer Program, Northwest Fisheries Science Center, NOAA Fisheries. Unpubl. Report. 34 pp. Available at http://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/research/divisions/fram/observer/datareport/index.cfm.

Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife (ODFW), 2040 SE Marine Science Dr., Newport, OR 97365.

Pamplin, N. Makah Fisheries Management, P.O. Box 115, Neah Bay, WA 98357.

Pearson, J. P. 1968. The abundance and distribution of harbor seals and Steller sea lions in Oregon. MS Thesis, Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, OR. 23 pp.

~~Perez, M. 2003. Compilation of marine mammal incidental take data from the domestic and joint venture groundfish fisheries in the U.S. EEZ of the North Pacific, 1989-2001. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-138. 145 pp.~~

Pitcher, K. W., and D. G. Calkins. 1979. Biology of the harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in the Gulf of Alaska. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA, OCSEAP Final Report 19(1983):231-310.

Pitcher, K. W., and D. C. McAllister. 1981. Movements and haul out behavior of radio-tagged harbor seals, *Phoca vitulina*. Can. Field Nat. 95:292-297.

Scheffer, V. B., and J. W. Slipp. 1944. The harbor seal in Washington State. Amer. Midl. Nat. 32:373-416.

Scordino, Jon. Makah Fisheries Management, P.O. Box 115, Neah Bay, WA 98357.

Temte, J. L. 1986. Photoperiod and the timing of pupping in the Pacific harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) with notes on reproduction in northern fur seals and Dall porpoises. MS Thesis, Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, OR. 147 pp.

Wade, P. R., and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for assessing marine mammal stocks: Report of the GAMMS workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Whisler, G. Ocean Salmon and Columbia River Program, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, 17330 SE Evelyn Street, Clackamas, OR 97015.

Revised ~~12/15/2003~~ 04/15/2010

HARBOR SEAL (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*): Washington Inland Waters Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Harbor seals inhabit coastal and estuarine waters off Baja California, north along the western coasts of the continental U.S., British Columbia, and Southeast Alaska, west through the Gulf of Alaska and Aleutian Islands, and in the Bering Sea north to Cape Newenham and the Pribilof Islands. They haul out on rocks, reefs, beaches, and drifting glacial ice and feed in marine, estuarine, and occasionally fresh waters. Harbor seals generally are non-migratory, with local movements associated with such factors as tides, weather, season, food availability, and reproduction (Scheffer and Slipp 1944; Fisher 1952; Bigg 1969, 1981). Harbor seals do not make extensive pelagic migrations though some long distance movement of tagged animals in Alaska (174 km) and along the U.S. west coast (up to 550 km) have been recorded (Pitcher and McAllister 1981, Brown and Mate 1983, Herder 1986). Harbor seals have also displayed strong fidelity for haulout sites (Pitcher and Calkins 1979, Pitcher and McAllister 1981).

For management purposes, differences in mean pupping date (Temte 1986), movement patterns (Jeffries 1985, Brown 1988), pollutant loads (Calambokidis et al. 1985) and fishery interactions have led to the recognition of three separate harbor seal stocks along the west coast of the continental U.S. (Boveng 1988): 1) inland waters of Washington State (including Hood Canal, Puget Sound, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca out to Cape Flattery), 2) outer coast of Oregon and Washington, and 3) California (see Fig. 1). ~~Recent g~~Genetic analyses provide additional support for this stock structure (Huber et al. 1994, 2010; Burg 1996~~,~~; Lamont et al. 1996). Samples from Washington, Oregon, and California demonstrate a high level of genetic diversity and indicate that the harbor seals of inland Washington waters possess unique haplotypes not found in seals from the coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California (Lamont et al. 1996). Recent genetic evidence suggests that the population of harbor seals in Washington inland waters has more structure than is currently recognized (Huber et al. 2010). In this report only the Washington Inland Waters stock is addressed. Harbor seal stocks that occur in the inland and coastal waters of Alaska are reported separately in the Stock Assessment Reports for the Alaska Region.

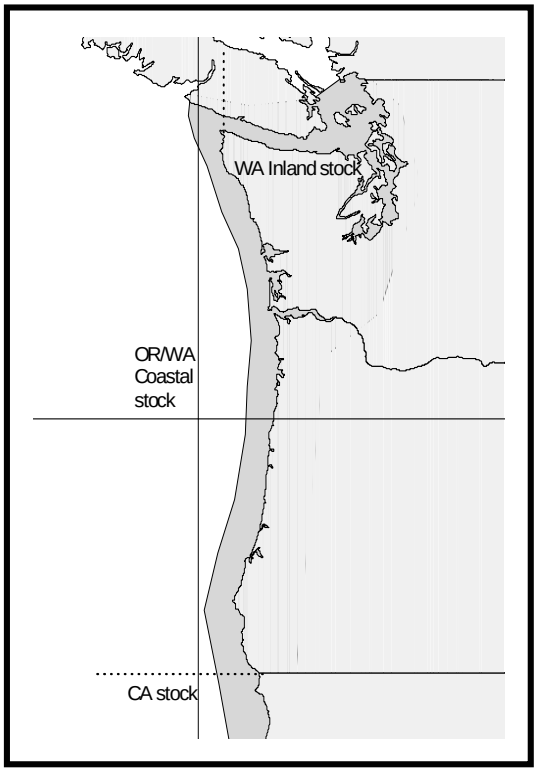


Figure 1. Approximate distribution of harbor seals in the U.S. Pacific Northwest (shaded area). Stock boundaries separating the three stocks are shown.

POPULATION SIZE

Aerial surveys of harbor seals in Washington were conducted during the pupping season in 1999, during which time the total number of hauled-out seals (including pups) were counted. In 1999, the mean count of harbor seals occurring in Washington's inland waters was 9,550 (CV=0.14) animals (Jeffries et al. 2003).

Radio-tagging studies conducted at six locations (three Washington inland waters sites and three Oregon and Washington coastal sites) collected information on haulout patterns from 63 harbor seals in 1991 and 61 harbor seals in 1992. Data from coastal and inland sites were not significantly different and were thus pooled, resulting in a correction factor of 1.53 (CV=0.065) to account for animals in the water which are missed during the aerial surveys (Huber et al. 2001). Using this correction factor results in a population estimate of 14,612 (9,550 x 1.53; CV=0.15) for the Washington Inland Waters stock of harbor seals (Jeffries et al. 2003). However, because the most recent abundance estimate is >8 years old, there is no current estimate of abundance.

Minimum Population Estimate

~~The log-normal 20th percentile of the 1999 population estimate for this stock is 12,844 harbor seals.~~ No current information on abundance is available to obtain a minimum population estimate for the Washington Inland Waters stock of harbor seals.

Current Population Trend

Historical levels of harbor seal abundance in Washington are unknown. The population apparently decreased during the 1940s and 1950s due to a state-financed bounty program. Approximately 17,133 harbor seals were killed in Washington by bounty hunters between 1943 and 1960 (Newby 1973). The population remained relatively low during the 1970s but, since the termination of the harbor seal bounty program in 1960 and with the protection provided by the passage of the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) in 1972, harbor seal numbers in Washington have increased (Jeffries 1985).

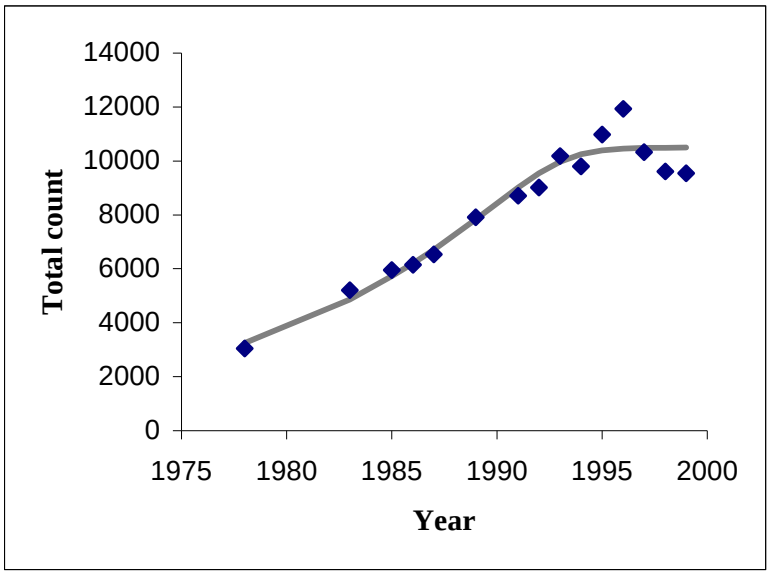


Figure 2. Generalized logistic population growth curve for the Washington Inland Waters stock of harbor seals, 1978-1999 (Jeffries et al. 2003).

Between 1983 and 1996, the annual rate of increase for this stock was 6% (Jeffries et al. 1997). The peak count occurred in 1996 and, based on a fitted generalized logistic model (Fig. 2), the population is thought to be stable (Jeffries et al. 2003).

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

From 1991 to 1996, counts of harbor seals in Washington State have increased at an annual rate of 10% (Jeffries et al. 1997). Because the population was not at a very low level by 1991, the observed rate of increase may underestimate the maximum net productivity rate (R_{MAX}). When a logistic model was fit to the 1978-1999 abundance data, the resulting estimate of R_{MAX} was 12.6% (95% CI = 9.4-18.7%) (Jeffries et al. 2003). This value of R_{MAX} is very close to the default pinniped maximum theoretical net productivity rate of 12% (R_{MAX}), therefore, 12% will be employed for this harbor seal stock (Wade and Angliss 1997).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

~~The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (12,844) times one-half the default maximum net growth rate for pinnipeds (½ of 12%) times a recovery factor of 1.0 (for stocks within OSP, Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 771 harbor seals per year.~~ Because there is no current estimate of minimum abundance, a potential biological removal (PBR) cannot be calculated for this stock.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fisheries Information

~~NMFS observers monitored the northern Washington marine set gillnet fishery in 1997, 1998, and 2000; there was no observer coverage in 1999 or 2001 (Gearin et al. 1994, 2000; P. Gearin, unpubl. data). For the entire fishery (coastal + inland waters), observer coverage ranged from approximately 40 to 98% during observed years.~~ Fishing effort in the northern Washington marine gillnet tribal fisheries (areas 4, 4A, 4B, 5, and 6C) is conducted within the range of both stocks of harbor seals (Oregon/Washington Coast and Washington Inland Waters stocks) occurring in Washington State waters. Some movement of animals between Washington's coastal and inland waters is likely, although data from tagging studies have not shown movement of harbor seals between the two locations (Huber et al. 2001). For the purposes of this stock assessment report, the animals taken in waters east of Cape Flattery, WA (areas 4B, 5, and 6C), ~~the inland portion of the fishery~~ are assumed to have belonged to the

Washington Inland Waters stock, and ~~the animals taken in the coastal portion of the fishery are assumed to have belonged to the Oregon/Washington Coast stock. Some movement of animals between Washington's coastal and inland waters is likely, although data from tagging studies have not shown movement of harbor seals between the two locations (Huber et al. 2001). Accordingly,~~ Table 1 includes data only from that portion of the ~~northern Washington marine set gillnet~~ fishery ~~occurring within the range of the Washington Inland Waters stock (those waters east of Cape Flattery), where observer coverage ranged from 40 to 80% between 1997 and 2001 and fishing effort ranged from 4-46 net days per year (1 net day equals a 100 fathom length net)~~. There was no observer coverage in the Northern Washington marine set gillnet tribal fishery in areas 4B and 5 in 2004-2008; however, there were two fisher self-reports of harbor seal deaths in area 4B in 2008 (Jon Scordino, unpubl. data). The mean estimated mortality for this fishery in 2004-2008 is 0.4 harbor seals per year from fisher self-reports.

Fishing effort in the northern Washington drift gillnet tribal fishery (areas 4B, 5, and 6C) is also conducted within the range of the Washington Inland Waters stock of harbor seals. This fishery is not observed; however, there was one fisher self-report of a harbor seal mortality in area 5 in 2008 (Jon Scordino, unpubl. data). The mean estimated mortality for this fishery in 2004-2008 is 0.2 harbor seals per year from fisher self-reports.

In 1993, as a pilot for future observer programs, NMFS, in conjunction with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW) monitored all non-treaty components of the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon gillnet fishery (Pierce et al. 1994). Observer coverage was 1.3% overall, ranging from 0.9% to 7.3% for the various components of the fishery. Two harbor seal deaths were reported ~~(Table 1)~~. Pierce et al. (1994) cautioned against extrapolating this mortality to the entire Puget Sound fishery due to the low observer coverage and potential biases inherent in the data. The area 7/7A sockeye landings represented the majority of the non-treaty salmon landings in 1993, approximately 67%. Results of this pilot study were used to design the 1994 observer programs discussed below.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of harbor seals (Washington Inland Waters stock) in commercial and tribal fisheries that might take this species and calculation of the mean annual mortality rate; n/a indicates that data are not available. All entanglements resulted in the death of the animal. Mean annual takes are based on ~~1997-2001~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery name	Years	Data type	Percent observer coverage	Observed mortality	Estimated mortality	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
Northern WA marine set gillnet (tribal fishery in inland waters: areas 4B and 5)	~~97~~ ~~98~~ ~~99~~ ~~00~~ ~~01~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	~~80%~~ ~~40%~~ ~~0%~~ ~~58%~~ ~~0%~~ 0% 0% 0% 0% 0%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~n/a~~ ~~0~~ ~~n/a~~ n/a n/a n/a n/a n/a	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~n/a~~ ~~0~~ ~~n/a~~ n/a n/a n/a n/a n/a	~~0[1]~~ 0
	~~97-01~~ 2008	fisher self-reports		~~0, 0, 0, 0, 2~~ 2	n/a	~~≥0.4 (n/a)~~ ≥0.4 (n/a)
Northern WA marine drift gillnet (tribal fishery in inland waters: areas 4B, 5, and 6C)	2008	fisher self-reports		1	n/a	≥0.2 (n/a)
WA Puget Sound Region salmon set/drift gillnet (observer programs listed below covered segments of this fishery):	-	-	-	-	-	-
Puget Sound non-treaty salmon gillnet (all areas and species)	1993	observer data	1.3%	2	n/a	see text
Puget Sound non-treaty chum salmon gillnet (areas 10/11 and 12/12B)	1994	observer data	11%	1	10	~~10 (n/a)~~ see text[1]

Fishery name	Years	Data type	Percent observer coverage	Observed mortality	Estimated mortality	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
Puget Sound treaty chum salmon gillnet (areas 12, 12B, and 12C)	1994	observer data	2.2%	0	0	~~0~~ see text[1]
Puget Sound treaty chum and sockeye salmon gillnet (areas 4B, 5, and 6C)	1994	observer data	7.5%	0	0	~~0~~ see text[1]
Puget Sound treaty and non-treaty sockeye salmon gillnet (areas 7 and 7A)	1994	observer data	7%	1	15	~~15 (1.0)~~ see text[1]
~~WA salmon net pens~~	~~97-01~~	~~self reports~~	~~n/a~~	~~10, 5, 0, 0, 0~~	~~n/a~~	~~≥3 (n/a)~~
Unknown Puget Sound fishery~~ies~~	~~97-01~~ 2004-2008	stranding data	n/a	~~1, 1, 0, 2, 2~~ 1, 0, 0, 8, 6	n/a	~~≥1.2 (n/a)~~ ≥3.0 (n/a)
Minimum total annual takes						~~≥29.6 (1.0)~~ ≥3.6 (n/a)

~~[1]1997-98 and 2000 mortality estimates are included in the average.~~
[1]This fishery has not been observed since 1994 (see text); these data are not included in the calculation of recent minimum total annual takes.

In 1994, NMFS, in conjunction with WDFW conducted an observer program during the Puget Sound non-treaty chum salmon gillnet fishery (areas 10/11 and 12/12B). A total of 230 sets were observed during 54 boat trips, representing approximately 11% observer coverage of the 500 fishing boat trips comprising the total effort in this fishery, as estimated from fish ticket landings (Erstad et al. 1996). One harbor seal was taken in the fishery, resulting in an entanglement rate of 0.02 harbor seals per trip (0.004 harbor seals per set), which extrapolated to approximately 10 deaths for the entire fishery. The Puget Sound treaty chum salmon gillnet fishery in Hood Canal (areas 12, 12B, and 12C) and the Puget Sound treaty sockeye/chum gillnet fishery in the Strait of Juan de Fuca (areas 4B, 5, and 6C) were also monitored in 1994 (NWIFC 1995). No harbor seal mortality was reported in the observer programs covering these treaty salmon gillnet fisheries, where observer coverage was estimated at 2.2% (based on % of total catch observed) and approximately 7.5% (based on % of observed trips to total landings), respectively.

Also in 1994, NMFS, in conjunction with WDFW and the Tribes, monitored the Puget Sound treaty and non-treaty sockeye salmon gillnet fishery (areas 7 and 7A). During this fishery, observers monitored 2,205 sets, representing approximately 7% of the estimated number of sets in the fishery (Pierce et al. 1996). There was one observed harbor seal mortality (two others were entangled and released unharmed), resulting in a mortality rate of 0.00045 harbor seals per set, which was extrapolated to 15 deaths (CV=1.0) for the entire fishery.

It should be noted that the 1994 observer programs did not sample all segments of the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon set/drift gillnet fishery and, further, the extrapolations of total kill did not include effort for the unobserved segments of this fishery. The percentage of the overall Washington Puget Sound Region salmon set/drift gillnet fishery effort that was observed in 1994 was not quantified. However, the areas having the highest salmon catches and in which a majority of the vessels operated in 1994 were covered by the 1994 observer programs (Joe Scordino, pers. comm.). Harbor seal takes in the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon drift gillnet fishery are unlikely to have increased since the fishery was last observed in 1994, due to reductions in the number of participating vessels and available fishing time (see details in Appendix 1). Fishing effort and catch have declined throughout all salmon fisheries in the region due to management efforts to recover ESA-listed salmonids.

In 1996, Washington Sea Grant Program conducted a test fishery in the non-treaty sockeye salmon gillnet fishery (area 7) to compare entanglement rates of seabirds and marine mammals and catch rates of salmon using three experimental gears and a control (monofilament mesh net). The experimental nets incorporated highly visible mesh in the upper quarter (50 mesh gear) or upper eighth (20 mesh gear) of the net or had low-frequency sound

emitters attached to the corkline (Melvin et al. 1997). In 642 sets during 17 vessel trips, there were two harbor seal deaths (one other was released alive with no apparent injuries).

Combining the estimates from the northern Washington marine set gillnet tribal fishery (0.4) and the northern Washington marine drift gillnet tribal fishery (0.2), ~~the Puget Sound non-treaty chum salmon gillnet fishery in areas 10/11 and 12/12B (10), and the Puget Sound treaty and non-treaty sockeye salmon gillnet fishery in areas 7 and 7A (15)~~ results in an estimated mean ~~minimum~~ annual mortality rate ~~in observed fisheries~~ of ~~25.4~~ 0.6 harbor seals from this stock. One harbor seal also entangled in a tribal drift gillnet test fishery in area 8-2 in 2006, resulting in an annual mortality of 0.2 harbor seals for this fishery. ~~It should be noted that the 1994 observer programs did not sample all segments of the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon set/drift gillnet fishery and, further, the extrapolations of total kill did not include effort for the unobserved segments of this fishery. Therefore, 25.4 is an underestimate of the harbor seal mortality due to the entire fishery. The percentage of the overall Washington Puget Sound Region salmon set/drift gillnet fishery effort that was observed in 1994 was not quantified. However, the areas having the highest salmon catches and in which a majority of the vessels operated in 1994 were covered by the 1994 observer programs (J. Scordino, pers. comm.). Harbor seal takes in the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon drift gillnet fishery are unlikely to have increased since the fishery was last observed in 1994, due to reductions in the number of participating vessels and available fishing time (see details in Appendix 1). Fishing effort and catch have declined throughout all salmon fisheries in the region due to management efforts to recover ESA-listed salmonids.~~

The Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP) fisher self-reports, required of commercial vessel operators by the MMPA, are a~~A~~n additional source of information on the number of harbor seals killed or seriously injured incidental to commercial fishery operations~~ is the self-reported fisheries information required of vessel operators by the MMPA~~. ~~During the period b~~Between ~~1994 and 2001~~ 2004 and 2008, there were no fisher self-reports of harbor seal mortality from the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon set/drift gillnet fishery. Unlike the 1994 observer program data, the self-reported fishery data cover the entire fishery (including treaty and non-treaty components). Although these reports are considered incomplete (see details in Appendix 1), they represent a minimum mortality. ~~There were fisher self-reports of 15 harbor seal deaths due to entanglement in Washington salmon net pens in 1997-2001, 10 in 1997 and five in 1998 (Table 1), resulting in an estimated annual mortality of three harbor seals from this stock. However, because logbook records (fisher self-reports required during 1990-94) are most likely negatively biased (Credle et al. 1994), these are considered to be minimum estimates. Logbook data are available for part of 1989-1994, after which incidental mortality reporting requirements were modified. Under the new system, logbooks are no longer required; instead, fishers provide self-reports. Data for the 1994-1995 phase-in period are fragmentary. After 1995, the level of reporting dropped dramatically, such that the records are considered incomplete and estimates of mortality based on them represent minimums (see Appendix 7 in Angliss et al. 2001 for details).~~

Strandings of harbor seals entangled in fishing gear or with injuries caused by interactions with gear are a final source of fishery-related mortality information. According to Northwest Marine Mammal Stranding Network records, maintained by the NMFS Northwest Region (NMFS, Northwest Regional Office, unpubl. data), there were 15 fishery-related strandings of harbor seals from this stock reported in 2004-2008, resulting in an average annual mortality of 3.0 harbor seals. Evidence of fishery interactions included entanglements in fishing nets (10), entanglements in fishing gear (three), hook injuries (one), and ingested hooks (one). ~~During the period from 1997 to 2001, small numbers of fishery-related strandings of harbor seals have occurred in most years (B. Norberg, pers. comm.).~~ As the strandings could not be attributed to a particular fishery, they have been included in Table 1 as occurring in ~~an~~ unknown Puget Sound fisher~~y~~ies. ~~Fishery-related strandings during 1997-2001 resulted in an estimated annual mortality of 1.2 harbor seals from this stock.~~ This estimate is considered a minimum because not all stranded animals are found, reported, or examined for cause of death (via necropsy by trained personnel).

~~The minimum estimated fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is 29.6 harbor seals per year, based on observer program data (25.4), fisher self-reports (3), and stranding data (1.2).~~

Other Mortality

According to Northwest Marine Mammal Stranding Network records, maintained by the NMFS Northwest Region (NMFS, Northwest Regional Office, unpubl. data), a total of ~~18~~ 46 human-caused harbor seal deaths or serious injuries were reported from non-fisheries sources in ~~1997-2001~~ 2004-2008. Twenty-four ~~Fifteen~~ animals were shot (~~seven, two, one, three and two each year, respectively~~), 13 ~~two~~ were struck by boats ~~ships~~ (~~one each in 1999 and 2001~~), ~~and one was found with neck injuries in 1999~~ two died in oil spills, three were killed by dogs, one was beaten by a fisherman, one was caught in the Ballard Locks, one entangled in wire, and one entangled in a scientific research capture net, resulting in an estimated mortality of ~~3.6~~ 9.2 harbor seals per year from this stock.

This estimate is considered a minimum because not all stranded animals are found, reported, or cause of death determined (via necropsy by trained personnel).

Subsistence Harvests by Northwest Treaty Indian Tribes

~~Several Pacific Northwest treaty Indian tribes have promulgated tribal regulations allowing tribal members to exercise treaty rights for subsistence harvest of harbor seals. There have been only a few reported takes of harbor seals from directed tribal subsistence hunts. It is possible that very few seals have been taken in directed hunts because tribal fishers use seals caught incidentally to fishing operations, in the northern Washington marine set gillnet and Washington Puget Sound Region treaty salmon gillnet fisheries, for their subsistence needs before undertaking a ceremonial or subsistence hunt. From communications with the tribes, the NMFS Northwest Regional Office (J. Scordino, pers. comm.) believes that 0-5 harbor seals from this stock may be taken annually in directed subsistence harvests.~~ Tribal subsistence takes of this stock may occur, but no data on recent takes are available.

STATUS OF STOCK

Harbor seals are not considered to be "depleted" under the MMPA or listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act. Based on currently available data, the level of human-caused mortality and serious injury ~~(29.6 + 3.6 + 0-5 = 33.2-38.2)~~ is 13.0 (3.8 + 9.2) harbor seals per year~~ not known to exceed the PBR (771).~~ A PBR cannot be calculated for this stock because there is no current abundance estimate. The previous estimate of PBR was 771 (Carretta et al. 2009). Human-caused mortality relative to PBR is unknown, but it is considered to be small relative to the stock size. Therefore, the Washington Inland Waters stock of harbor seals is not classified as a "strategic" stock. At present, the minimum estimated fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is 3.8 (based on recent observer data (0) and self-reported fisheries information (0.8) or stranding data (3.0) where observer data were not available or failed to detect harbor seal mortality) ~~(29.6) appears to be less than 10% of the calculated PBR (77) and, therefore, appears to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate~~. Since a PBR cannot be calculated for this stock, fishery mortality relative to PBR is unknown. The stock is within its Optimum Sustainable Population (OSP) level (Jeffries et al. 2003).

REFERENCES

Angliss, R. P., D. P. DeMaster, and A. L. Lopez. 2001. Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2001. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-124. 203 pp.

Bigg, M. A. 1969. The harbour seal in British Columbia. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. Bull. 172. 33 pp.

Bigg, M. A. 1981. Harbour seal, *Phoca vitulina*, Linnaeus, 1758 and *Phoca largha*, Pallas, 1811. Pp. 1-27, *In:* Ridgway, S. H., and R. J. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals. Vol. 2: Seals. Academic Press, New York.

Boveng, P. 1988. Status of the Pacific harbor seal population on the U.S. west coast. Admin. Rep. LJ-88-06. Southwest Fisheries Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 43 pp.

Brown, R. F. 1988. Assessment of pinniped populations in Oregon. Processed Report 88-05, NMFS, Northwest and Alaska Fisheries Science Center, Seattle, WA.

Brown, R. F., and B. R. Mate. 1983. Abundance, movements, and feeding habits of the harbor seal, *Phoca vitulina*, at Netarts and Tillamook Bays, Oregon. Fish. Bull. 81:291-301.

Burg, T. M. 1996. Genetic analysis of eastern Pacific harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) from British Columbia and parts of Alaska using mitochondrial DNA and microsatellites. MS Thesis, Univ. of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC. 77 pp.

Calambokidis, J., S. Speich, J. Peard, G. Steiger, D. M. Fry, J. Lowenstine, and J. Cubbage. 1985. Biology of Puget Sound marine mammals and marine birds: population health and evidence of pollution effects. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOS-OMA-18. 159 pp.

Carretta, J. V., K. A. Forney, M. S. Lowry, J. Barlow, J. Baker, D. Johnston, B. Hanson, M. M. Muto, D. Lynch, and L. Carswell. 2009. U.S. Pacific marine mammal stock assessments: 2008. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-434. 336 pp.

~~Credle, V. R., D. P. DeMaster, M. M. Merklein, M. B. Hanson, W. A. Karp, and S. M. Fitzgerald (eds.). 1994. NMFS observer programs: minutes and recommendations from a workshop held in Galveston, Texas, November 10-11, 1993. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-94-1. 96 pp.~~

Erstad, P., S. J. Jeffries, and D. J. Pierce. 1996. 1994 Report for the Puget Sound fishery observer program in management areas 10/11 & 12/12B: nontreaty chum gill net fishery. Final Report, Washington Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 14 pp.

Fisher, H. D. 1952. The status of the harbour seal in British Columbia, with particular reference to the Skeena River. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. Bull. 93. 58 pp.

~~Gearin, P. J. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

Gearin, P. J., S. R. Melin, R. L. DeLong, H. Kajimura, and M. A. Johnson. 1994. Harbor porpoise interactions with a chinook salmon set-net fishery in Washington State. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:427-438.

Gearin, P. J., M. E. Gosho, J. L. Laake, L. Cooke, R. L. DeLong, and K. M. Hughes. 2000. Experimental testing of acoustic alarms (pingers) to reduce bycatch of harbour porpoise, *Phocoena phocoena*, in the state of Washington. J. Cetacean Res. Manage. 2(1):1-9.

Herder, M. J. 1986. Seasonal movements and hauling site fidelity of harbor seals, *Phoca vitulina richardsi*, tagged at the Russian River, California. MS Thesis, Humbolt State Univ., Humbolt, CA. 52 pp.

Huber, H., S. Jeffries, R. Brown, and R. DeLong. 1994. Harbor seal, *Phoca vitulina richardsi*, stock assessment in Washington and Oregon, 1993. 1993 Annual Report to the MMPA Assessment Program, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, NOAA, 1335 East-West Highway, Silver Spring, MD 20910. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Huber, H. R., S. J. Jeffries, R. F. Brown, R. L. DeLong, and G. VanBlaricom. 2001. Correcting aerial survey counts of harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in Washington and Oregon. Mar. Mammal. Sci. 17(2):276-293.

Huber, H. R., S. J. Jeffries, D. M. Lambourn, and B. R. Dickerson. 2010. Population substructure of harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in Washington State using mtDNA. Can. J. Zool. 88:280-288.

Jeffries, S. J. 1985. Occurrence and distribution patterns of marine mammals in the Columbia River and adjacent coastal waters of northern Oregon and Washington. *In*: Marine mammals and their interactions with fisheries of the Columbia River and adjacent waters, 1980-1982. Processed Report 85-04, NMFS, Northwest and Alaska Fisheries Center, Seattle, WA.

Jeffries, S. J., R. F. Brown, H. R. Huber, and R. L. DeLong. 1997. Assessment of harbor seals in Washington and Oregon, 1996. Pp. 83-94, *In:* Hill, P. S., and D. P. DeMaster (eds.), MMPA and ESA Implementation Program, 1996. AFSC Processed Report 97-10. 255 pp. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Jeffries, S., H. Huber, J. Calambokidis, and J. Laake. 2003. Trends and status of harbor seals in Washington State: 1978-1999. J. Wildl. Manage. 67(1):208-219.

Lamont, M. M., J. T. Vida, J. T. Harvey, S. Jeffries, R. Brown, H. H. Huber, R. DeLong, and W. K. Thomas. 1996. Genetic substructure of the Pacific harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) off Washington, Oregon, and California. Mar. Mammal Sci. 12(3):402-413.

Melvin, E. F., L. L. Conquest, and J. K. Parrish. 1997. Seabird bycatch reduction: new tools for Puget Sound drift gillnet salmon fisheries. 1996 Sockeye and 1995 Chum Salmon Test Fisheries Final Report. Washington Sea Grant Program, Seattle, WA. 48 pp.

Newby, T. C. 1973. Changes in Washington State harbor seal population, 1942-1972. Murrelet 54:5-6.

~~Norberg, B. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Region, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), Northwest Regional Office, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission (NWIFC). 1995. Monitoring of marbled murrelet and marine mammal interactions with 1994 tribal gillnet fisheries in northern Puget Sound, Hood Canal, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Final Report to NMFS (Contract No. 52ABNF400087) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Unpubl. report. 41 pp. Available at NWIFC, 6730 Martin Way E, Olympia, WA 98516.

Pierce, D. J., W. P. Ritchie, and R. Kreuziger. 1994. Preliminary findings of seabird interactions with the non-treaty salmon gill net fishery: Puget Sound and Hood Canal Washington. Unpubl. report. Washington Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 39 pp. Available at WDFW, 600 Capitol Way N, Olympia, WA 98501.

Pierce, D. J., M. Alexandersdottir, S. J. Jeffries, P. Erstad, W. Beattie, and A. Chapman. 1996. Interactions of marbled murrelets and marine mammals with the 1994 Puget Sound sockeye gill net fishery. Final Report, Washington Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 21 pp.

Pitcher, K. W., and D. G. Calkins. 1979. Biology of the harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in the Gulf of Alaska. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA, OCSEAP Final Rep. 19(1983):231-310.

Pitcher, K. W., and D. C. McAllister. 1981. Movements and haul out behavior of radio-tagged harbor seals, *Phoca vitulina*. Can. Field Nat. 95:292-297.

Scheffer, V. B., and J. W. Slipp. 1944. The harbor seal in Washington State. Amer. Midl. Nat. 32:373-416.

Scordino, Joe. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Regional Office, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Scordino, Jon. Makah Fisheries Management, P.O. Box 115, Neah Bay, WA 98357.

Temte, J. L. 1986. Photoperiod and the timing of pupping in the Pacific harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) with notes on reproduction in northern fur seals and Dall porpoises. MS Thesis, Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, OR.

Wade, P. R., and R. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for assessing marine mammal stocks: report of the GAMMS workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2006~~ 04/15/2010

NORTHERN FUR SEAL (*Callorhinus ursinus*): San Miguel Island Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Northern fur seals occur from southern California north to the Bering Sea and west to the Okhotsk Sea and Honshu Island, Japan (Fig. 1). During the breeding season, approximately 74% of the worldwide population is found on the Pribilof Islands in the southern Bering Sea, with the remaining animals spread throughout the North Pacific Ocean (Lander and Kajimura 1982). Of the seals in U.S. waters outside of the Pribilofs, approximately 1% of the population is found on Bogoslof Island in the southern Bering Sea and San Miguel Island off southern California (NMFS 2007 ~~1993~~). Northern fur seals may temporarily haul out on land at other sites in Alaska, British Columbia, and on islets along the coast of the continental United States, but generally this occurs outside of the breeding season (Fiscus 1983).

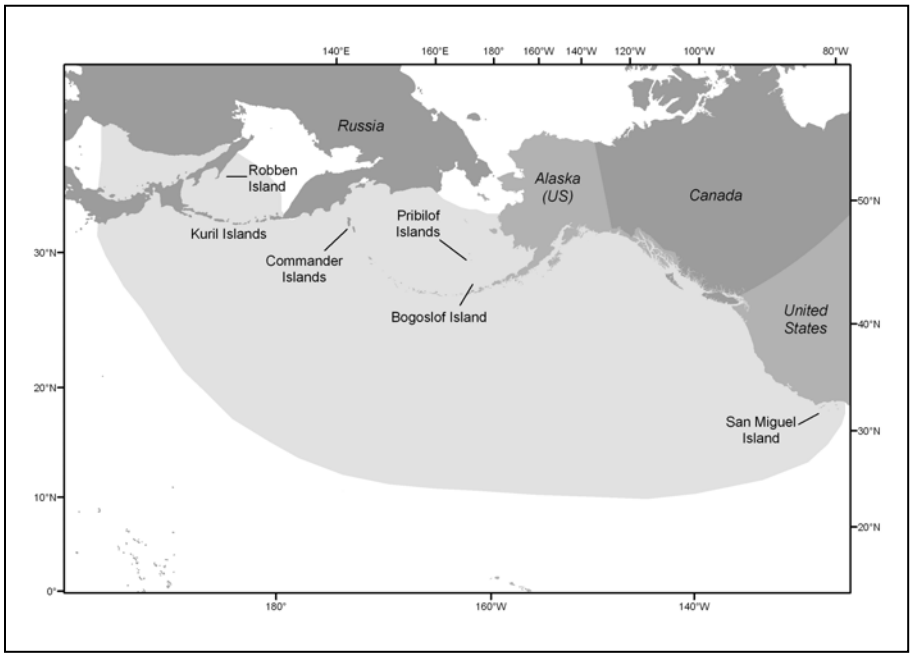


Figure 1. Approximate distribution of northern fur seals in the ~~eastern~~ North Pacific (shaded area).

Due to differing requirements during the annual reproductive season, adult males and females typically occur ashore at different, though overlapping, times. Adult males usually occur on shore during the 4-month period from May-August, though some may be present until November (well after giving up their territories). Adult females are found ashore for as long as six months (June-November). After their respective times ashore, seals of both genders spend the next 7-8 months at sea (Roppel 1984). Adult females and pups from the Pribilof Islands migrate through the Aleutian Islands into the North Pacific Ocean, often to Oregon and California offshore waters. Many pups may remain at sea for 22 months before returning to their rookery of birth. Adult males from the Pribilof Islands generally migrate only as far south as the Gulf of Alaska (Kajimura 1984). There is considerable interchange of individuals between rookeries.

The following information was considered in classifying stock structure based on the Dizon et al. (1992) phylogeographic approach: 1) Distributional data: continuous geographic distribution during feeding, geographic separation during the breeding season, and high natal site fidelity (DeLong 1982); 2) Population response data: substantial differences in population dynamics between the Pribilofs and San Miguel Island (DeLong 1982, DeLong and Antonelis 1991, NMFS 2007 ~~1993~~); 3) Phenotypic data: unknown; and 4) Genotypic data: little evidence of genetic differentiation among breeding islands (Ream 2002) ~~unknown~~. Based on this information, two separate stocks of northern fur seals are recognized within U.S. waters: an Eastern Pacific stock and a San Miguel Island stock. The Eastern Pacific stock is reported separately in the Stock Assessment Reports for the Alaska Region.

POPULATION SIZE

The population estimate for the San Miguel Island stock of northern fur seals is calculated as the estimated number of pups at rookeries multiplied by an expansion factor. Based on research conducted on the Eastern Pacific stock of northern fur seals, Lander's (1981) life table analysis was used to estimate the number of yearlings, two-year-olds, three-year-olds, and animals at least four years old. The resulting population estimate was equal to the pup count multiplied by 4.475. The expansion factors are based on a sex and age distribution estimated after the

commercial harvest of juvenile males was terminated in 1984. A more appropriate expansion factor for the San Miguel Island stock is 4.0, because ~~based on the known increased~~ immigration of recruitment-age females is occurring in the population (DeLong 1982) as well as ~~and~~ mortality and possible emigration of adults associated with the El Niño Southern Oscillation events in 1982-1983 and 1997-1998 (Melin et al. 2008 ~~R. DeLong, pers. comm.~~). A 1998 pup count resulted in an 80% decrease from the 1997 count (Melin et al. 2005). In 1999, the population began to recover, and by 2007 ~~2005~~ the total pup count was 2,492 ~~2,356~~ (Melin et al. 2008 ~~S. Melin, unpubl. data~~). Based on the 2007 ~~2005~~ count and the expansion factor, the most recent population estimate of the San Miguel Island stock is 9,968 ~~9,424~~ (2,492 ~~2,356~~ x 4.0) northern fur seals. Currently, a coefficient of variation (CV) for the expansion factor is unavailable.

Minimum Population Estimate

The survey technique utilized for estimating the abundance of northern fur seals within the San Miguel Island stock is a direct count, with no associated ~~coefficient of variation (~~CV~~)~~, as sites are surveyed only once. Additional estimates of the overall population size (i.e., N_{BEST}) and associated CV are also unavailable. Therefore, the minimum population size for this stock cannot be estimated by calculating the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of the population estimate. Rather, the minimum population size is estimated as twice the maximum number of pups born in 2007 ~~2005~~ (to account for the pups and their mothers) plus the maximum number of adult (147) and sub-adult (264) males counted for the 2007 ~~2005~~ season (Melin et al. 2008), which results in an estimate of 5,395 ((2,492 x 2) + 411) ~~5,096 ((2,356 x 2) + 384)~~. This method provides a very conservative estimate of the northern fur seal population at San Miguel Island.

Current Population Trend

The population of northern fur seals on San Miguel Island originated from the Pribilof Islands and Russian populations during the late 1950s or early 1960s (DeLong 1982). The colony has increased steadily, since its discovery in 1968, except for severe declines in 1983 and 1998 associated with El Niño Southern Oscillation events in 1982-1983 and 1997-1998 (DeLong and Antonelis 1991, Melin et al. 2005). El Niño events, which occur periodically along the California coast, impact population growth of northern fur seals at San Miguel Island and are an important regulatory mechanism for this population (DeLong and Antonelis 1991; Melin and DeLong 1994, 2000; Melin et al. 1996, 2005, 2008).

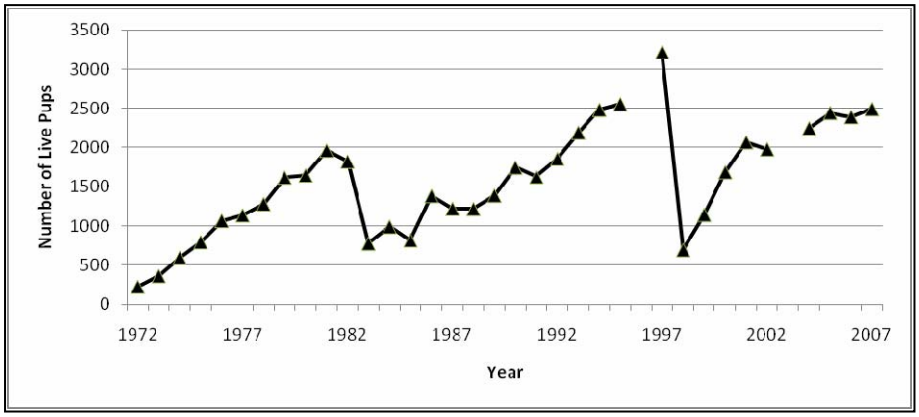


Figure 2. Number of live n~~N~~orthern fur seal pups counted ~~estimated production~~ on San Miguel Island, 1972-2007 ~~2005~~.

Specifically, live pup counts increased about 24% annually from 1972 through 1982 (Fig. 2), an increase due, in part, to immigration of females from the Bering Sea and the western North Pacific Ocean (DeLong 1982). The 1982-1983 El Niño event resulted in a 60.3% decline in the northern fur seal population at San Miguel Island (DeLong and Antonelis 1991). It took the population 7 years to recover from this decline, because adult female mortality or emigration occurred in addition to pup mortality (Melin and DeLong 1994). The 1992-1993 El Niño conditions resulted in reduced pup production in 1992, but the population recovered in 1993 and increased in 1994 (Melin et al. 1996).

From July 1997 through May 1998, the most severe El Niño event in recorded history affected California coastal waters (Lynn et al. 1998). In 1997, total fur seal pup production was the highest recorded since the colony has been monitored ~~(Fig. 2)~~. However, it appears that up to 87% of the pups born in 1997 died before weaning, and total production in 1998 declined 80% from 1997 (Melin et al. 2005). Although total production increased to 2,492 ~~2,356~~ in 2007 ~~2005~~ (Melin et al. 2008 ~~S. Melin, unpubl. data~~), the population has not yet recovered. Recovery from the 1998 decline has been slowed by the adult female mortality or emigration which occurred in addition to the high pup mortality in 1997 and 1998 (Melin et al. 2008 ~~2005; S. Melin, unpubl. data~~).

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

~~The northern fur seal population in the Pribilof Islands increased steadily during 1912-1924 after the commercial harvest no longer included pregnant females. During this period, the rate of population growth was approximately 8.6% (SE=1.47) per year (A. York, unpubl. data), the maximum recorded for this species. This growth rate is similar to and slightly higher than the 8.12% rate of increase (approximate SE=1.29) estimated by Gerrodette et al. (1985). Given the extremely low density of the population in the early 1900s, the 8.6% rate of increase is considered a reliable estimate of R_{MAX}.~~ A growth rate of 20% was calculated for northern fur seals on San Miguel Island in 1972-1982 by linear regression of the natural logarithm of pup count against year. However, it is clear that this rate of increase was due in part to immigration of females from Russian and Pribilof Island populations (DeLong 1982). In the absence of a reliable estimate of the maximum net productivity rate for the San Miguel Island stock of northern fur seals, the pinniped default maximum theoretical net productivity rate (R_{MAX}) of 12% (Wade and Angliss 1997) is used as a conservative estimate of R_{MAX}.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population estimate (5,395 ~~5,096~~) times one-half the default ~~observed~~ maximum net growth rate (½ of 12% ~~8.6~~%) times a recovery factor of 1.0 (for stocks of unknown status that are increasing in size: Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 324 ~~219~~ San Miguel Island northern fur seals per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fisheries Information

Northern fur seals taken during the winter/spring along the west coast of the continental U.S. could be from the ~~Pribilofs and, thus, belong to the~~ Eastern Pacific stock. However, it is the intention of NMFS to consider any takes of northern fur seals by commercial fisheries in waters off California, Oregon, and Washington as being from the San Miguel Island stock. Information concerning ~~the three~~ observed fisheries that may have interacted with northern fur seals is listed in Table 1. There were no observer reports of northern fur seal mortality~~y~~ies in any observed fishery along the west coast of the continental U.S. in ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008 (Table 1; ~~Perez 2003; Carretta and Chivers 2004;~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~; Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b; NWFSC 2008 ~~J. Cusick, unpubl. data~~). The estimated mean mortality rate in observed fisheries is zero northern fur seals per year from this stock.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and serious injury of northern fur seals (San Miguel Island stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species and calculation of the mean annual mortality rate; n/a indicates that data are not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery name	Years	Data type	Percent observer coverage	Observed mortality	Estimated mortality	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/ swordfish drift gillnet	~~2000~~	observer data	~~22.9%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	0 (n/a)
	~~2001~~		~~20.4%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	
	~~2002~~		~~22.1%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	
	~~2003~~		~~20.2%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	
	2004		20.6%	0	0	
	2005		20.9%	0	0	
	2006		18.5%	0	0	
	2007		16.4%	0	0	
	2008		13.5%	0	0	
CA ~~angel shark/~~halibut/white seabass and other species large mesh (>3.5 in) set gillnet	~~2000~~	~~No fishery-wide observer program since 1994~~ observer data	~~1.8%[1]~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	0 (n/a)
	~~2001~~		~~0%~~	~~n/a~~	~~n/a~~	
	~~2002~~		~~0%~~	~~n/a~~	~~n/a~~	
	2003		0%	n/a	n/a	
	2004		0%	n/a	n/a	
	2005		0%	n/a	n/a	
	2006		0%	n/a	n/a	
	2007		17.8%	0	0	

Fishery name	Years	Data type	Percent observer coverage	Observed mortality	Estimated mortality	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
WA/OR/CA groundfish trawl (Pacific hake at-sea processing component)	~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ 2002 2003 2004 2005 2006	observer data	~~80.6%[2]~~ ~~96.2%[2]~~ 100%[~~3~~1] 100%[~~3~~1] 100%[~~3~~1] 100%[1] 100%[1]	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 (0) 0 (0) 0 (0) 0 (0) 0 (0)	0 (0)
~~WA/OR/CA groundfish trawl (Pacific hake at-sea processing component)~~	~~2000-2004~~	~~MMAP self-reports~~	~~n/a~~	~~0, 0, 0, 0, 0~~	~~n/a~~	~~0~~
~~Unknown west coast fishery~~	~~2000-2004~~	~~stranding~~	~~n/a~~	~~0, 2, 0, 3, 0~~	~~n/a~~	~~≥1.0 (n/a)~~
Minimum total annual takes						~~≥1.0 (n/a)~~ 0 (n/a)

~~[1]In 2000, approximately 25% of the Monterey Bay portion of the set gillnet fishery was observed, representing <5% of the overall fishery. There has been no observer program for this fishery since 2000.~~
~~[2]Percent observer coverage equals percent of observed catch; observers were present on 100% of the vessels.~~
[~~3~~1]Percent observer coverage equals percent of vessels with observers.

The Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP) fisher self-reports, required of commercial vessel operators by the MMPA, are an additional source of information on the number of northern fur seals killed or seriously injured incidental to commercial fishery operations. ~~Between 2000 and 2004, t~~There were no fisher self-reports of northern fur seal ~~mortality~~ deaths in any MMAP-listed fishery operating in waters off California, Oregon, or Washington between 2004 and 2008. Although these reports are considered incomplete (see details in Appendix 1), they represent a minimum mortality.

Strandings of northern fur seals entangled in fishing gear or with serious injuries caused by interactions with gear are a final source of fishery-related mortality information. According to Marine Mammal Stranding Network records, maintained for California by the NMFS Southwest Region (NMFS, Southwest Regional Office, unpubl. data) and for Oregon and Washington by the NMFS Northwest Region (NMFS, Northwest Regional Office, unpubl. data), no fishery-related strandings were reported ~~in 2001 (1 in California and 1 in Oregon) and 2003 (3 in Oregon)~~ between 2004 and 2008. ~~Since mortality could not be attributed to a particular fishery, they are listed in Table 1 as occurring in an unknown west coast fishery. Fishery-related strandings during 2000-2004 resulted in an estimated annual mortality of 1.0 animal from this stock.~~ This estimate is considered a minimum because not all stranded animals are found, reported, or examined for cause of death (via necropsy by trained personnel).

Other Mortality

In 2007 and 2008, four northern fur seals were incidentally killed in California waters during scientific sardine trawling operations conducted by NMFS (NMFS, Southwest Regional Office, unpublished data): one mortality occurred in 2007 and three in 2008. After marine mammal deaths, including one northern fur seal, occurred in April 2008 trawls, NMFS scientists met to discuss and implement a mitigation plan to avoid future mortality. The initial mitigation plan included use of 162 dB acoustic pingers, a marine mammal watch, and scheduling trawls to occur when the ship first arrived on station to avoid attracting animals to a stationary vessel. Two additional northern fur seals were killed in subsequent 2008 trawls, including one in July and one in August. In 2009, a marine mammal excluder device was added to the trawls and no additional deaths were observed during 42 trawls. The average annual research-related mortality of northern fur seals from 2004 to 2008 is 0.8 animals.

According to the Marine Mammal Stranding Network records~~,~~ maintained by the NMFS Southwest (NMFS, Southwest Regional Office, unpubl. data) and Northwest (NMFS, Northwest Regional Office, unpubl. data) Regions, ~~no~~ two human-caused northern fur seal ~~mortality~~ deaths ~~has been~~ were reported from non-fisheries sources in California in 2004-2008 ~~2000-2004~~. One animal was shot in 2007 and one was entangled in marine debris in 2008, resulting in an estimated annual mortality of 0.4 animals from this stock between 2004 and 2008. This estimate is considered a minimum because not all stranded animals are found, reported, or examined for cause of death (via necropsy by trained personnel).

STATUS OF STOCK

The San Miguel Island northern fur seal stock is not considered to be "depleted" under the MMPA or listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act. Based on currently available data, the estimated annual level of total human-caused mortality and serious injury (1.2 ~~1.0~~) does not exceed the PBR (324 ~~219~~). Therefore, the San Miguel Island stock of northern fur seals is not classified as a "strategic" stock. The minimum total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock (0 ~~1.0~~) is not known to exceed 10% of the calculated PBR (32.4 ~~21.9~~) and, therefore, appears to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. The stock decreased 80% from 1997 to 1998, began to recover in 1999, and is currently at 77% ~~74%~~ of the 1997 level. The status of this stock relative to its Optimum Sustainable Population (OSP) level is unknown, unlike the Eastern Pacific northern fur seal stock which is formally listed as "depleted" under the MMPA.

REFERENCES

~~Carretta, J. V., and S. J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the International Whaling Commission, July 2004 (unpublished). 18 pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Carretta, J. V., and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07. 14 pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Carretta, J. V., and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06. 9 pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Carretta, J. V., and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch in observed California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01. 12 pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Carretta, J. V., and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03. 10 pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Carretta, J. V., S. J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10. 17 pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Road ~~8604 La Jolla Shores Drive~~, La Jolla, CA 92037.

~~Carretta, J. V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Mar. Fish. Rev. 66(2):21-30.~~

~~Cusick, J. West Coast Groundfish Observer Program, Fishery Resource Analysis and Monitoring Division, NWFSC, NMFS, 2725 Montlake Blvd. E, Seattle, WA 98112.~~

~~DeLong, R. L. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

DeLong, R. L. 1982. Population biology of northern fur seals at San Miguel Island, California. Ph.D. Thesis, University of California, Berkeley, CA~~alifornia~~. 185 pp.

DeLong, R. L., and G. A. Antonelis. 1991. Impacts of the 1982-1983 El Niño on the northern fur seal population at San Miguel Island, California. Pp. 75-83, *In*: Trillmich, F., and K. Ono (eds.), Pinnipeds and El Niño: Responses to Environmental Stress. Springer-Verlag, New York. 293 pp.

Dizon, A. E., C. Lockyer, W. F. Perrin, D. P. DeMaster, and J. Sisson. 1992. Rethinking the stock concept: a phylogeographic approach. Conserv. Biol. 6:24-36.

Fiscus, C. H. 1983. Fur seals and islands. *In:* Background papers submitted by the United States to the 26th meeting of the Standing Scientific Committee of the North Pacific Fur Seal Commission, Washington, D.C., March 28-April 5, 1983. Available at National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

~~Gerrodette, T., D. Goodman, and J. Barlow. 1985. Confidence limits for population projections when vital rates vary randomly. Fish. Bull. 83(3):207-217.~~

Kajimura, H. 1984. Opportunistic feeding of the northern fur seal, *Callorhinus ursinus*, in the eastern North Pacific Ocean and eastern Bering Sea. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS-SSRF-779. 49 pp.

Lander, R. H. 1981. A life table and biomass estimate for Alaskan fur seals. Fisheries Research (Amsterdam) 1:55-70.

Lander, R. H., and H. Kajimura. 1982. Status of northern fur seals. FAO Fisheries Series 5:319-345.

Lynn, R. J., T. Baumgartner, J. Garcia, C. A. Collins, T. L. Hayward, K. D. Hyrenbach, A. W. Mantyla, T. Murphree, A. Shankle, F. B. Schwing, K. M. Sakuma, and M. J. Tegner. 1998. The state of the California Current, 1997-1998: transition to El Niño conditions. CalCOFI Report 39:25-49.

~~Melin, S. R. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

Melin, S. R., and R. L. DeLong. 1994. Population monitoring of northern fur seals on San Miguel Island, California. Pp. 137-141, *In:* Sinclair, E. H. (ed.), Fur seal investigations, 1992. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-45. 190 pp.

Melin, S. R., and R. L. DeLong. 2000. Population monitoring studies of northern fur seals at San Miguel Island, California. Pp. 41-51, *In:* Robson, B. W. (ed.), Fur seal investigations, 1998. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-113. 101 pp.

Melin, S. R., R. L. DeLong, and J. R. Thomason. 1996. Population monitoring studies of northern fur seals at San Miguel Island, California. Pp. 87-102, *In:* Sinclair, E. H. (ed.), Fur seal investigations, 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-69. 144 pp.

Melin, S. R., R. L. DeLong, and A. J. Orr. 2005. The status of the northern fur seal population at San Miguel Island, California, 2002-2003. Pp. 44-52, *In:* Testa, J. W. (ed.), Fur seal investigations, 2002-2003. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-151. 72 pp.

Melin, S. R., A. J. Orr, and R. L. DeLong. 2008. The status of the northern fur seal population at San Miguel Island, California, 2006 and 2007. Pp. 41-54, *In:* Testa, J. W. (ed.), Fur seal investigations, 2006-2007. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-188. 76 pp.

~~National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1993. Final conservation plan for the northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*). Prepared by the National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Alaska Fisheries Science Center, NMFS, Seattle, WA, and the Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, Silver Spring, MD. 80 pp.~~

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2007. Conservation plan for the Eastern Pacific stock of northern fur seal (*Callorhinus ursinus*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Juneau, AK. Available at http://www.fakr.noaa.gov/protectedresources/seals/fur.htm.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), Northwest Regional Office, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), Southwest Regional Office, 501 West Ocean Blvd., Long Beach, CA 90802.

Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC). 2008. Report on the bycatch of marine mammals and seabirds by the U.S. West Coast groundfish fleet. At-sea Hake Observer Program, West Coast Groundfish Observer Program, Northwest Fisheries Science Center, NOAA Fisheries. Unpubl. Report. 34 pp. Available at http://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/research/divisions/fram/observer/datareport/index.cfm.

~~Perez, M. 2003. Compilation of marine mammal incidental take data from the domestic and joint venture groundfish fisheries in the U.S. EEZ of the North Pacific, 1989-2001. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-138. 145 pp.~~

Ream, R. R. 2002. Molecular ecology of North Pacific otariids: genetic assessment of northern fur seal and Steller sea lion distributions. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Washington, Seattle, WA. 134 pp.

Roppel, A. Y. 1984. Management of northern fur seals on the Pribilof Islands, Alaska, 1786-1981. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS-4. 32 pp.

Wade, P. R., and R. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for assessing marine mammal stocks: report of the GAMMS workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

~~York, A. E. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.~~

Revised ~~10/15/2009~~ 04/15/2010

HAWAIIAN MONK SEAL (*Monachus schauinslandi*)

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Hawaiian monk seals are distributed predominantly in six Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) subpopulations at French Frigate Shoals, Laysan and Lisianski Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, and Midway and Kure Atoll. Small numbers also occur at Necker, Nihoa, and the main Hawaiian Islands (MHI). Genetic variation among NWHI monk seals is extremely low and may reflect both a long-term history at low population levels and more recent human influences (Kretzmann et al. 1997, 2001, Schultz et al. ~~in press~~ 2009). On average, 10-15% of the seals migrate among the NWHI subpopulations (Johnson and Kridler 1983; Harting 2002). Thus, the NWHI subpopulations are not isolated, though the different island subpopulations have exhibited considerable demographic independence. Observed interchange of individuals among the NWHI and MHI regions is rare, yet preliminary genetic stock structure analysis (Schultz et al. in review) suggests the species is appropriately managed as a single stock.

POPULATION SIZE

The best estimate of the total population size is ~~1,146~~ 1,161. This estimate is the sum of estimated abundance at the six main Northwest Hawaiian Islands subpopulations, an extrapolation of counts at Necker and Nihoa Islands, and an estimate of minimum abundance in the main Hawaiian Islands. The number of individual seals identified was used as the population estimate at NWHI sites where total enumeration was achieved according to the criteria established by Baker et al. (2006). Where total enumeration was not achieved, capture-recapture estimates from Program CAPTURE were used (Baker 2004; Otis et al. 1978, Rexstad & Burnham 1991, White et al. 1982). When no reliable estimator was obtainable in Program CAPTURE (i.e., the model selection criterion was < 0.75, following Otis et al. 1978), the total number of seals identified was the best available estimate. Finally, sometimes capture-recapture estimates are less than the known minimum abundance (Baker 2004), and in these cases the total number of seals identified was used. In ~~2007~~ 2008, total enumeration was not definitively achieved at any site, however analysis of discovery curves (Baker et al. 2006) suggested that nearly all seals were identified at Laysan Island~~, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Midway~~ and Kure Atoll~~s~~. Except at Midway Atoll, capture-recapture analysis either found no suitable estimator was available or the estimate was lower than known minimum abundance. Thus, abundance at the six main subpopulations was estimated to be 914 ~~935~~ (including 138 ~~151~~ pups) ~~based upon the total number of seals identified~~. Monk seals also occur at Necker and Nihoa Islands, where counts are conducted from zero to a few times in a single year. Abundance is estimated by correcting the mean of all beach counts accrued over the past five years. The mean (±SD) of all counts (excluding pups) conducted between 2004~~2003~~ and 2008~~2007~~ was 15.5 ~~13.5~~ (±5.1 ~~5.2~~) at Necker Island and 27.1 ~~25~~ (±5.7 ~~2.8~~) at Nihoa Island (Johanos and Baker ~~2007,~~ in press, in prep., Johanos in prep.). The relationship between mean counts and total abundance at the reproductive sites indicates that the total abundance can be estimated by multiplying the mean count by a correction factor of 2.89 (NMFS unpubl. data). Resulting estimates (plus the average number of pups known to have been born during 2004-2008 ~~2003-2007~~) are 47.8 ~~42.0~~ (±14.7 ~~15.0~~) at Necker Island and 86.5 ~~78.7~~ (±16.5 ~~8.0~~) at Nihoa Island.

The only complete and systematic surveys for monk seals in the MHI were conducted in 2000 and 2001 (Baker and Johanos 2004). The NMFS collects information on seal sightings reported by a variety of sources. Recently, the number of such reports has increased and related database improvement efforts have been underway. The total number of individually identifiable seals documented in this way in 2008 ~~2007~~ was 113 ~~90~~, the current best minimum abundance estimate.

Minimum Population Estimate

The total number of seals (913)~~(935)~~ identified at the six main NWHI reproductive sites is the best estimate of minimum population size at those sites. Minimum population sizes for Necker and Nihoa Islands (based on the formula provided by Wade and Angliss (1997)) are 37 ~~31~~ and 74 ~~72~~, respectively. The minimum abundance estimate for the main Hawaiian Islands in 2008 ~~2007~~ is 113 ~~90~~ seals. The minimum population size for the entire stock (species) is the sum of these estimates, or 1,136 ~~1,129~~ seals.

Current Population Trend

Current population trend is based solely on the six NWHI subpopulations because these sites have historically comprised virtually the entire species, while information on the remaining smaller seal aggregations have been inadequate to reliably evaluate abundance or trends. The total of mean non-pup beach counts at the six

main reproductive NWHI subpopulations in 2008 ~~2007~~ is 68% lower than in 1958. The trend in total abundance at the six main NWHI subpopulations estimated as described above is shown in Figure 1. A log-linear regression of estimated abundance on year for the past 10 years (1999-2008) ~~from 1998 (the first year for which a reliable total abundance estimate has been obtained) to 2007~~ estimates that abundance declined -4.5% yr^{-1} (95% CI = -5.0% to -3.9% yr^{-1}) ~~-4.1% yr^{-1} (95% CI = -4.9% to -3.3% yr^{-1})~~.

The MHI monk seal population appears to be increasing with an intrinsic population growth rate estimated at 5.6% per year based upon Leslie matrix analysis (Baker et al., in review). Likewise, sporadic beach counts at Necker and especially Nihoa Islands, suggest positive growth. While these sites have historically comprised a small fraction of the total species abundance, the decline of the six main NWHI subpopulations, coupled with growth at Necker, Nihoa and the MHI may mean that these latter three sites now substantially influence the total abundance trend. Unfortunately, because we lack reliable abundance estimates for these areas, their influence cannot currently be determined.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

Trends in abundance vary considerably among ~~the six main~~ subpopulations. Mean non-pup beach counts are used as a long-term index of abundance for years when data are insufficient to estimate total abundance as described above). Be~~ach counts at French Frigate Shoals steadily declined 76% from 1989-2007. Trends have been more variable among the other sites, but abundance is lower at all subpopulations compared to 2000.~~

Prior to 1999, beach count increases of up to 7% yr^{-1} were observed at Pearl and Hermes Reef, and this is the highest estimate of the maximum net productivity rate (R_{max}) observed for this species. Since 2000, low juvenile survival, thought to be due largely to food limitation, has ~~been widespread with rare exception in the NWHI,~~ resulted~~ing~~ in ~~the~~ population decline in the six main NWHI subpopulations (Fig. 1). ~~While the MHI monk seal population appears to be on the rise (Baker and Johanos 2004), this remains unconfirmed and abundance appears to be too low to strongly influence current total stock trends.~~

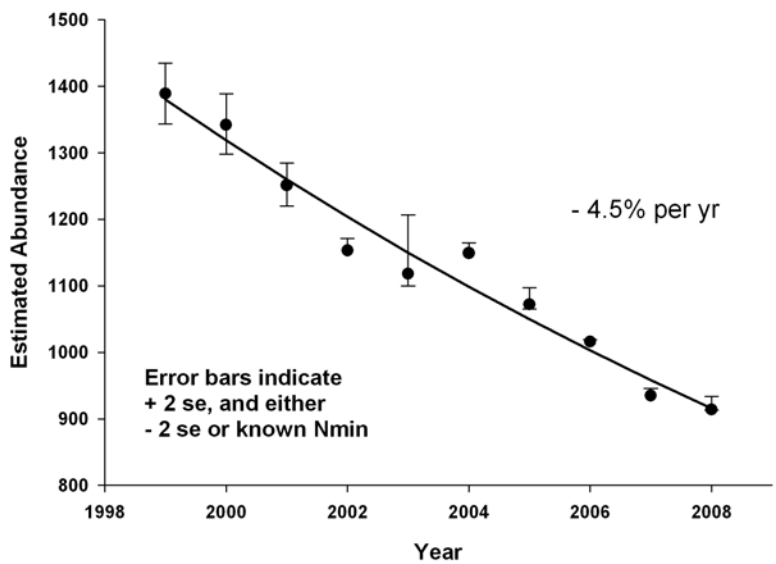


Figure 1. Trend in abundance of monk seals at the six main Northwestern Hawaiian Islands subpopulations, based on a combination of total enumeration and capture–recapture estimates. Error bars indicate ±2 s.e. (from variances of capture-recapture estimates). Fitted log-linear regression line is shown.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

Potential biological removal (PBR) is designed to allow stocks to recover to, or remain above, the maximum net productivity level (MNPL) (Wade 1998). An underlying assumption in the application of the PBR equation is that marine mammal stocks exhibit certain dynamics. Specifically, it is assumed that a depleted stock will naturally grow toward OSP (Optimum Sustainable Population), and that some surplus growth could be removed while still allowing recovery. The Hawaiian monk seal population is far below historical levels and has declined 4.5 ~~4.1~~% yr^{-1} on average since 1999 ~~1998~~. Thus, the stock's dynamics do not conform to the underlying model for calculating PBR such that PBR for the Hawaiian monk seal is undetermined.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Human-related mortality has caused two major declines of the Hawaiian monk seal (Ragen 1999). In the 1800s, this species was decimated by sealers, crews of wrecked vessels, and guano and feather hunters (Dill and Bryan 1912; Wetmore 1925; Bailey 1952; Clapp and Woodward 1972). Following a period of at least partial recovery in the first half of the 20th century (Rice 1960), most subpopulations again declined. This second decline has not been fully explained, but trends at several sites appear to have been determined by human disturbance from

military or U.S. Coast Guard activities (Ragen 1999; Kenyon 1972; Gerrodette and Gilmartin 1990). Currently, human activities in the NWHI are limited and human disturbance is relatively rare, but human-seal interactions have become an important issue in the MHI.

Fishery Information

Fishery interactions with monk seals can include direct interaction with gear (hooking or entanglement), seal consumption of discarded catch, and competition for prey. Entanglement of monk seals in derelict fishing gear, which is believed to originate outside the Hawaiian archipelago, is described in a separate section below.

Fishery interactions are a serious concern in the MHI, especially involving State of Hawaii managed nearshore fisheries. Three seals have been found dead in nearshore (non-recreational) gillnets (in 1994, 2006, and 2007), and a seal was found dead in 1995 with a hook lodged in its esophagus. A total of 52 ~~44~~ seals have been observed with embedded hooks in the MHI during 1989-2008 (including 9 in 2008, of which 3 constituted serious injuries entered in Table 1) ~~2007~~. Several incidents, including the dead hooked seal mentioned above, involved hooks used to catch ulua (jacks, *Caranx* spp.). Interactions in the MHI appear to be on the rise, as most reported hookings have occurred since 2000, and five seals have been observed entangled in nearshore gillnets during 2002-2008 ~~2007~~ (NMFS unpubl. data). ~~The 2007 nearshore fishery mortality reported in (Table 1) involved an adult male seal who became entangled and drowned in a gillnet.~~ The MHI bottomfish handline fishery may also interact indirectly with monk seals as evidenced by the aforementioned fatty acid research, though no mortality or serious injuries have been attributed to the fishery (Table 1).

In the past, monk seal interactions with fisheries in the NWHI were documented, but direct interactions have since become rare or non-existent, and issues related to competition have also somewhat abated. Possible reduction of monk seal prey by the NWHI lobster fishery ~~(through removal of both target and bycatch species)~~ has also been raised as a concern, though whether the fishery indirectly impacted monk seals remains unresolved. However, the NWHI lobster fishery closed in 2000 and on June 15, 2006, the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (later renamed *Papahanaumokuokea*) Marine National Monument was established. Subsequent regulations prohibit commercial fishing in the Monument except for the bottomfish fishery (and associated pelagic species catch), which may continue until 2011 (U.S. Department of Commerce and Department of the Interior, 2006). In the past, interactions between the Hawaii-based domestic pelagic longline fishery and monk seals were documented (NMFS 2002). This fishery targets swordfish and tunas and does not compete with Hawaiian monk seals for prey. In October 1991, in response to 13 unusual seal wounds thought to have resulted from interactions with this fishery, NMFS established a Protected Species Zone extending 50 nautical miles around the NWHI and the corridors between the islands. Subsequently, no additional monk seal interactions with either the swordfish or tuna components of the longline fishery have been ~~confirmed~~ observed. ~~Since 1991, there have been no observed or reported interactions of this fishery with monk seals.~~

The NWHI bottomfish handline fishery ~~has been reported to interact with monk seals. This fishery~~ landed between 66 ~~95~~ and 201 metric tons per year from 1989-2008 ~~2007~~ (Kawamoto 1995; Kawamoto, pers. comm.) and the number of vessels is currently capped at 9 (8 ~~7~~ made NWHI trips in 2008 ~~2007~~, Kawamoto, pers. comm.). Nitta and Henderson (1993) documented reports of seals taking bottomfish and bait off fishing lines, and reports of seals attracted to discarded bycatch. A Federal observer program of the fishery began in the fourth quarter of 2003 and no monk seal interactions were observed through the program's ~~was suspended~~ conclusion in 2006. NMFS prepared a Section 7 Biological Opinion on the Fishery Management Plan for the bottomfish fishery, and concluded that the operation of this fishery is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the Hawaiian monk seal nor would it likely destroy or adversely modify the monk seal's critical habitat (NMFS 2002). The Biological Opinion has no incidental take statement. An EIS for the bottomfish fishery management plan has also been prepared. Fishermen indicate that they have engaged in mitigating activity over the past several years, e.g., holding discards on-board, etc. (NMFS pers. comm.). The ecological effects of this fishery on monk seals (e.g., competition for prey or alteration of prey assemblages) are unknown. However, published studies on monk seal prey selection based upon scat/spew analysis and seal-mounted video revealed some evidence that monk seals fed on families of bottomfish which contain commercial species (many prey items recovered from scats and spews were identified only to the level of family; Goodman-Lowe 1998, Longenecker et al. 2006, Parrish et al. 2000). Recent quantitative fatty acid signature analysis (QFASA) results support previous studies illustrating that monk seals consume a wide range of species. However, deepwater-slope species, including two commercially targeted bottomfishes and other species not caught in the fishery, were estimated to comprise a large portion of the diet for some individuals. Similar species were estimated to be consumed by seals regardless of location, age or gender, but the relative importance of each species varied. Diets differed considerably between individuals. These results highlight the need to better understand potential ecological interactions with the Hawaiian bottomfish fishery.

Table 1. Summary of mortality and serious injury of Hawaiian monk seals due to fisheries and calculation of annual mortality rate. n/a indicates that sufficient data are not available.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	% Obs. coverage	Observed/Reported Mortality/Serious Injury	Estimated Mortality/ Serious Injury	Mean Takes (CV)
Pelagic Longline	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer observer observer observer observer	24.6% 26.1% & 100%[1] 22.1% & 100%[1] 20.1% & 100%[1] 21.7% & 100%[1]	0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0	0 (0)
NWHI Bottomfish	~~2003~~[2] 2004 2005 2006	~~observer~~ observer observer observer	~~33%~~ 18.3% 25.0% 3.9%	~~0~~ 0 0 0	~~0~~ 0 0 0	0 (0)
MHI Bottomfish[3]	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	n/a	none	0 0 0 0 0	n/a	n/a
Nearshore[3]	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	n/a	none	2 1 1 1 3	n/a	n/a

Fishery Mortality Rate

Total fishery mortality and serious injury cannot be considered to be insignificant and approaching a rate of zero. Monk seals are being hooked and entangled in the MHI at a rate which has not been reliably assessed but is certainly greater than zero. The information above represents only reported direct interactions, and without purpose-designed observation effort the true interaction rate cannot be estimated. Monk seals also die from entanglement in fishing gear and other debris throughout their range (likely originating from various countries), and NMFS along with partner agencies is pursuing a program to mitigate entanglement (see below). Indirect interactions (i.e., involving competition for prey or consumption of discards) remain the topic of ongoing investigation.

Entanglement in Marine Debris

Hawaiian monk seals become entangled in fishing and other marine debris at rates higher than reported for other pinnipeds (Henderson 2001). A total of 289 ~~284~~ cases of seals entangled in fishing gear or other debris have been observed through 2008 ~~2007~~ (Henderson 2001; NMFS, unpubl. data), including eight documented deaths resulting from entanglement in marine ~~fisheries~~ debris (Henderson 1990, 2001; NMFS, unpubl. data). The fishing gear fouling the reefs and beaches of the NWHI and entangling monk seals only rarely includes types used in Hawaii fisheries. For example, trawl net and monofilament gillnet accounted for approximately 35% and 34% of the debris removed from reefs in the NWHI by weight, and trawl net alone accounted for 88% of the debris by frequency (Donohue et al. 2001). Yet ~~there are no commercial~~ trawl fisheries have been prohibited in Hawaii since the 1980s.

The NMFS and partner agencies continue to mitigate impacts of marine debris on monk seals as well as turtles, coral reefs and other wildlife. Marine debris is removed from beaches and entangled seals during annual population assessment activities at the main reproductive sites. Since 1996, annual debris survey and removal efforts in the NWHI coral reef habitat have been ongoing (Donohue et al. 2000, Donohue et al. 2001).

Other Mortality

Since 1982, 23 seals died during rehabilitation efforts that ceased in 1994. Additionally, two died in

[1] Observer coverage for deep and shallow-set components of the fishery, respectively

[2] Observer coverage began in fourth quarter of 2003. Data for that quarter provided.

[3] Data for MHI bottomfish and nearshore fisheries are based upon incidental observations (i.e., hooked seals). All hookings not clearly attributable to either fishery with certainty were attributed to the bottomfish fishery, and hookings which resulted in injury of unknown severity were classified as serious.

captivity, two died when captured for translocation, one was euthanized (an aggressive male known to cause mortality), four died during captive research and four died during field research (Baker and Johanos 2002; NMFS unpubl. data). ~~Included in the foregoing is a sub-adult juvenile female that died during capture for research on Oahu in 2007.~~

Other sources of mortality that impede recovery include food limitation (see Habitat Issues below), single and intra-species multiple-male aggression (mobbing), shark predation, and disease/parasitism. Multiple-male aggression has primarily been identified as a problem at Laysan and Lisianski Islands, though it has also been documented at other subpopulations. In 1994, 22 adult males were removed from Laysan Island, and 11 ~~nine~~ seals are thought to have died from multiple-male aggression at this site since their removal (1995-2008 ~~2007~~).

Attacks by single adult male seals have resulted in several monk seal deaths, most notably at French Frigate Shoals in 1997, where at least 8 pups died from this cause. Many more pups were likely killed in the same way but the cause of their deaths could not be confirmed. Two males that killed pups in 1997 were translocated to Johnston Atoll, 870 km to the southwest. Subsequently, mounting injury to pups has decreased.

Shark-related injury and mortality incidents appeared to have increased in the late 1980s and early 1990s at French Frigate Shoals, but such mortality was probably not the primary cause of the decline at this site (Ragen 1993). However, shark predation has accounted for a significant portion of pup mortality in recent years. At French Frigate Shoals in 1999, 17 pups were observed injured by large sharks, and at least 3 were confirmed to have died from shark predation (Johanos and Baker 2001). As many as 22 pups of a total 92 born at French Frigate Shoals in 1999 were likely killed by sharks. After 1999, losses of pups to shark predation have been fewer, but this source of mortality remains a serious concern. Various mitigation efforts have been undertaken by NMFS ~~in cooperation with the U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), which manages French Frigate Shoals as part of the Hawaiian Islands National Wildlife Refuge.~~

~~An Unusual Mortality Event (UME) contingency plan has recently been published for the monk seal (Yochem et al. 2004).~~ While disease effects on monk seal demographic trends are uncertain, there is concern that diseases of livestock, feral animals, pets or humans could be transferred to naive monk seals in the MHI~~main Hawaiian Islands~~ and potentially spread to the core population in the NWHI. ~~Recent diagnoses (R. Braun, pers. comm.) confirm that~~ In 2003 and 2004, two deaths of free-ranging monk seals were attributable to diseases not previously found in the species: leptospirosis and toxoplasmosis (R. Braun, pers. comm.). *Leptospira* bacteria are found in many of Hawaii's streams and estuaries and are associated with livestock and rodents. Cats, domestic and feral, are a common source of toxoplasma.

STATUS OF STOCK

In 1976, the Hawaiian monk seal was designated depleted under the Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 and as endangered under the Endangered Species Act of 1973. The species is well below its OSP and has not recovered from past declines. Therefore, the Hawaiian monk seal is characterized as a strategic stock.

Habitat Issues

Poor juvenile survival rates and variability in the relationship between weaning size and survival suggest that prey availability is likely limiting recovery of NWHI monk seals (Baker and Thompson 2007, Baker et al. 2007, Baker 2008). A variety of strategies for improving juvenile survival are being considered and will be developed through an experimental approach in coming years (Baker and Littnan 2008). ~~In Autumn 2006 a test project to provide nutritional support and care to juvenile monk seals was initiated.~~

~~Another~~ A major habitat issue involves loss of terrestrial habitat at French Frigate Shoals, where pupping and resting islets have shrunk or virtually disappeared (Antonelis et al. 2006). Projected increases in global average sea level ~~(Church et al. 2001)~~ may further significantly reduce terrestrial habitat for monk seals in the NWHI (Baker, Littnan and Johnston, 2006).

Goodman-Lowe (1998) provided information on prey selection using hard parts in scats and spewings. Information on at-sea movement and diving is available for seals at all six main subpopulations in the NWHI using satellite telemetry (Stewart et al. 2006). Preliminary studies to describe the foraging habitat of monk seals in the MHI are reported in Littnan et al. (2006).

Tern Island is the site of a USFWS refuge station and is one of two sites in the NWHI accessible by aircraft. During World War II, the U.S. Navy enlarged the island to accommodate the runway, and a sheet-pile seawall was constructed to maintain the modified shape of the island. Degradation of the seawall created entrapment hazards for seals and other wildlife. Erosion of the sea wall also raised concerns about the potential release of toxic wastes into the ocean. The USFWS began construction on the Tern Island sea wall in 2004 to reduce entrapment hazards and protect the island shoreline. ~~The USFWS considers this a high priority project to complete, and is~~

~~pursuing funding to that end.~~ Vessel groundings pose a continuing threat to monk seals and their habitat, through potential physical damage to reefs, oil spills, and release of debris into habitats.

~~There are indications that m~~Monk seal abundance is likely increasing in the main Hawaiian Islands (Baker et al. in review~~Baker and Johanos 2004~~). Further, the excellent condition of pups weaned on these islands suggests that there may be ample prey resources available, perhaps in part due to fishing pressure that has reduced monk seal competition with large fish predators (sharks and jacks) (Baker and Johanos 2004). If the monk seal population continues to ~~does~~ expand in the MHI, it may bode well for the species' recovery and long-term persistence. In contrast, there are many challenges that may limit the potential for growth in this region. The human population in the MHI is approximately 1.2 million compared to fewer than 100 in the NWHI, so that the potential impact of disturbance in the MHI is great. Also, the same fishing pressure that may have reduced the monk seal's competitors, is a ~~As noted above, the hooking of monk seals by fishermen in the MHI is another~~ source of injury and mortality. Finally, vessel traffic in the populated islands carries the potential for collision with seals and impacts from oil spills. Thus, issues surrounding monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands will likely become an increasing focus for management and recovery of this species.

REFERENCES

Antonelis, G. A., J. D. Baker, T. C. Johanos, R. C. Braun, and A. L. Harting.2006. Hawaiian monk seal (*Monachus schauinslandi*): Status and Conservation Issues.Atoll Res. Bull. 543:75-101.Bailey, A. M. 1952. The Hawaiian monk seal. Museum Pictorial, Denver Museum of Natural History 7:1-32.

Baker, J. D. 2004. Evaluation of closed capture-recapture methods to estimate abundance of Hawaiian monk seals, *Monachus schauinslandi*. Ecological Applications 14:987-998.

Baker JD. 2008. Variation in the relationship between offspring size and survival provides insight into causes of mortality in Hawaiian monk seals. Endangered Species Research 5:55-64.

Baker, J.D., A.L. Harting, and T.C. Johanos. 2006. Use of discovery curves to assess abundance of Hawaiian monk seals. Marine Mammal Science 22:847-861.

Baker, J.D., A.L. Harting, T.A. Wurth, and T.C. Johanos. In review. Dramatic shifts in Hawaiian monk seal distribution and abundance are predicted to result from divergent regional trends. Marine Mammal Science.

Baker, J. D. and T. C. Johanos. 2003. Abundance of Hawaiian monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands. Biological Conservation 116:103-110.

Baker, J. D. and T. C. Johanos. 2002. Effects of research handling on the endangered Hawaiian monk seal. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 18:500-512.

Baker JD, and Littnan CL. 2008. Report of the Hawaiian Monk Seal Captive Care Workshop, Honolulu, Hawaii, June 11–13, 2007. Pacific Islands Fish. Sci. Cent., Natl. Mar. Fish. Serv., NOAA, Honolulu, HI 96822-2396. Pacific Islands Fish. Sci. Cent. Admin. Rep. H-08-02, 42 p.

Baker J. D., C. L. Littnan, and D. W. Johnston. 2006. Potential effects of sea-level rise on the terrestrial habitats of endangered and endemic megafauna in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Endangered Species Research 4:1-10.

Baker, J.D., J.J. Polovina, and E.A. Howell. 2007. Effect of variable oceanic productivity on the survival of an upper trophic predator, the Hawaiian monk seal, Monachus schauinslandi. Marine Ecology Progress Series 346:277-283.

Baker J.D. and P.M. Thompson. 2007. Temporal and spatial variation in age-specific survival rates of a long-lived mammal, the Hawaiian monk seal. Proceedings of the Royal Society B 274:407-415.

Clapp, R. B., and P. W. Woodward. 1972. The natural history of Kure Atoll, Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, Atoll Res. Bull. 164:303-304.

~~Church, J.A., Gregory, J.M., Huybrechts, P., Kuhn, M., Lambeck, K., Nhuan, M.T., Qin, D., and Woodworth, P.L. (2001). *Chapter 11: Changes in sea level.* Climate change 2001: the scientific basis. In: Houghton, J.T., Ding, Y., Griggs, D.J., Noguer, M., van der Linden, P., Dai, X., Maskell, K. and Johnson, C.I. (editors): Contribution of working group I to the third assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, p. 641-693.~~

Dill, H. R., and W. A. Bryan. 1912. Report on an expedition to Laysan Island in 1911. U.S. Dept. of Agric. Surv. Bull. 42:1-30.

Donohue, M. J., R. Brainard, M. Parke, and D. Foley. 2000. Mitigation of environmental impacts of derelict fishing gear through debris removal and environmental monitoring. *In* Hawaiian Islands Humpback Whale National Marine Sanctuary, Proceedings of the International Marine Debris Conference on Derelict Fishing Gear and the Ocean Environment, 6-11 August 2000, Honolulu, Hawaii. p. 383-402. http://hawaiihumpbackwhale.noaa.gov/special_offerings/sp_off/proceedings.html.

Donohue, M.J., R.C. Boland, C.M. Sramek, and G.A. Antonelis. 2001. Derelict fishing gear in the Northwestern

Hawaiian Islands: diving surveys and debris removal in 1999 confirm threat to coral reef ecosystems. Marine Pollution Bulletin 42(12):1301_1312.

Forney, K.A., J. Barlow, M.M. Muto, M. Lowry, J. Baker, G. Cameron, J. Mobley, C. Stinchcomb, and J.V. Carretta. 2000. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2000. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-300. 276 p.

Gerrodette, T. M., and W. G. Gilmartin. 1990. Demographic consequences of changed pupping and hauling sites of the Hawaiian monk seal. Conserv. Biol. 4:423-430.

Goodman-Lowe, G. D. 1998. Diet of the Hawaiian monk seal (*Monachus schauinslandi*) from the northwestern Hawaiian islands during 1991 to 1994. Marine Biology 132:535-546.

Harting, A.L. 2002. Stochastic simulation model for the Hawaiian monk seal. PhD thesis, Montana State University, 328 p.

Henderson, J. R. 1990. Recent entanglements of Hawaiian monk seals in marine debris. In R. S. Shomura and M. L. Godfrey (eds.), Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Marine Debris, April 2-7, 1989, Honolulu, Hawaii, p. 540-553. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA, Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-154.

Henderson, J.R. 2001. A Pre_ and Post_MARPOL Annex V Summary of Hawaiian Monk Seal Entanglements and Marine Debris Accumulation in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 1982_1998. Marine Pollution Bulletin 42:584_589.

Johanos, T. C. and J. D. Baker (editors). 2001. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 1999. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-310, 130 p.

~~Johanos, T. C. and J. D. Baker (editors). 2007. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 2003. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-9, 116 p.~~

Johanos, T. C. and J. D. Baker (editors). In press. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 2004. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-XXX, XXX p.

Johanos, T. C. and J. D. Baker (editors). In prep. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 2005. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-XXX, XXX p.

Johanos, T. C. and J. D. Baker (editors). In prep. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 2006. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-XXX, XXX p.

Johanos, T. C. (editor). In prep. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 2007. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-XXX, XXX p.

Johanos, T. C. (editor). In prep. The Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 2008. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-XXX, XXX p.

Johnson, A. M., and E. Kridler. 1983. Interisland movement of Hawaiian monk seals. 'Elepaio 44(5):43-45.

Kawamoto, K. E. 1995. Northwestern Hawaiian Islands bottomfish fishery, 1994. Admin. Rep. H-95-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole St., Honolulu, HI 96822-2396. 26 pp.

Kenyon, K. W. 1972. Man versus the monk seal. J. Mammal. 53(4):687-696.

Kretzmann, M. B., W. G. Gilmartin, A. Meyer, G. P. Zegers, S. R. Fain, B. F. Taylor, and D. P. Costa. 1997. Low genetic variability in the Hawaiian monk seal. Conserv. Biol. 11(2):482-490.

Kretzmann, M. B., N. J. Gemmell, and A. Meyer. 2001. Microsatellite analysis of population structure in the endangered Hawaiian monk seal. Conserv. Biol. 15(2):457-466.

Littnan, C. L., B. S. Stewart, P. K. Yochem, and R. Braun. 2006. Survey for selected pathogens and evaluation of disease risk factors for endangered Hawaiian monk seals in the main Hawaiian Islands. EcoHealth 4.

Goodman-Lowe, G. D. 1998. Diet of the Hawaiian monk seal (*Monachus schauinslandi*) from the Northwestern Hawaiian islands during 1991 to 1994. Marine Biology 132:535-546.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2002. Biological Opinion for the Management of the Bottomfish and Seamount Groundfish Fisheries in the Western Pacific Region According to the Fishery Management Plan for the Bottomfish and Seamount Groundfish Fisheries of the Western Pacific Region.

Nitta, E. T., and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Otis, D. L., K. P. Burnham, G. C. White, and D. R. Anderson. 1978. Statistical inference from capture data on closed animal populations. Wildl. Monogr. 62:1-135.

Parrish, F. A., M. P. Craig, T. J. Ragen, G. J. Marshall, and B. M. Buhleier. 2000. Identifying diurnal foraging habitat of endangered Hawaiian monk seals using a seal-mounted video camera. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 16:392-412.

Pooley, S. G., and K. E. . 1998. Annual report of the 1995-97 western Pacific lobster fishery. Admin. Rep. H-98-09. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole St., Honolulu, HI

96822-2396. 34 pp.
Ragen, T. J. 1993. Status of the Hawaiian monk seal in 1992. Admin. Rep. H-93-05. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole St., Honolulu, HI 96822-2396. 79 pp.
Ragen, T.J. 1999. Human activities affecting the population trends of the Hawaiian monk seal. Pages 183-194 *in* J.A. Musick, ed. Life in the slow lane: Ecology and conservation of long-lived marine animals. American Fisheries Society Symposium 23, American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, MD.
Rexstad, E. A., and K. P. Burnham. 1991. User's manual for interactive Program CAPTURE. Colorado Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, CO. 29 pp.
Rice, D. W. 1960. Population dynamics of the Hawaiian monk seal. J. Mammal. 41:376-385.
Schultz JK, Baker JD, Toonen RJ, Bowen BW. 2009~~In press~~. Extremely low genetic diversity in the endangered Hawaiian monk seal (*Monachus schauinslandi*). Journal of Heredity 100:25-33.
Schultz JK, Baker JD, Toonen RJ, Bowen BW (in review) Weak stock structure in a sea of connectivity: the case of the critically endangered Hawaiian monk sea. Conservation Biology ~~Small but significant levels of genetic differentiation do not reflect biologically meaningful spatial structure in the Hawaiian monk seal~~.
Stewart B. S., G. A. Antonelis, J. D. Baker, and P.Y.Yochem. 2006. Foraging biogeography of the Hawaiian monk seal in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Atoll Res Bull 543:131-145.
U.S. Department of Commerce and Department of the Interior. 2006. Northwestern Hawaiian Islands Marine National Monument. Federal Register 71:51,134-51,142.
Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.
Wade, P. R. 1998. Calculating limits to the allowable human-caused mortality of cetaceans and pinnipeds. Marine Mammal Science 14:1-37.
Wetmore, A. 1925. Bird life among lava rock and coral sand. The Natl. Geograp. Mag. 48:77-108.
White, G. C., D. R. Anderson, K. P. Burnham, and L. Otis. 1982. Capture-recapture and removal methods for sampling closed populations. Los Alamos National Laboratory, Los Alamos, New Mexico.
~~Yochem, P. K., R. C. Braun, B. Ryon, J. D. Baker, and G. A. Antonelis. 2004. Contingency plan for Hawaiian monk seal Unusual Mortality Events. NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-2, 27 p.~~

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

DALL'S PORPOISE (*Phocoenoides dalli dalli*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Dall's porpoises are endemic to temperate waters of the North Pacific Ocean. Off the U.S. west coast, they are commonly seen in shelf, slope and offshore waters (Figure 1; Morejohn 1979). Sighting patterns from aerial and shipboard surveys conducted in California, Oregon and Washington at different times (Green et al. 1992, 1993; Mangels and Gerrodette 1994; Barlow 1995; Forney et al. 1995) suggest that north-south movement between these states occurs as oceanographic conditions change, both on seasonal and inter-annual time scales. The southern end of this population's range is not well-documented, but they are commonly seen off Southern California in winter, and during cold-water periods they probably range into Mexican waters off northern Baja California. The stock structure of eastern North Pacific Dall's porpoises is not known, but based on patterns of stock differentiation in the western North Pacific, where they have been more intensively studied, it is expected that separate stocks will emerge when data become available (Perrin and Brownell 1994). Although Dall's porpoises are not restricted to U.S. territorial waters, there are no cooperative management agreements with Mexico or Canada for fisheries which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Dall's porpoises within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Alaskan waters.

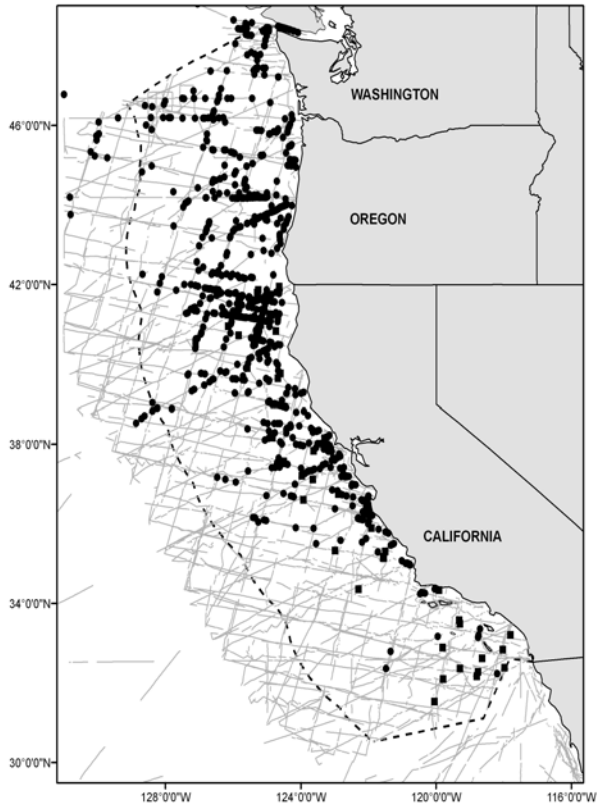


Figure 1. Dall's porpoise sightings based on aerial and shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines represent completed transect effort of all surveys combined. Key: ● = summer/autumn ship-based sightings; ■ = winter/spring aerial-based sightings.

POPULATION SIZE

~~The distribution of~~ Dall's porpoise distribution in ~~throughout~~ this region is highly variable between years and appears to be affected by oceanographic conditions (Forney 1997; Forney and Barlow 1998). Because animals may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone as oceanographic conditions change, a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The most recent estimate of Dall's porpoise abundance is the geometric mean of estimates from ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010) summer/autumn vessel-based line transect surveys of California, Oregon, and Washington waters, or ~~48,376~~ 42,000 (CV = ~~0.24~~ 0.33) animals. Additional numbers of Dall's porpoises occur in the inland waters of Washington

state, but the most recent abundance estimate obtained in 1996 (900 animals, CV=0.40) is over 8 years old (Calambokidis et al. 1997) and is not included in the overall estimate of abundance for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 average abundance estimate for the outer coast of California, Oregon and Washington waters is ~~39,709~~ 32,106 Dall's porpoises.

Current Population Trend

No information is available regarding trends in abundance of Dall's porpoises in California, Oregon and Washington. Their distribution and abundance in this region varies considerably at both seasonal and interannual time scales as oceanographic conditions vary (Forney 1997; Forney and Barlow 1998).

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for Dall's porpoise off the U.S. west coast.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~39,709~~ 32,106) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a species of unknown status and mortality rate CV; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~318~~ 257 Dall's porpoises per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for this stock of Dall's porpoises is given in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mean annual takes for all fisheries for which mortality data are available are ~~1.4~~ animals per year. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of Dall's porpoise entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species.

Mortality of Dall's porpoises has also been documented in the California/Oregon/Washington domestic groundfish trawl fisheries (Perez and Loughlin 1991; Perez 2003). Between ~~2000 and 2004~~ 2002 and 2006 with ~~80%~~ 100% of the fishing effort observed, one Dall's porpoise was reported killed in the at-sea processing portion of the Pacific ~~whiting~~ hake trawl fishery. ~~In addition, one Dall's porpoise was reported killed in 2004 under the MMAP self-reporting program. More recent estimates of Dall's porpoise mortality are unavailable from this fishery.~~

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality ~~and injury~~ of Dall's porpoises (California/ Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. ~~All observed entanglements of Dall's porpoise resulted in the death of the animal.~~ Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses; n/a = not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data for the CA/OR swordfish drift gillnet fishery and ~~2000-2004~~ 2002-2006 for groundfish ~~and salmon~~ fisheries. ~~MMAP refers to fisher self-reports of incidental takes under the Marine Mammal Authorization Program.~~

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0 (n/a)
WA/OR/CA domestic groundfish trawl (At-sea processing Pacific hake fishery).	observer ~~MMAP~~	~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ 2002 2003 2004 2005 2006 ~~2004~~	~~80.6%~~ ~~96.2%~~ 100% 100% 100% 100% 100% ~~n/a~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 1 0 0 0 0 ~~1~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 1 (0) 0 0 0 0 ~~1~~	0.2 (n/a) ~~≥1 (n/a)~~
Puget Sound salmon drift gillnet (tribal fishery, Area 5, Strait of Juan de Fuca)	MMAP	2000-2004	n/a	1	1	≥0.2 (n/a)
Minimum total annual takes						~~1.4~~ ≥0.4 (n/a)

~~**Other Mortality**~~

~~One Dall's porpoise stranding between 2002-2006 showed evidence of a vessel collision as the cause of death. This results in an average annual mortality of 0.2 Dall's porpoise caused by vessel collisions.~~

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Dall's porpoises in California, Oregon and Washington relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate potential trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality ~~in 2002-2006 (fishery mortality + vessel collisions = 1.6~~ (≥0.4 animals) is estimated to be less than the PBR (~~318~~ 257), and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is less than 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Calambokidis, J., S. Osmek, and J. L. Laake. 1997. Aerial surveys for marine mammals in Washington and British Columbia inside waters. Final Contract Report for Contract 52ABNF-6-00092, available from Cascadia Research Collective, Waterstreet Building 218 ½ West Forth Avenue, Olympia, Washington 98501.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

Forney, K. A. 1994. Recent information on the status of odontocetes in Californian waters. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-202. 87 pp.

Forney, K. A. 1997. Patterns of variability and environmental models of relative abundance for California cetaceans. Ph.D. dissertation, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California, San Diego.

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27 p.

Green, G., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington. Ch. 1. *In*: Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. OCS Study 91-0093. Final Report prepared

for Pacific OCS Region, Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Los Angeles, California.

Green, G., R. A. Grotefendt, M. A. Smultea, C. E. Bowlby, and R. A. Rowlett. 1993. Delphinid aerial surveys in Oregon and Washington waters. Final Report prepared for NMFS, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way, NE, Seattle, Washington, 98115, Contract #50ABNF200058.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 pp.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Mangels, K. F. and Gerrodette, T. 1994. Report of cetacean sightings during a marine mammal survey in the eastern Pacific Ocean and Gulf of California aboard the NOAA ships *McARTHUR* and *DAVID STARR JORDAN* July 28 - November 6, 1993. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-211. 88 pp.

Morejohn, G. V. 1979. The natural history of Dall's porpoise in the North Pacific Ocean. *In:* Winn, H. E. and B. L. Olla (eds.), Behavior of Marine Mammals, p. 45-83. Plenum Press, New York - London.

Perez, M. A. and T. R. Loughlin. 1991. Incidental catch of marine mammals by foreign and joint venture trawl vessels in the U.S. EEZ of the North Pacific, 1973-88. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Rep. 104. 57 p.

Perez, M. 2003. Compilation of marine mammal incidental take data from the domestic and joint venture groundfish fisheries in the U.S. EEZ of the North Pacific, 1989-2001. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-138. 145 pp.

Perrin, W. F. and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1994. A brief review of stock identity in small marine cetaceans in relation to assessment of driftnet mortality in the North Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:393-401.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

PACIFIC WHITE-SIDED DOLPHIN (*Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*): California/Oregon/Washington, Northern and Southern Stocks

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Pacific white-sided dolphins are endemic to temperate waters of the North Pacific Ocean, and are common both on the high seas and along the continental margins. Off the U.S. west coast, Pacific white-sided dolphins have been seen primarily in shelf and slope waters (Figure 1). Sighting patterns from recent aerial and shipboard surveys conducted in California, Oregon and Washington (Green et al. 1992; 1993; Barlow 1995; Forney et al. 1995) suggest seasonal north-south movements, with animals found primarily off California during the colder water months and shifting northward into Oregon and Washington as water temperatures increase in late spring and summer (Green et al. 1992; Forney 1994).

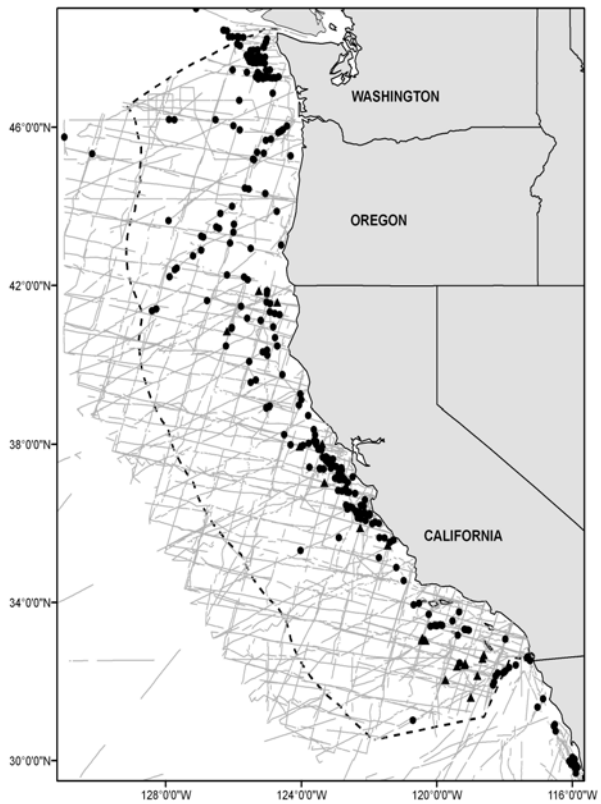


Figure 1. Pacific white-sided dolphin sightings based on aerial and shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991- ~~2005~~ 2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined. Key: ● = summer/autumn ship-based sightings; ▲ = winter/spring aerial-based sightings.

Stock structure throughout the North Pacific is poorly understood, but based on morphological evidence, two forms are known to occur off the California coast (Walker et al. 1986; Chivers et al. 1993). Specimens belonging to the northern form were collected from north of about 33°N, (Southern California to Alaska), and southern specimens were obtained from about 36°N southward along the coasts of California and Baja California. Samples of both forms have been collected in the Southern California Bight, but it is unclear whether this indicates sympatry in this region or whether they may occur there at different times (seasonally or interannually). Recent genetic analyses have confirmed the distinctness of animals found off Baja California from animals occurring in U.S. waters north of Point Conception, California and in the high seas of the North Pacific (Lux et al. 1997). Based on these genetic data, an area of mixing between the two forms appears to be located off Southern California (Lux et al. 1997).

Although there is clear evidence that two forms of Pacific white-sided dolphins occur along the U.S. west coast, there are no known differences in color pattern, and it is not currently possible to distinguish animals without genetic or morphometric analyses. Geographic stock boundaries appear dynamic and are poorly understood, and therefore cannot be used to differentiate the two forms. Until means of differentiating the two forms for abundance and mortality estimation are developed, these two stocks must be managed as a single unit; however, this is an undesirable management situation. Furthermore, Pacific white-sided dolphins are not restricted to U.S. territorial waters, but cooperative management agreements with Mexico exist only for the tuna purse seine fishery and not for other fisheries

which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). Additional means of differentiating the two types must be found, and cooperative management with Mexico is particularly important for this species, given the apparently dynamic nature of geographical stock boundaries. Until these goals are accomplished, the management stock includes animals of both forms. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Pacific white-sided dolphins within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Alaskan waters.

POPULATION SIZE

The most recent estimates of abundance for Pacific white-sided dolphins are based on two summer/autumn shipboard surveys conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington in ~~2001 and~~ 2005 (~~Barlow and Forney 2007;~~ Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). The distribution of Pacific white-sided dolphins throughout this region is highly variable, apparently in response to oceanographic changes on both seasonal and interannual time scales (Forney and Barlow 1998). As oceanographic conditions vary, Pacific white-sided dolphins may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, and therefore a multi-year average abundance estimate including California, Oregon and Washington is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the two most recent ship surveys is ~~20,719 (CV = 0.22)~~ 26,930 (CV=0.28) Pacific white-sided dolphins (~~Barlow and Forney 2007;~~ Forney 2007, Barlow, 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 average abundance estimate is ~~17,201~~ 21,406 Pacific white-sided dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No long-term trends in the abundance of Pacific white-sided dolphins in California, Oregon and Washington are suggested based on historical and recent surveys (Dohl et al. 1980; 1983; Green et al. 1992; 1993; Barlow 1995; Forney et al. 1995, Barlow and Forney 2007, Forney 2007).

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for Pacific white-sided dolphins off the U.S. west coast.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~17,201~~ 21,406) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.45 (for a species of unknown status with a mortality rate CV > 0.60 and ≤0.80; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~155~~ 193 Pacific white-sided dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for this stock of Pacific white-sided dolphin is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Including mortality from drift gillnet, groundfish trawl, and unknown fisheries, the average annual fishery-related mortality of Pacific white-sided dolphins is ~~1.4~~ 10.5 (CV = ~~0.86~~ 0.65) animals. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b,~~ Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of Pacific white-sided dolphin entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of Pacific white-sided dolphins (California/ Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. All observed entanglements of Pacific white-sided dolphins resulted in the death of the animal. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses; n/a = not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~1~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 1 5	~~5 (0.86)~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 6 (1.00) 37 (0.70)	~~1 (0.86)~~ 8.6 (0.77)
WA/OR/CA domestic groundfish trawl ~~fisheries~~ (At-sea processing Pacific ~~whiting~~ hake fishery ~~only~~).	observer	~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ 2002 2003 2004 2005 2006	~~80.6%~~ ~~96.2%~~ 100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 1 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 1 (n/a) 0 0 0	0.2 n/a)
West Coast limited entry bottom trawl fishery	observer	2002 2003 2004 2005	10-33%, varies by reporting area	1 in 2003	7.5 (0.93)	1.9 (0.93)
Unknown fishery	stranding	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008		~~0~~ ~~0~~ 1 0 0 0 0	n/a	≥0.2 (n/a)
Minimum total annual takes						~~1.4 (0.86)~~ 10.5 (0.65)

Low levels of mortality for Pacific white-sided dolphins have also been documented in the California/Oregon/Washington domestic groundfish trawl fisheries (Perez and Loughlin 1991; ~~Perez, in prep;~~ Northwest Fisheries Science Center 2008). Between ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008, with ~~80~~ 100% of the fishing effort observed, one Pacific white-sided dolphin was reported killed in the at-sea processing portion of the Pacific whiting trawl fishery (NMFS,unpublished data). One white-sided dolphin death was reported in the limited entry bottom trawl fishery in 2003, resulting in a bycatch estimate of 7.5 animals (Table 1).

~~One gillnet fishery related stranding of a Pacific white-sided dolphin in California/ Oregon/Washington was recorded between 2002-2006 (Table 1).~~

Other removals

In 2008, fifteen Pacific white-sided dolphin were incidentally killed in California waters during scientific sardine trawling operations conducted by NMFS (Southwest Regional Office Stranding Program, unpublished data). Three mortality events occurred in April trawls, after which NMFS scientists met to discuss & implement a mitigation plan to avoid future mortality events. The initial mitigation plan included use of 162 dB acoustic pingers, a marine mammal watch, and scheduling trawls to occur when the ship first arrived on station to avoid attracting animals to a stationary vessel. During August 2008 trawls, twelve additional Pacific white-sided dolphin were killed. One trawl caught 11 Pacific white-sided dolphins and six northern right whale dolphinsw. In 2009, a marine mammal excluder device was added to the trawls. In 2009, no additional mortality was observed during 42 trawls. However, a group of three Pacific white-sided dolphin became entangled in the trawl during retrieval. Two animals were brought aboard alive and immediately released, while a third animal escaped through the excluder device. Eight additional Pacific white-sided dolphins were killed in research surface trawls between 2005 and 2006 (NMFS Northwest Region, unpublished data). The average annual research-related mortality of Pacific white-sided dolphin from 2004 to 2008 is 4.6 animals.

Additional removals of Pacific white-sided dolphins from the wild have occurred in live-capture fisheries off California. Brownell et al. (1999) estimate a minimum total live capture of 128 Pacific white-sided dolphins between the late 1950s and 1993. The most recent capture was in November 1993, when three animals were taken for public display (Forney 1994). No MMPA permits are currently active for live-captures of Pacific white-sided dolphins.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Pacific white-sided dolphins in California, Oregon and Washington relative to OSP is not known, and there is no indication of a trend in abundance for this stock. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Including commercial fishery (10.5/yr) and research-related mortality (4.6/yr), the average annual mortality for the 5-year period 2004-2008 is 15.1 animals. The average annual human-caused mortality in ~~2000–2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~1.4~~ 15.1 animals) is estimated to be less than the PBR (~~155~~ 193), and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is less than 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Brownell, R. L., Jr., W. A. Walker and K. A. Forney. 1999. Pacific white-sided dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus obliquidens* Gill, 1865. Pages 57-84 *In:* Ridgway, S. H. and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 6. Academic Press, San Diego.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03,

available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Chivers, S. J., K. M. Peltier, W. T. Norman, P. A. Akin, and J. Heyning. 1993. Population structure of cetaceans in California coastal waters. Paper SOCCS9 presented at the Status of California Cetacean Stocks Workshop, held in La Jolla, California, March 31-April 2, 1993. 49p.

Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-1983: Status, abundance and distribution. OCS Study MMS 84-0045. Minerals Management Service Contract # 14-12-0001-29090. 284p.

Dohl, T. P., K. S. Norris, R. C. Guess, J. D. Bryant, and M. W. Honig. 1980. Summary of marine mammal and seabird surveys of the Southern California Bight area, 1975-1978. Part II. Cetacea of the Southern California Bight. Final Report to the Bureau of Land Management, NTIS Rep. No. PB81248189. 414p.

Forney, K. A. 1994. Recent information on the status of odontocetes in Californian waters. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-202. 87 pp.

Forney, K. A. 1997. Patterns of variability and environmental models of relative abundance for California cetaceans. Ph.D. dissertation, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California, San Diego.

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Green, G., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington. Ch. 1. In: Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. OCS Study 91-0093. Final Report prepared for Pacific OCS Region, Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Los Angeles, California.

Green, G., R. A. Grotefendt, M. A. Smultea, C. E. Bowlby, and R. A. Rowlett. 1993. Delphinid aerial surveys in Oregon and Washington waters. Final Report prepared for NMFS, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way, NE, Seattle, Washington, 98115, Contract #50ABNF200058.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142. 276 pp.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Lux, C. A., A. S. Costa, and A. E. Dizon. 1997. Mitochondrial DNA population structure of the Pacific white-sided dolphin. Rep. Int. Whaling. Commn. 47:645-652.

Northwest Fisheries Science Center, NOAA Fisheries. 2008. Report on the bycatch of marine mammals and seabirds by the U.S. West Coast Groundfish Fleet. Northwest Fisheries Science Center, At-sea Hake Observer Program, West Coast Groundfish Observer Program. 34p.

Perez, M. A. and T. R. Loughlin. 1991. Incidental catch of marine mammals by foreign and joint venture trawl vessels in the U.S. EEZ of the North Pacific, 1973-88. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 104. 57 pp.

Perez, M. A. (in prep). Summary of marine mammal incidental catch data for domestic and joint venture groundfish fisheries in the U.S. EEZ of the North Pacific, 1989-2001. NOAA Tech. Memo.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Walker, W. A., S. Leatherwood, K. R. Goodrich, W. F. Perrin and R. K. Stroud. 1986. Geographical variation and biology of the Pacific white-sided dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*, in the north-eastern Pacific. *In:* Bryden, M. M. and R. Harrison (eds.), Research on Dolphins, p. 441-465. Clarendon Press, Oxford.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

RISSO'S DOLPHIN (*Grampus griseus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Risso's dolphins are distributed world-wide in tropical and warm-temperate waters. Off the U.S. West coast, Risso's dolphins are commonly seen on the shelf in the Southern California Bight and in slope and offshore waters of California, Oregon and Washington. Based on sighting patterns from recent aerial and shipboard surveys conducted in these three states during different seasons (Figure 1), animals found off California during the colder water months are thought to shift northward into Oregon and Washington as water temperatures increase in late spring and summer (Green et al. 1992). The southern end of this population's range is not well-documented, but previous surveys have shown a conspicuous 500 nmi distributional gap between these animals and Risso's dolphins sighted south of Baja California and in the Gulf of California (Mangels and Gerrodette 1994). Thus this population appears distinct from animals found in the eastern tropical Pacific and the Gulf of California. Although Risso's dolphins are not restricted to U.S. waters, cooperative management agreements with Mexico exist only for the tuna purse seine fishery and not for other fisheries which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Risso's dolphins within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Hawaiian waters.

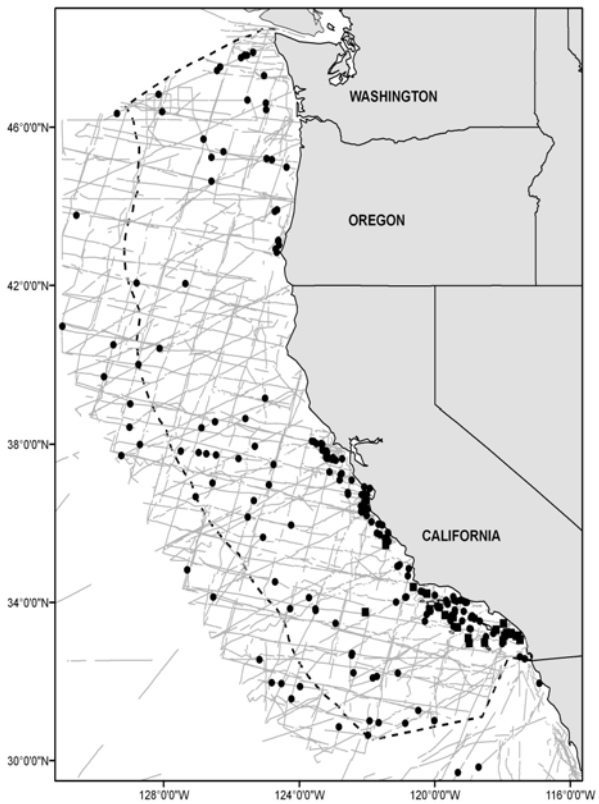


Figure 1. Risso's dolphin sightings based on aerial and shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined. Key: • = summer/autumn ship-based sightings; ■ = winter/spring aerial-based sightings.

POPULATION SIZE

Current estimates of population size are derived from two shipboard surveys within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington in summer/autumn of ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). The distribution of Risso's dolphins throughout this region is highly variable, apparently in response to oceanographic changes on both seasonal and interannual time scales (Forney and Barlow 1998). As oceanographic conditions vary, Risso's dolphins may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, and therefore a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001-~~2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the two most recent ship surveys is ~~11,621 (CV = 0.17)~~ 6,272 (CV=0.30) Risso's dolphins (~~Barlow and Forney 2007,~~ Forney, 2007, Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001-~~2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate is ~~10,054~~ 4,913 Risso's dolphins.

Current Population Trend

Barlow and Forney (2007) and Barlow (2010) report abundance estimates ranging from approximately ~~5,000~~ 4,000 to 11,000 animals in California waters for five separate surveys conducted between 1991 and ~~2005~~ 2008, with no apparent trend in abundance. Inter-annual variability in the distribution of Risso's dolphin within the ship survey study area is likely responsible for the differences in estimated abundance between surveys. ~~Currently, there is no evidence of a trend in abundance for this stock.~~

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for this stock.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~10,054~~ 4,913) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.48~~ 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with a mortality rate CV > 0.80 ~~0.30 and < 0.60~~; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~97~~ 39 Risso's dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for this stock of Risso's dolphin is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of Risso's dolphin entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species. ~~Additional mortality and injury information from the former California shallow-set longline fishery and unknown fishery-related strandings are included in Table 1.~~ Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimate ~~4.9~~ 1.6 (CV = ~~0.50~~ 0.99) Risso's dolphins taken annually.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of Risso's dolphin (California/ Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. All observed entanglements of Risso's dolphins resulted in the death of the animal. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses; n/a = not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~4~~ 0 0 0 0 1	~~0~~ ~~20 (0.50)~~ 0 0 0 0 7 (0.99)	~~4 (0.50)~~ 1.4 (0.99)
CA shallow set longline fishery	observer	~~2001~~ ~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 No fishery in 2005	~~n/a~~ < 10%	~~1 animal released injured in 2003, hook not removed~~	~~n/a~~ 0	~~0.25 (n/a)~~ 0
CA deep set longline fishery	observer	2005-2008	100%	0	0	0
Market squid purse seine	observer	~~2004-2006~~ 2004-2008	<10%	0	0	0
Unknown fishery	Stranding	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004-2008		~~2~~ ~~1~~ 1	~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ ≥1	~~0.6 (n/a)~~ ≥0.2
Minimum total annual takes						~~4.9 (0.50)~~ 1.6 (0.99)

~~Additional~~ Historically, mortality of ~~unknown extent~~ has been documented for Risso's dolphins in the squid purse seine fishery off Southern California (Heyning et al. 1994). This mortality probably represented animals killed intentionally to protect catch or gear, rather than incidental mortality, and such intentional takes are now illegal under the 1994 Amendment to the MMPA. This fishery has expanded markedly since 1992 (California Department of Fish and Game, unpubl. data). ~~In addition to mortality observed in the drift gillnet fishery, there were three fishery related strandings of Risso's dolphin during 2002-2006. Bullets or bullet fragments were removed from two of the three animals while the third animal showed evidence of gunshot wounds. Two animals had recently been feeding on squid. The timing, circumstances and location of the strandings suggests that the squid purse seine fishery may have been responsible for the mortality.~~ An observer program in the squid purse seine fishery was initiated in 2004 and a total of ~~193~~ 377 sets have been observed through ~~2006~~ 2008 without a Risso's dolphin interaction. Observer coverage in this fishery has been less than 10% of all fishing effort.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Risso's dolphins off California, Oregon and Washington relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate potential trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Over the last 5-year period (~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008), the average annual human-caused mortality (~~4.9~~ 1.6 animals) is estimated to be less than the PBR (~~97~~39), and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is less than 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27 p.

Green, G., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington. Ch. 1. In: Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. OCS Study 91-0093. Final Report prepared for Pacific OCS Region, Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Los Angeles, California.

Green, G., R. A. Grotefendt, M. A. Smultea, C. E. Bowlby, and R. A. Rowlett. 1993. Delphinid aerial surveys in Oregon and Washington waters. Final Report prepared for NMFS, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way, NE, Seattle, Washington, 98115, Contract #50ABNF200058.

Heyning, J. E., T. D. Lewis and C. D. Woodhouse. 1994. A note on odontocete mortality from fishing gear entanglements off Southern California. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:439-442.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Mangels, K. F. and Gerrodette, T. 1994. Report of cetacean sightings during a marine mammal survey in the eastern Pacific Ocean and Gulf of California aboard the NOAA ships *McARTHUR* and *DAVID STARR JORDAN* July 28 - November 6, 1993. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-211. 88 pp.

Shane, S. 1994. Occurrence and habitat use of marine mammals at Santa Catalina Island, California from 1983-91. Bull. Southern California Acad. Sci. 93:13-29.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commerce, NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): California/Oregon/Washington Offshore Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Bottlenose dolphins are distributed world-wide in tropical and warm-temperate waters. In many regions, including California, separate coastal and offshore populations are known (Walker 1981; Ross and Cockcroft 1990; Van Waerebeek et al. 1990; Lowther 2006; Lowther et al. in prep.). On surveys conducted off California, offshore bottlenose dolphins have been found at distances greater than a few kilometers from the mainland and throughout the Southern California Bight. They have also been documented in offshore waters as far north as about 41°N (Figure 1), and they may range into Oregon and Washington waters during warm-water periods. Sighting records off California and Baja California (Lee 1993; Mangels and Gerrodette 1994) suggest that offshore bottlenose dolphins have a continuous distribution in these two regions. Based on aerial surveys conducted during winter/spring 1991-92 (Forney et al. 1995) and shipboard surveys conducted in summer/fall 1991 (Barlow 1995), no seasonality in distribution is apparent (Forney and Barlow 1998). Offshore bottlenose dolphins are not restricted to U.S. waters, but cooperative management agreements with Mexico exist only for the tuna purse seine fishery and not for other fisheries which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). Therefore, the management stock includes only animals found within U.S. waters. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, bottlenose dolphins within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into three stocks: 1) California coastal stock, 2) California, Oregon and Washington offshore stock (this report), and 3) Hawaiian stock.

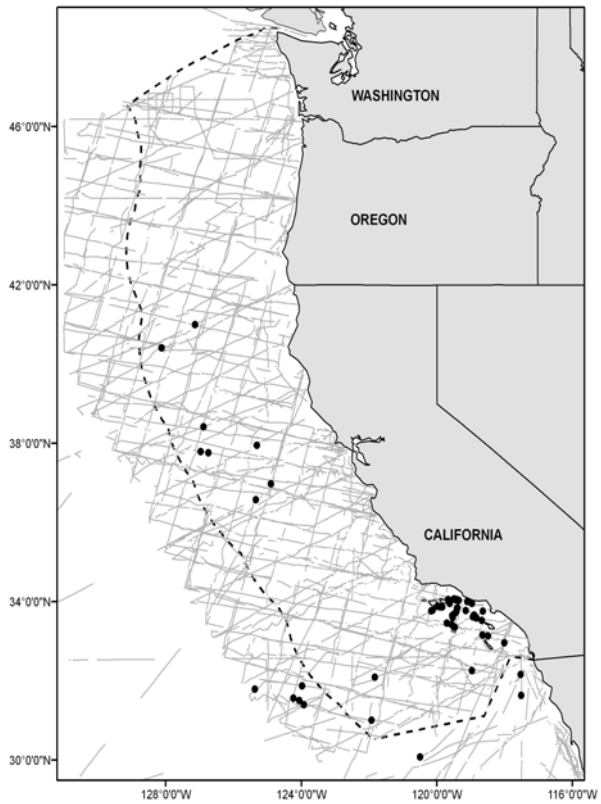


Figure 1. Offshore bottlenose dolphin sightings based on shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

The most recent shipboard surveys conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington were in and ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). Because the distribution of bottlenose dolphins appears to vary interannually and they may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The most comprehensive multi-year average abundance is the geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the ~~2001-~~ 2005 and 2008 ship surveys, or ~~3,495 (CV = 0. 0.31)~~ 1,006 (CV=0.48) offshore bottlenose dolphins (~~Barlow and Forney 2007,~~ Forney 2007, Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 average abundance estimate is ~~2,706~~ 684 offshore bottlenose dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No information on trends in abundance of offshore bottlenose dolphins is available.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for this population of offshore bottlenose dolphins.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~2,706~~ 684) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.50~~ 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with an unknown fishery mortality ~~rate~~ CV ~~< 0.30~~; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~27~~ 5.5 offshore bottlenose dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of known fishery mortality and injury for this stock of bottlenose dolphin is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the rarity of bottlenose dolphin entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species. In 2004, a bottlenose dolphin stranded dead near Newport Beach, California, with its flukes cut off, suggestive of an interaction with an entangling net fishery. The haplotype of this animal matched those of known *offshore* bottlenose dolphins (Lowther 2006, Lowther et al., in prep). Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimate of 0.2 offshore bottlenose dolphins taken annually.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of bottlenose dolphins (California/ Oregon/Washington Offshore Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0
Unknown fishery	strandings	2004-2008		1	≥1	≥0.2 (n/a)
Minimum total annual takes						≥0.2 (n/a)

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki

1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Offshore bottlenose dolphins are often associated with Risso's dolphins and pilot whales, for which mortality has been documented in the squid purse seine fishery off Southern California (Heyning et al. 1994). Based on this association, offshore bottlenose dolphins may also have experienced some mortality in this fishery. However these would probably represent animals killed intentionally to protect catch or gear, rather than incidental kills, and such intentional takes are now illegal under the 1994 Amendment to the MMPA.

Other removals

Twenty-seven bottlenose dolphins were captured off California between 1966 and 1982 (Walker 1975; Reeves and Leatherwood 1984). Based on the locations of capture activities, these animals probably were offshore bottlenose dolphins (Walker 1975). No additional captures of bottlenose dolphins off California have been documented since 1982, and no MMPA live-capture permits are currently active for this species.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of offshore bottlenose dolphins in California relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Because average annual fishery takes (0.2/year) are less than the calculated PBR (~~27~~ 5.5), offshore bottlenose dolphins are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is less than 10% of the PBR and thus can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.~~

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27 p.

Heyning, J. E., T. D. Lewis and C. D. Woodhouse. 1994. A note on odontocete mortality from fishing gear entanglements off Southern California. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:439-442.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. 1997. Cetacean mortality in California gill net fisheries: Preliminary estimates for 1996. Paper SC/49/SM02 presented to the International Whaling Commission, September 1997 (unpublished). 13 pp.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Lee, T. 1993. Summary of cetacean survey data collected between the years of 1974 and 1985. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-181. 184 pp.

Lowther, J. 2006. Genetic variation of coastal and offshore bottlenose dolphins, *Tursiops truncatus*, in the eastern North Pacific Ocean. M.S. Thesis, University of San Diego, San Diego, California, USA. 126 p.

Lowther, J.L., F.I. Archer, and D.W. Weller. Manuscript in preparation. Genetic variation of coastal and offshore bottlenose dolphins, *Tursiops truncatus*, in the eastern North Pacific Ocean.

Mangels, K. F. and Gerrodette, T. 1994. Report of cetacean sightings during a marine mammal survey in the eastern Pacific Ocean and Gulf of California aboard the NOAA ships *McARTHUR* and *DAVID STARR JORDAN* July 28 - November 6, 1993. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS, NMFS-SWFSC-211. 88 pp.

Reeves, R. R. and S. Leatherwood. 1984. Live-capture fisheries for cetaceans in USA and Canadian waters, 1973-1982. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn 34:497-507.

Ross, G. J. B. and V. G. Cockcroft. 1990. Comments on Australian bottlenose dolphins and the taxonomic status of *Tursiops aduncus* (Ehrenberg, 1832). *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. R. Reeves). pp. 101-128. Academic Press, 653pp.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Van Waerebeek, K., J. C. Reyes, A. J. Read, and J. S. McKinnon. 1990. Preliminary observations of bottlenose dolphins from the Pacific coast of South America. *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. R. Reeves). pp. 143-154 Academic Press, 653 pp.

Walker, W. A. 1975. Review of the live-capture fishery for smaller cetaceans taken in Southern California waters for public display, 1966-77. J. Fish. Res. Board. Can. 32:1197-1211.

Walker, W. A. 1981. Geographical variation in morphology and biology of bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops*) in the eastern North Pacific. Admin. Rep. LJ-81-03C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, La Jolla, CA 92038. 52p.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

STRIPED DOLPHIN (*Stenella coeruleoalba*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Striped dolphins are distributed world-wide in tropical and warm-temperate pelagic waters. On recent shipboard surveys extending about 300 nmi offshore of California, they were sighted within about 100-300 nmi from the coast (Figure 1). No sightings have been reported for Oregon and Washington waters, but striped dolphins have stranded in both states (Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, unpublished data; Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, unpublished data). Striped dolphins are also commonly found in the central North Pacific, but sampling between this region and California has been insufficient to determine whether the distribution is continuous. Based on sighting records off California and Mexico, striped dolphins appear to have a continuous distribution in offshore waters of these two regions (Perrin et al. 1985; Mangels and Gerrodette 1994). No information on possible seasonality in distribution is available, because the California surveys which extended 300 nmi offshore were conducted only during the summer/fall period. Although striped dolphins are not restricted to U.S. waters, cooperative management agreements with Mexico exist only for the tuna purse seine fishery and not for other fisheries which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). Therefore, the management stock includes only animals found within U.S. waters. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, striped dolphins within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) waters around Hawaii.

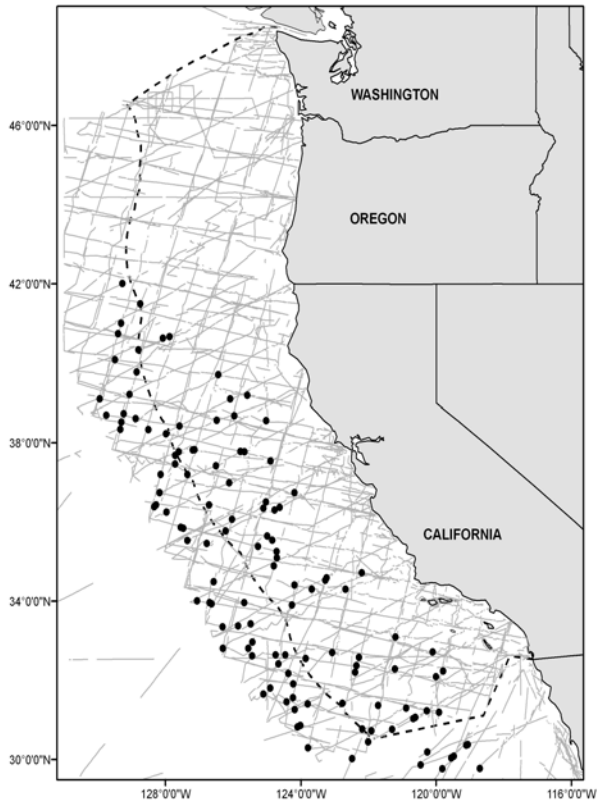


Figure 1. Striped dolphin sightings based on aerial and shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate the completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Abundance is estimated from two summer/fall shipboard surveys conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). The abundance of striped dolphins in this region appears to be variable between years and may be affected by oceanographic conditions, as with other odontocete species (Forney 1997, Forney and Barlow 1998). Because animals may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone as oceanographic conditions change, a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for

California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 ship surveys is ~~17,925 (CV=0.37)~~ 10,908 (CV=0.34) striped dolphins (Barlow and Forney 2007 , Forney 2007, Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 mean abundance estimate is ~~13,251~~ 8,231 striped dolphins.

Current Population Trend

Prior to a 1991 shipboard survey (Barlow 1995), striped dolphins were not thought to be common off California (Leatherwood et al. 1982), and two surveys extending approximately 200 nmi offshore of California and Baja California in 1979 and 1980 resulted in only one sighting of three striped dolphins (Smith et al. 1986). Thus it is possible that striped dolphin abundance off California has increased over the last decade (consistent with the observed warming trend for these waters; Roemmich 1992); however, no definitive statement can be made, because statistical estimates of abundance were not obtained for the earlier surveys. Barlow and Forney (2007) reported striped dolphin abundance estimates of 32,370, 14,622, 4,796, 12,570, and 25,561 for the years 1991, 1993, 1996, 2001, and 2005, respectively. The estimate from the most recent 2008 ship survey is 4,655 (CV=0.30) (Barlow 2010). Currently, there is no evidence of a trend in abundance for this stock.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for striped dolphins off California.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~13,251~~8,231) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~132~~ 82 striped dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for this stock of striped dolphin is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). No striped dolphins were observed killed in the most recent five-year period. One striped dolphin was observed killed in the drift gillnet fishery in 1994. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the rarity of striped dolphin entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species. Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimate of zero striped dolphins taken annually.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with

20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of striped dolphins (California/ Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses. ~~Mean annual takes are based on 2002-2006 data unless noted otherwise.~~

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008	~~18-22%~~ 13-21%	0	0	0
Minimum total annual takes						0

Other mortality

One striped dolphin stranded in Oregon in 2006 with "bruising and trauma, possible impact or fisheries interaction" evidence. This results in a human-caused average annual mortality of 0.2 striped dolphins per year for the period ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of striped dolphins in California relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate potential trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality in ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 is 0.2. Because recent fishery and human-caused mortality is less than 10% of the PBR (~~132~~ 82), striped dolphins are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-233. 15 pp.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Forney, K. A. 1997. Patterns of variability and environmental models of relative abundance for California cetaceans. Ph.D. dissertation, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California, San Diego.

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Leatherwood, S., R. R. Reeves, W. F. Perrin, and W. E. Evans. 1982. Whales, dolphins and porpoises of the eastern North Pacific and adjacent Arctic waters. A guide to their identification. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS Circular 444, U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA, NMFS. 245 pp.

Mangels, K. F. and Gerrodette, T. 1994. Report of cetacean sightings during a marine mammal survey in the eastern Pacific Ocean and Gulf of California aboard the NOAA ships *McARTHUR* and *DAVID STARR JORDAN* July 28 - November 6, 1993. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-211. 88 pp.

Perrin, W. F., M. D. Scott, G. J. Walker and V. L. Cass. 1985. Review of geographical stocks of tropical dolphins (*Stenella* spp. and *Delphinus delphis*) in the eastern Pacific. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 28. Available from NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, California, 92038. 28p.

Roemmich, D. 1992. Ocean warming and sea level rise along the southwest U.S. coast. Science 257:373-375.

Smith, R. C., P. Dustan, D. Au, K. S. Baker, and E. A. Dunlap. 1986. Distribution of cetaceans and sea-surface chlorophyll concentrations in the California Current. Marine Biology 91:385-402.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

SHORT-BEAKED COMMON DOLPHIN (*Delphinus delphis delphis*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Short-beaked common dolphins are the most abundant cetacean off California, and are widely distributed between the coast and at least 300 nmi distance from shore. The abundance of this species off California has been shown to change on both seasonal and inter-annual time scales (Dohl et al. 1986; Barlow 1995; Forney et al. 1995). Historically, they were reported primarily south of Pt. Conception (Dohl et al. 1986), but have been commonly sighted as far north as 42°N during 1991-~~2005~~ 2008 NMFS line-transect vessel surveys (Figure 1). Four strandings of common dolphins (*Delphinus sp.*) have been reported in Oregon and Washington since 1942 (B. Norberg, pers. comm.), but three of these could not be identified to species. One animal, which stranded in 1983, was identified as a short-beaked common dolphin (J. Hodder, pers. comm.). Significant seasonal shifts in the abundance and distribution of common dolphins have been identified based on winter/spring 1991-92 and summer/fall 1991 surveys (Forney and Barlow 1998). Their distribution is continuous southward into Mexican waters to about 13°N (Perrin et al. 1985; Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Mangels and Gerrodette 1994), and short-beaked common dolphins off California may be an extension of the "northern common dolphin" stock defined for management of eastern tropical Pacific tuna fisheries (Perrin et al. 1985). However, preliminary data on variation in dorsal fin color patterns suggest there may be multiple stocks in this region, including at least two possible stocks in California (Farley 1995). The less abundant long-beaked common dolphin has only recently been recognized as a different species (Heyning and Perrin 1994; Rosel et al. 1994), and much of the available information has not differentiated between the two types of common dolphin. Although short-beaked common dolphins are not restricted to U.S. waters, cooperative management agreements with Mexico exist only for the tuna purse seine fishery and not for other fisheries which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). Under the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA), short-beaked common dolphins involved in tuna purse seine fisheries in international waters of the eastern tropical Pacific are managed separately, and they are not included in the assessment reports. For the MMPA stock assessment reports, there is a single Pacific management stock including only animals found within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone of California, Oregon and Washington.

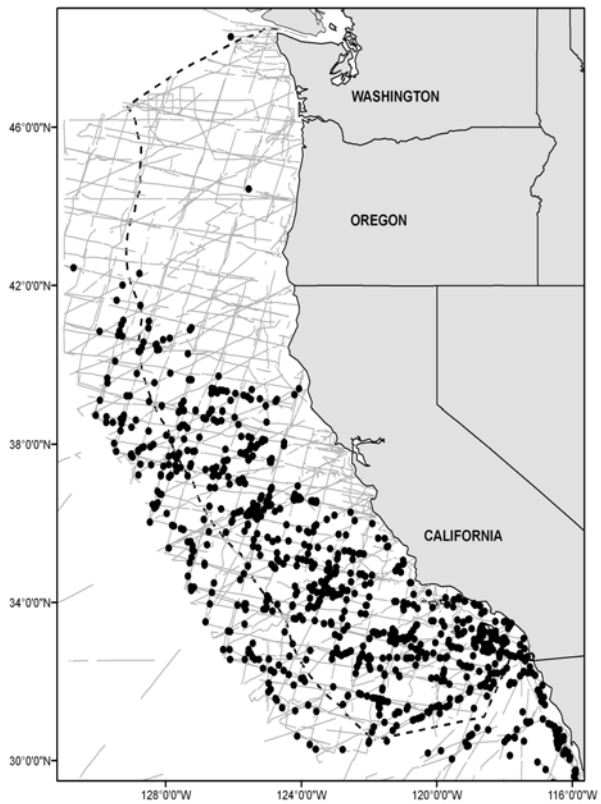


Figure 1. Short-beaked common dolphin sightings based on shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~ 2008 (see Appendix 2, for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

The most recent estimates of abundance estimates are based on two summer/fall shipboard surveys that were conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010.). The distribution of short-beaked common dolphins throughout this region is highly variable, apparently in response to oceanographic changes on both seasonal and interannual time scales (Heyning and Perrin 1994; Forney 1997; Forney and Barlow 1998). As oceanographic conditions vary, short-beaked common dolphins may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, and therefore a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the two ship surveys is ~~392,733~~ 411,211 (CV=~~0.18~~ 0.21) short-beaked common dolphins ~~(Forney 2007)~~.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 abundance estimate is ~~338,708~~ 343,990 short-beaked common dolphins.

Current Population Trend

In the past, common dolphin abundance has been shown to increase off California during the warm-water months (Dohl et al. 1986). Surveys conducted during both cold-water and warm-water conditions in 1991 and 1992 (Barlow 1995, Forney et al. 1995) resulted in overall abundance estimates (for both types of common dolphins combined) which were considerably greater than historical estimates (Dohl et al. 1986). ~~The recent combined abundance estimate for the 2001-2005 summer/fall surveys (Forney 2007) is the most precise to date.~~ Environmental models (Forney 1997) and seasonal comparisons (Forney and Barlow 1998) have shown that the abundance of short-beaked common dolphins off California varies with seasonal and interannual changes in oceanographic conditions. An ongoing decline in the abundance of 'northern common dolphins' (including both long-beaked and short-beaked common dolphins) in the eastern tropical Pacific and along the Pacific coast of Mexico suggests a possible northward shift in the distribution of common dolphins (IATTC 1997) during this period of gradual warming of the waters off California (Roemmich 1992). The majority of this shift would likely be reflected in an increase in short-beaked common dolphin abundance. Heyning and Perrin (1994) have detected changes in the proportion of short-beaked to long-beaked common dolphins stranding along the California coast, with short-beaked common dolphin stranding more frequently prior to the 1982-83 El Niño (which increased water temperatures off California), and the long-beaked common dolphin more commonly observed for several years afterwards. Thus, it appears that both relative and absolute abundances of these species off California may change with varying oceanographic conditions.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

There are no estimates of current or maximum net productivity rates for short-beaked common dolphins.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~338,708~~ 343,990) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with a mortality rate CV< 0.30; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~3,387~~ 3,440 short-beaked common dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for short-beaked common dolphins is shown in Table 1. Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimate of ~~77 (CV=0.38)~~ 64 (CV=0.29) short-beaked common dolphins taken annually. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, common dolphin entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). Since the initial pinger experiments in 1996, short-beaked common dolphin entanglement rates have remained below pre-pinger levels, even though a time/area closure in 2001 shifted fishing effort south of Point Conception, California, where common dolphin densities are highest (Figure 2). Prior to the use of acoustic pingers in the fishery, short-beaked common dolphin were observed entangled at a rate of 6.7 animals per 100 sets (125 entanglements in 1,848 sets) in sets south of Point Conception. In the same region, sets with twenty or more pingers have an entanglement rate of 4.4 animals per 100 sets (137 entanglements in 3,104 sets). The difference between the two entanglement rates is statistically significant (Poisson probability < 0.002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of short-beaked common dolphins (California/Oregon/Washington Stock), in commercial fisheries that might take this species. All entanglements resulted in the death of the animal. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses; n/a = not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~7~~ ~~17~~ 7 12 6 9 8	~~32 (0.46)~~ ~~84 (0.24)~~ 34 (0.49) 57 (0.30) 32 (0.52) 54 (0.41) 59 (0.43)	~~48 (0.16)~~ 47 (0.19)
CA squid purse seine	observer	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	unknown 1.1% unknown <5% <5%	0 1 0 0 0	0 87 (0.98) 0 0 0	~~29 (0.98)~~ 17 (0.98)
CA ~~angel shark/~~halibut /white seabass and other species ~~large mesh (>3.5 inch)~~ set gillnet fishery[2]	~~MMAP self-reporting~~ Self-report Self-report Observer Observer Observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ ~~2004~~ ~~2005~~ ~~2006~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	- - - ~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ n/a n/a ~~1%~~ 17% not observed	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~ ~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ 1 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~ ~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ ≥1 0 0 0 0	≥1 (n/a)

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
Unknown fishery	strandings	~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008	~~Three~~ Two unidentified common and ~~one~~ three short-beaked common dolphin stranded with evidence of fishery interactions. Evidence of fishery interactions included net marks and/or positive metal detector scans. None of the strandings could be linked to a specific commercial fishery. These strandings may have come from observed fisheries that already have bycatch estimates and thus are not included in the annual average to prevent double-counting of fishery mortality. Mean annual takes are therefore based on stranded animals only if the stranding can be attributed to a fishery lacking an observer program or cases where stranded animals represent the only documented fishery-related deaths in a given year.			≥ 0 (n/a)
Minimum total annual takes						~~77 (0.38)~~ 64 (0.29)

[1]The set gillnet fishery was observed from 1991-94 and then only in Monterey Bay during 1999-2000, where 20-25% of the local fishery was observed. There are no estimates of common dolphin mortality in this fishery because of a lack of recent observer effort. Observer coverage in this fishery resumed in 2006 (12 sets observed) and continued into 2007 (248 sets observed).

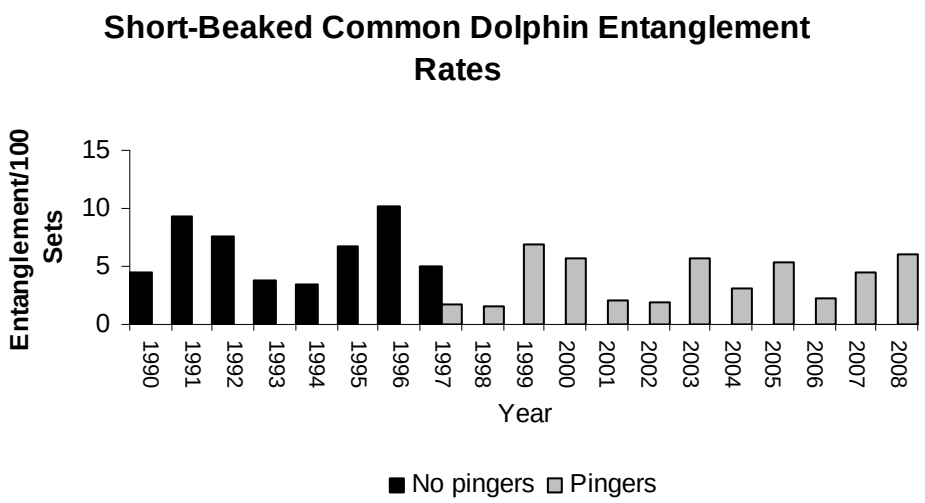


Figure 2. Entanglement rates of short-beaked common dolphin per set fished in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1990-~~2006~~-2008. Entanglement rates include observations from pingered and unpingered sets. Pingers were not used from 1990-95 and were used experimentally in 1996 and 1997. In 1996, no short-beaked common dolphin were observed killed in 146 pingered sets. For the period 1998-~~2006~~ 2008, more than 99% of all observed sets utilized pingers.

Common dolphin mortality has also been reported in halibut set gillnets in California (Julian and Beeson 1998). The fishery has been observed only four times since 1994 (in 1999, 2000, 2006, and 2007), at low levels of observer coverage (<~~10%~~ 20% of fishing effort). No common dolphins were observed entangled in 2007, when the fishery had approximately 18% observer coverage (248 sets observed). ~~Although no common dolphin were observed taken during these four observation periods, fisher self-~~

~~reports for 2000-2004 indicate that at least two common dolphins (type not specified) were killed (Marine Mammal Authorization Permit Program data). Although these reports are considered unreliable (see Appendix 4 of Hill and DeMaster 1998) they represent a minimum mortality for this fishery.~~

The squid purse seine fishery had ~~193~~ 377 sets observed from ~~2004-2006~~ 2004-2008. One short-beaked common dolphin mortality was observed in 2005, with a resulting mortality estimate of 87 (CV=0.98) animals (Carretta and Enriquez 2006). In addition, there was one squid purse seine set in 2006 where 8 unidentified dolphins were encircled. Seven were released alive and the eighth was seriously injured.

~~Three~~ One unidentified and ~~one~~ three short-beaked common dolphin stranded with evidence of fishery interaction (NMFS, Southwest Region, unpublished data) between ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008. It is not known which fisheries were responsible for these deaths.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Other Mortality

In the eastern tropical Pacific, 'northern common dolphins' have been incidentally killed in international tuna purse seine fisheries since the late 1950's. Cooperative international management programs have dramatically reduced overall dolphin mortality in these fisheries during the last decade (Joseph 1994). Between 2000-2004, annual fishing mortality of northern common dolphins (potentially including both short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins) ranged between 54 and 159 animals, with an average of 102 (IATTC, 2006). Although it is unclear whether these animals are part of the same population as short-beaked common dolphins found off California, they are managed separately under a section of the MMPA written specifically for the management of dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna fisheries.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of short-beaked common dolphins in Californian waters relative to OSP is not known. The observed increase in abundance of this species off California probably reflects a distributional shift (Anganuzzi et al. 1993; Barlow 1995; Forney et al. 1995; Forney and Barlow 1998), rather than an overall population increase due to growth. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality in ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~77~~ 64 animals) is estimated to be less than the PBR (~~3,387~~ 3,440), and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total estimated fishery mortality and injury for short-beaked common dolphins is less than 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Anganuzzi, A. A., S. T. Buckland, and K. L Cattanach. 1993. Relative abundance of dolphins associated with tuna in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean: analysis of 1991 data. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn 43:459-465.

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-233.

Dohl, T. P., M. L. Bonnell, and R. G. Ford. 1986. Distribution and abundance on common dolphin, *Delphinus delphis*, in the Southern California Bight: A quantitative assessment based upon aerial transect data. Fish. Bull. 84:333-343.

Farley, T. D. 1995. Geographic variation in dorsal fin color of short-beaked common dolphins, *Delphinus delphis*, in the eastern Pacific Ocean. Administrative Report LJ-95-06, Available from National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, California, 92038.

Forney, K. A. 1997. Patterns of variability and environmental models of relative abundance for California cetaceans. Ph.D. Dissertation, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California, San Diego.

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Heyning, J. E. and W. F. Perrin. 1994. Evidence for two species of common dolphins (Genus *Delphinus*) from the eastern North Pacific. Contr. Nat. Hist. Mus. L.A. County, No. 442.

Hill, P. S. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Alaska Marine Mammal Stock Assessments, 1998. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-97. 166pp.

Hodder, J. Oregon Institute of Marine Biology, Charleston, OR, 97420.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

IATTC. 1997. Annual Report of the Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission, 1995, La Jolla, California.

IATTC. 2006. Annual Report of the Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission, 2004, La Jolla, California. 96p.

Joseph, J. 1994. The tuna-dolphin controversy in the eastern Pacific Ocean: biological, economic and political impacts. Ocean Dev. Int. Law 25:1-30.

Julian, F. 1997. Cetacean mortality in California gill net fisheries: Preliminary estimates for 1996. Paper SC/49/SM02 presented to the International Whaling Commission, 1997 (unpublished). 13 pp.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Mangels, K. F. and Gerrodette, T. 1994. Report of cetacean sightings during a marine mammal survey in the eastern Pacific Ocean and Gulf of California aboard the NOAA ships *McARTHUR* and *DAVID STARR JORDAN* July 28 - November 6, 1993. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-211.

NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038-027.

NMFS, Southwest Region, 501 West Ocean Blvd, Long Beach, CA 90802_4213.

Norberg, B., NMFS, Northwest Region,.7600 Sand Point Way NE, BIN C15700,Seattle, WA 98115_0070.

Perrin, W. F., M. D. Scott, G. J. Walker and V. L. Cass. Review of geographical stocks of tropical dolphins (*Stenella* spp. and *Delphinus delphis*) in the eastern Pacific. NOAA Technical Report NMFS 28. Available from NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, California, 92038. 28p.

Roemmich, D. 1992. Ocean warming and sea level rise along the southwest U.S. coast. Science 257:373-375.

Rosel, P. E., A. E. Dizon and J. E. Heyning. 1994. Population genetic analysis of two forms of the common dolphin (genus *Delphinus*) utilizing mitochondrial DNA control region sequences. Marine Biology 119:159-167.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn 43:477-493.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

LONG-BEAKED COMMON DOLPHIN (*Delphinus capensis capensis*): California Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Long-beaked common dolphins have only recently been recognized as a distinct species (Heyning and Perrin 1994; Rosel et al. 1994). Along the U.S. west coast, their distribution overlaps with that of the short-beaked common dolphin, and much historical information has not distinguished between these two species. Long-beaked common dolphins are commonly found within about 50 nmi of the coast, from Baja California (including the Gulf of California) northward to about central California (Figure 1). Stranding data and sighting records indicate that the relative abundance of this species off California changes both seasonally and inter-annually. Although long-beaked common dolphins are not restricted to U.S. waters, cooperative management agreements with Mexico exist only for the tuna purse seine fishery and not for other fisheries which may take this species (e.g. gillnet fisheries). Under the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA), long-beaked ("Baja neritic") common dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna fisheries are managed separately as part of the 'northern common dolphin' stock (Perrin et al. 1985), and these animals are not included in the assessment reports. For the MMPA stock assessment reports, there is a single Pacific management stock including only animals found within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone of California.

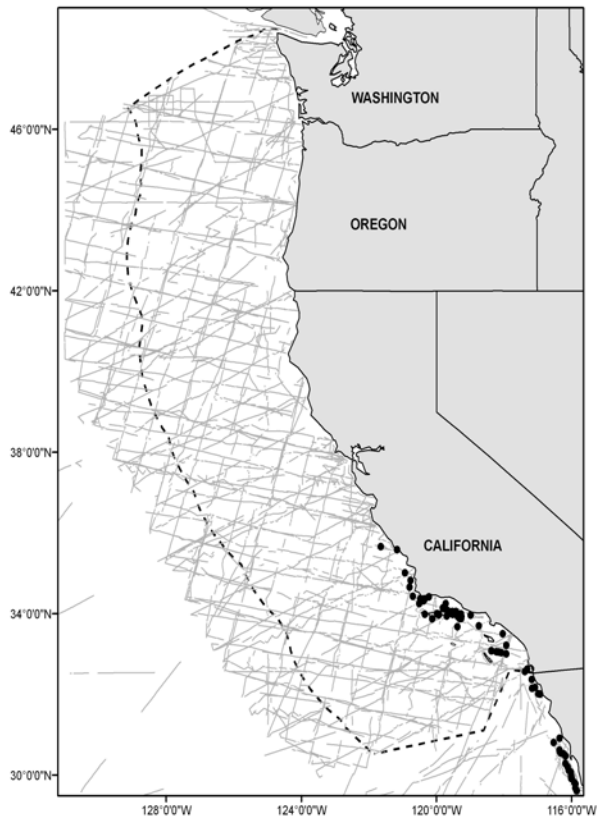


Figure 1. Long-beaked common dolphin sightings based on shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~ 2008 (see Appendix 2 for information on timing and location of survey effort). No Delphinus sightings have been made off Washington. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

The most recent abundance estimates are ~~20,076 (CV=0.71) and~~ 11,714 (CV=0.99) and 62,447 (CV=0.80) long-beaked common dolphins, based on ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 ship line transect surveys, respectively, of California, Oregon, and Washington waters (~~Barlow and Forney 2007,~~ Forney 2007; Barlow 2010). ~~The 2001 estimate of 20,076 (CV=0.71) is based on a new multiple-covariate line transect analysis (Barlow and Forney 2007) and supercedes the estimate of 306 (CV=1.02) reported by Barlow (2003). See Appendix 2 for additional information on abundance estimates used in this stock assessment.~~ The distribution and abundance of long-beaked common dolphins off California appears to be variable on interannual and seasonal time scales (Heyning and Perrin 1994). As oceanographic conditions change, long-beaked common dolphins may move between Mexican and U.S. waters, and therefore a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within the U.S. waters. The geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on two ship surveys conducted in ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 is ~~15,335 (CV= 0.56)~~ 27,046 (CV=0.59) long-beaked common dolphins (~~Barlow and Forney 2007,~~ Forney 2007; Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the weighted average abundance estimate is ~~9,880~~ 17,127 long-beaked common dolphins.

Current Population Trend

California waters represent the northern limit for this stock and animals likely move between U.S. and Mexican waters. No information on trends in abundance are available for this stock because of high interannual variability in line-transect abundance estimates. Heyning and Perrin (1994) detected changes in the proportion of short-beaked to long-beaked common dolphins stranding along the California coast, with the short-beaked common dolphin stranding more frequently prior to the 1982-83 El Niño (which increased water temperatures off California), and the long-beaked common dolphin more commonly observed for several years afterwards. Thus, it appears that both relative and absolute abundance of these species off California may change with varying oceanographic conditions.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

There are no estimates of current or maximum net productivity rates for long-beaked common dolphins.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~9,880~~ 17,127) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.48 (for a species of unknown status with a mortality rate CV >0.30 and <0.60; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~95~~ 164 long-beaked common dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for long-beaked common dolphins is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, common dolphin entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this species in the long term.

Common dolphin mortality has also been reported in halibut set gillnets in California (Julian and Beeson 1998). ~~The fishery has been observed only four times since 1994 (in 1999, 2000, 2006, and 2007), at low levels of observer coverage (<10% of fishing effort).~~ This fishery has only been observed twice since 2004 (Table 1). Although no common dolphin were observed taken ~~during these four observation periods~~, fisher self-reports ~~for 2000-~~ 2004 indicate that at least ~~two~~ one common dolphin~~s~~ (type not specified) were killed (Marine Mammal Authorization Permit Program data). Although these reports are considered unreliable (see Appendix 4 of Hill and DeMaster 1998) they represent a minimum mortality for this fishery.

~~Nineteen~~ Twenty-four common dolphins (~~three~~ two unidentified common dolphin and ~~16~~ 22 long-beaked common dolphin) stranded with evidence of fishery interaction (NMFS, Southwest Region, unpublished data) between ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008. All but ~~one~~ six of these strandings showed evidence of an interaction with an unknown entangling net fishery (severed flukes, knife cuts, net marks, or net fragments wrapped around the animal). ~~The remaining~~ One animal showed evidence of an interaction with an unknown hook and line fishery and five animals had either bullets removed from the carcass (3) or evidence of gunshot wounds (2). Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. ~~This results in an average estimate of 16 (CV= 0.46) long-beaked common dolphins taken annually.~~

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki

1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of long-beaked common dolphins (California Stock) and prorated unidentified common dolphins in commercial fisheries that might take this species. All observed entanglements resulted in the death of the animal. ~~The observer program for the set gillnet fishery was discontinued during 1994 and later resumed in Monterey Bay from 1999-2000. Observations in the set gillnet fishery resumed in 2006 and 2007 (260 total sets observed) and no long-beaked common dolphin were observed taken.~~ Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses, when available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise. n/a = information not available.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~4~~ ~~0~~ 0 3 1 0 1	~~18 (0.79)~~ ~~0~~ 0 14 (0.57) 5 (1.04) 0 7 (1.08)	~~7.4 (0.77)~~ 5.2 (0.78)
CA small mesh drift gillnet fishery for white seabass, yellowtail, barracuda, and tuna[1]	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~11.5%~~ ~~10.4%~~ 17.6% not observed not observed not observed not observed	~~0~~ ~~1~~ 1 n/a n/a n/a n/a	~~0 (n/a)~~ ~~9 (0.78)~~ 5 (1.18) n/a n/a n/a n/a	~~4.7 (0.98)~~ 5 (1.18)
CA ~~angel shark/~~halibut /white seabass and other species ~~large mesh (>3.5 inch)~~ set gillnet fishery[2]	~~MMAP self-reporting~~ Self-report Self-report Observer Observer Observer	- ~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ ~~2004~~ ~~2005~~ ~~2006~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	- - - ~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ n/a n/a ~1% 17% not observed	 ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~ ~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ 1 0 0 0 0	 ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~ ~~n/a~~ ~~n/a~~ ≥1 0 0 0 0	≥1 (n/a)

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
Undetermined	strandings	~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008	~~19~~ 24 common dolphins (~~three~~ two unidentified and ~~16~~ 22 longbeaked common dolphin) stranded with evidence of fishery interactions. Evidence of fishery interactions included severed flukes, net fragments, net marks, positive metal detector scans, and knife marks or cuts. ~~Only one of the strandings could be linked to a specific commercial fishery (halibut set gillnet in 2002), which was not observed that year.~~ ~~Other~~ Some strandings may have come from observed fisheries that already have bycatch estimates and these are not included in the annual average to prevent double-counting of fishery mortality. Mean annual takes are therefore based on stranded animals only if the stranding can be attributed to a fishery lacking an observer program or cases where stranded animals represent the only documented fishery-related deaths in a given year. This results in a minimum of 9 long-beaked common dolphin strandings over the 5 year period, or 1.8 animals annually.			~~≥0.2(n/a)~~ 1.8 (n/a)
Minimum total annual takes						~~12.5 (0.46)~~ 13.0 (0.51)

[1] Observer coverage in the small mesh drift gillnet fishery was estimated from logbook records. Logbook effort totaled 192, 134, 191, 201, and 125 sets for 2000 through 2004, respectively. The fishery was not observed ~~in 2005 and 2006~~ after 2004. ~~Annual fishery mortality is calculated based on the three year average from 2002-2004.~~

~~[2]The set gillnet fishery was observed from 1991-94 and then only in Monterey Bay during 1999-2000, where 20-25% of the local fishery was observed. Observer coverage in this fishery resumed in 2006 (12 sets observed) and continued into 2007 (248 sets observed).~~

Other Mortality

In the eastern tropical Pacific, 'northern common dolphins' have been incidentally killed in international tuna purse seine fisheries since the late 1950's. Cooperative international management programs have dramatically reduced overall dolphin mortality in these fisheries during the last decade (Joseph 1994). Between 2000-2004, annual fishing mortality of northern common dolphins (potentially including both short-beaked and long-beaked common dolphins) ranged between 54 and 159 animals, with an average of 102 (IATTC, 2006). Although it is unclear whether these animals are part of the same population as long-beaked common dolphins found off California, they are managed separately under a section of the MMPA written specifically for the management of dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna fisheries.

'Unusual mortality events' of long-beaked common dolphin due to domoic acid toxicity have been documented by NMFS as recently as 2007 along the California coast.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of long-beaked common dolphins in California waters relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate potential trends in abundance of this species of common dolphin. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality from ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~12.5~~ 13.0 animals) does not exceed the PBR (~~95~~ 164), and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The average total fishery mortality and injury for long-beaked common dolphins (~~12.5~~ 13.0) ~~exceeds~~ is less than 10% of the PBR and therefore, ~~cannot be~~ is considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. 2003. Preliminary estimates of the abundance of cetaceans along the U.S. west coast: 1991_2001. Southwest Fisheries Science Center Administrative Report LJ_03_03. Available from SWFSC, 8604 La Jolla Shores Dr., La Jolla CA 92037. 31p.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

~~Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.~~

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Heyning, J. E. and W. F. Perrin. 1994. Evidence for two species of common dolphins (Genus *Delphinus*) from the eastern North Pacific. Contr. Nat. Hist. Mus. L.A. County, No. 442.

Hill, P. S. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Alaska Marine Mammal Stock Assessments, 1998. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-97. 166 pp.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 pp.

IATTC. 2006. Annual Report of the Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission, 2004, La Jolla, California. 96p.

Joseph, J. 1994. The tuna-dolphin controversy in the eastern Pacific Ocean: biological, economic and political impacts. Ocean Dev. Int. Law 25:1-30.

Julian, F. 1997. Cetacean mortality in California gill net fisheries: Preliminary estimates for 1996. Paper SC/49/SM02 presented to the International Whaling Commission, 1997 (unpublished). 13 pp.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038-027.

NMFS, Southwest Region, 501 West Ocean Blvd, Long Beach, CA 90802_4213.

Perrin, W. F., M. D. Scott, G. J. Walker and V. L. Cass. Review of geographical stocks of tropical dolphins (*Stenella* spp. and *Delphinus delphis*) in the eastern Pacific. NOAA Technical Report NMFS 28. Available from NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, California, 92038. 28p.

Rosel, P. E., A. E. Dizon and J. E. Heyning. 1994. Population genetic analysis of two forms of the common dolphin (genus *Delphinus*) utilizing mitochondrial DNA control region sequences. Marine Biology 119:159-167.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

NORTHERN RIGHT-WHALE DOLPHIN (*Lissodelphis borealis*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Northern right-whale dolphins are endemic to temperate waters of the North Pacific Ocean. Off the U.S. west coast, they have been seen primarily in shelf and slope waters (Figure 1), with seasonal movements into the Southern California Bight (Leatherwood and Walker 1979; Dohl et al. 1980; 1983; NMFS, unpublished data). Sighting patterns from recent aerial and shipboard surveys conducted in California, Oregon and Washington during different seasons (Green et al. 1992; 1993; Forney et al. 1995; Barlow 1995) suggest seasonal north-south movements, with animals found primarily off California during the colder water months and shifting northward into Oregon and Washington as water temperatures increase in late spring and summer (Green et al. 1992; Forney 1994; Forney and Barlow 1998). The southern end of this population's range is not well-documented, but during cold-water periods, they probably range into Mexican waters off northern Baja California. Genetic analyses have not found statistically significant differences between northern right-whale dolphins from the U.S. West coast and other areas of the North Pacific (Dizon et al. 1994); however, power analyses indicate that the ability to detect stock differences for this species is poor, given traditional statistical error levels (Dizon et al. 1995). Although northern right-whale dolphins are not restricted to U.S. territorial waters, there are currently no international agreements for cooperative management. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there is a single management stock including only animals found within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone of California, Oregon and Washington.

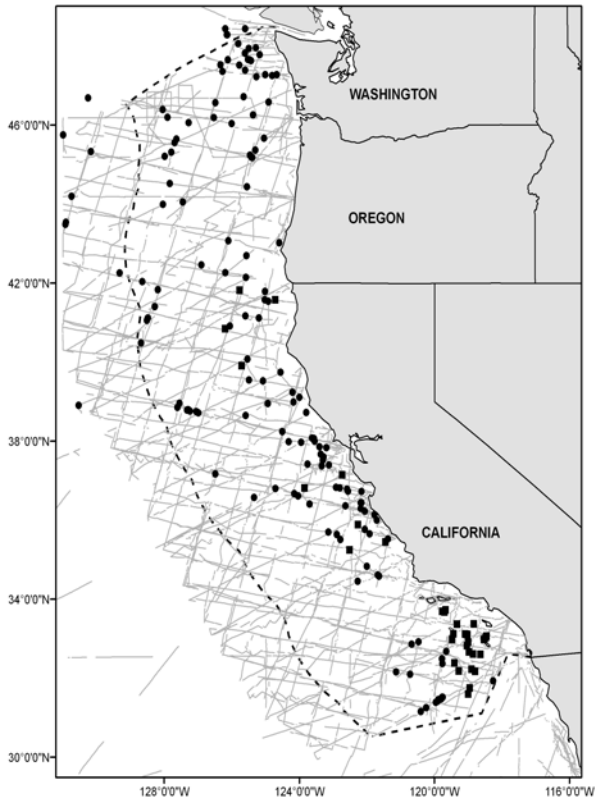


Figure 1. Northern right whale dolphin sightings based on aerial and shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicates completed transect effort of all surveys combined. Key: ● = summer/autumn ship-based sightings; ■ = winter/spring aerial-based sightings.

POPULATION SIZE

The previous best estimates of abundance for northern right-whale dolphins (Barlow et al. 1997) were based on winter/spring 1991-92 aerial surveys (Forney et al. 1995) off California, which were presumed to include northern right-whale dolphins that are found off Oregon and Washington during summer and fall. Two summer/fall shipboard surveys were conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). The distribution of northern right-whale dolphins throughout this region is highly variable, apparently in response to oceanographic changes on both seasonal and interannual time scales (Forney and

Barlow 1998). As oceanographic conditions vary, northern right-whale dolphins may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, and therefore a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001-~~2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the two ship surveys is ~~12,876 (CV= 0.30)~~ 8,334 (CV=0.40) northern right-whale dolphins (~~Barlow and Forney 2007 ,~~ Forney 2007, Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001-~~2005-2008 average abundance estimate is ~~10,031~~ 6,019 northern right-whale dolphins.

Current Population Trend

Abundance estimates for all California, Oregon, and Washington waters from 1996, 2001, ~~and~~ 2005, and 2008 surveys were 11,347 (CV = 0.27), 14,937 (0.21), ~~and~~ 11,100 (0.60), and 6,258 (CV=0.58), respectively (Barlow and Forney 2007, Forney 2007, Barlow 2010). Currently, there is no evidence of a trend in abundance for this stock.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for northern right-whale dolphins off the U.S. west coast.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~10,031~~ 6,019) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with a mortality rate CV >0.80; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~80~~ 48 northern right-whale dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

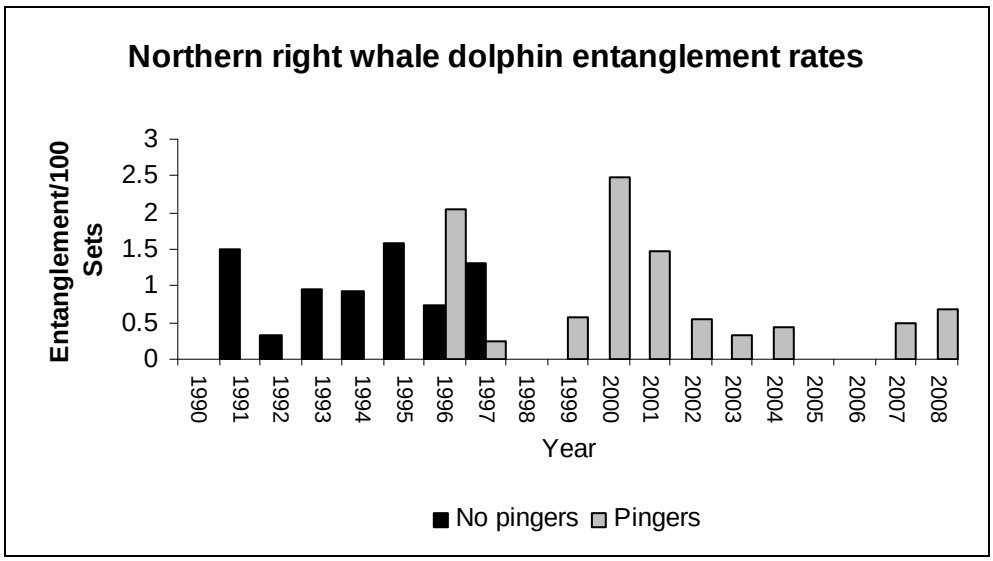
A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for this stock of northern right-whale dolphin is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b,~~ Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of northern right-whale dolphin entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species. Entanglement rates for this species may be related to oceanographic conditions, as lower entanglement rates have been observed during warm-water periods, such as El Niño (Figure 2). Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimate of ~~3.8~~ 3.6 (CV= ~~0.83~~ 0.96) northern right-whale dolphins taken annually.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of northern right-whale dolphins (California/Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. All observed entanglements of northern right-whale dolphins resulted in the death of the animal. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2000-~~2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer data	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~2~~ ~~1~~ 1 0 0 1 1	~~9 (0.70)~~ ~~5 (1.00)~~ 5 (0.99) 0 0 6 (1.00) 7 (0.99)	~~3.8 (0.83)~~ 3.6 (0.96)
Minimum total annual takes						~~3.8 (0.83)~~ 3.6 (0.96)

Figure 2. Entanglement rates of northern right whale dolphin per set fished in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1990-~~2006~~2008. Kill rates include observations from pingered and unpingered sets. Pingers were not used from 1990-95 and were used experimentally in 1996 and 1997. For the period 1998-~~2006~~2008, over 99% of all observed sets utilized pingers.



Other removals

In 2008, six northern right whale dolphins were incidentally killed in California waters during scientific sardine trawling operations conducted by NMFS (Southwest Regional Office Stranding Program, unpublished data). All six animals were killed in a single trawl where 11 Pacific white-sided dolphin were also killed (see Pacific white-sided dolphin stock assessment). The average annual research-related mortality of northern right whale dolphin from 2004 to 2008 is 1.2 animals.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of northern right-whale dolphins in California, Oregon and Washington relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality in ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~3.8~~ 4.8 animals) is estimated to be less than the PBR (~~80~~ 48), and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for northern right-whale dolphins ~~is less than~~ does not exceed 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19p.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-233.

Barlow, J., K. A. Forney, P. S. Hill, R. L. Brownell, Jr., J. V. Carretta, D. P. DeMaster, F. Julian, M. S. Lowry, T. Ragen, and R. R. Reeves. 1997. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 1996. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-248. 223p.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Dizon, A., C. LeDuc, and R. LeDuc. 1994. Intraspecific structure of the northern right-whale dolphin (*Lissodelphis borealis*): The power of an analysis of molecular variation for differentiating genetic stocks. CalCOFI Rep. 35:61-67.

Dizon, A. E., G. M. O'Corry-Crowe, and B. L. Taylor. (1995). Why statistical power is necessary to link analyses of molecular variation to decisions about population structure. pp. 288-294 *In:* J. L. Neilsen (ed.), Evolution and the Aquatic Ecosystem: Defining Unique Units in Population Conservation. American Fisheries Society Symposium 17.

Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-1983: Status, abundance and distribution. OCS Study MMS 84-0045. Minerals Management Service Contract # 14-12-0001-29090. 284p.

Dohl, T. P., K. S. Norris, R. C. Guess, J. D. Bryant, and M. W. Honig. 1980. Summary of marine mammal and seabird surveys of the Southern California Bight area, 1975-1978. Part II. Cetacea of the Southern California Bight. Final Report to the Bureau of Land Management, NTIS Rep. No. PB81248189. 414p.

Forney, K. A. 1994. Recent information on the status of odontocetes in Californian waters. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-202. Available from NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, California, USA.

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27 p.

Green, G., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington. Ch. 1. In: Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. OCS Study 91-0093. Final Report prepared for Pacific OCS Region, Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Los Angeles, California.

Green, G., R. A. Grotefendt, M. A. Smultea, C. E. Bowlby, and R. A. Rowlett. 1993. Delphinid aerial surveys in Oregon and Washington waters. Final Report prepared for NMFS, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way, NE, Seattle, Washington, 98115, Contract #50ABNF200058.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Leatherwood, S. and W. A. Walker. 1979. The northern right-whale dolphin *Lissodelphis borealis* Peale in the eastern North Pacific. *In:* Winn, H. E. and B. L. Olla (eds.), Behavior of Marine Mammals, p. 85-141. Plenum Press, New York - London.

National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. Unpublished data.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Stick, K. C. and Hreha, L. 1989. Summary of the 1988 Washington/Oregon experimental thresher shark gill net fishery. State of Washington, Department of Fisheries, Progress Report 275. 40p.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

KILLER WHALE (*Orcinus orca*): Eastern North Pacific Offshore Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Killer whales have been observed in all oceans and seas of the world (Leatherwood and Dahlheim 1978). Although reported from tropical and offshore waters, killer whales prefer the colder waters of both hemispheres, with greatest abundances found within 800 km of major continents (Mitchell 1975). Along the west coast of North America, killer whales occur along the entire Alaskan coast (Braham and Dahlheim 1982), in British Columbia and Washington inland waterways (Bigg et al. 1990), and along the outer coasts of Washington, Oregon and California (Green et al. 1992; Barlow 1995, 1997; Forney et al. 1995; Barlow and Forney 2007). Seasonal and year-round occurrence have been noted for killer whales throughout Alaska (Braham and Dahlheim 1982) and in the intracoastal waterways of British Columbia and Washington, where pods have been labeled as 'resident', 'transient' and 'offshore' (Bigg et al. 1990, Ford et al. 1994) based on aspects of morphology, ecology, genetics and behavior (Ford and Fisher 1982; Baird and Stacey 1988; Baird et al. 1992, Hoelzel et al. 1998). Through examination of photographs of recognizable individuals and pods, movements of whales between geographical areas have been documented. For example, whales identified in Prince William Sound have been observed near Kodiak Island (Heise et al. 1991) and whales identified in Southeast Alaska have been observed in Prince William Sound, British Columbia, and Puget Sound (Leatherwood et al. 1990, Dahlheim et al. 1997). Movements of killer whales between the waters of Southeast Alaska and central California have also been documented (Goley and Straley 1994).

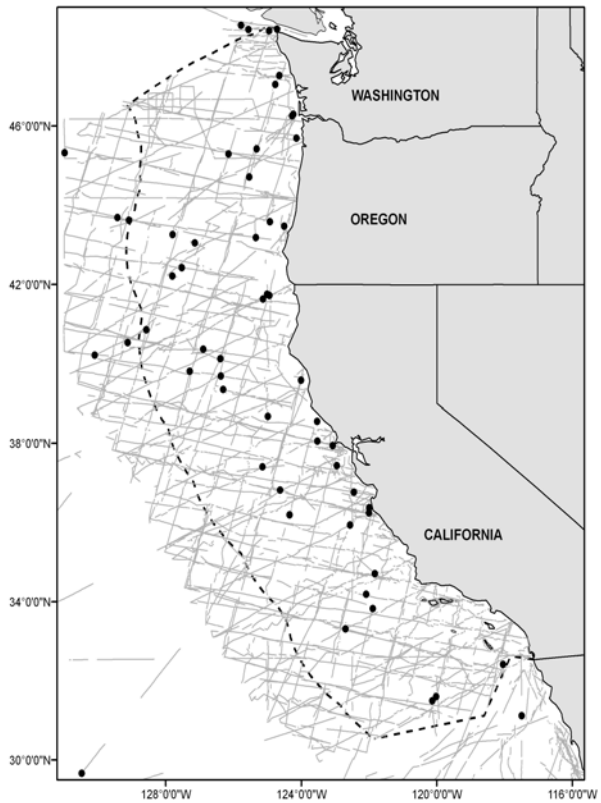


Figure 1. Killer whale sightings based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Sightings include killer whales from all stocks found in this region. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

Offshore killer whales have more recently also been identified off the coasts of California, Oregon, and rarely, in Southeast Alaska (Ford et al. 1994, Black et al. 1997, Dahlheim et al. 1997). They apparently do not mix with the transient and resident killer whale stocks found in these regions (Ford et al. 1994, Black et al. 1997). Studies indicate the 'offshore' type, although distinct from the other types ('resident' and 'transient'), appears to be more closely related genetically, morphologically, behaviorally, and vocally to the 'resident' type killer whales (Black et al. 1997, Hoelzel et al. 1998; J. Ford, pers. comm.; L. Barrett-Lennard, pers. comm.). Based on data regarding association patterns, acoustics, movements, genetic differences, and potential fishery interactions, five killer whale stocks are recognized within the Pacific U.S. EEZ 1) the Eastern North Pacific Northern Resident stock - occurring from British Columbia

through Alaska, 2) the Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock - occurring within the inland waters of Washington and southern British Columbia, 3) the Eastern North Pacific Transient stock - occurring from Alaska through California, 4) the Eastern North Pacific Offshore stock - occurring from Southeast Alaska through California (this report), and 5) the Hawaiian stock. 'Offshore' whales in Canadian waters are considered part of the Eastern North Pacific Offshore stock. The Stock Assessment Reports for the Alaska Region contain assessments of the Eastern North Pacific Northern Resident and transient stocks, and the most recent assessment for the Hawaii Stock is included in this volume.

POPULATION SIZE

Off British Columbia, approximately 200 offshore killer whales were identified between 1989 and 1993 (Ford et al. 1994), and 20 of these individuals have also been seen off California (Black et al. 1997). Using only good quality photographs that clearly show characteristics of the dorsal fin and saddle patch region, an additional 11 offshore killer whales that were not previously known have been identified off the California coast, bringing the total number of known individuals in this population to 211. This is certainly an underestimate of the total population size, because not all animals in this population have been photographed. In the future, it may be possible estimate the total abundance of this transboundary stock using mark-recapture analyses based on individual photographs. Based on summer/fall shipboard line-transect surveys ~~in 2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010), the total number of killer whales within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington is estimated to be ~~1,014 animals (CV= 0.29)~~ 691 animals (CV=0.49). There is currently no way to reliably distinguish the different stocks of killer whales from sightings at sea, but photographs of individual animals can provide a rough estimate of the proportion of whales in each stock. A total of 161 individual killer whales photographed off California and Oregon have been determined to belong to the transient (105 whales) and offshore (56 whales) stocks (Black et al. 1997). Using these proportions to prorate the line transect abundance estimate yields an estimate of 56/161 * ~~1,014~~ 691 = ~~353~~ 240 offshore killer whales along the U.S. west coast. This is expected to be a conservative estimate of the number of offshore killer whales, because offshore whales apparently are less frequently seen near the coast (Black et al. 1997), and therefore photographic sampling may be biased towards transient whales. For stock assessment purposes, this combined value is currently the best available estimate of abundance for offshore killer whales off the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington.

Minimum Population Estimate

The total number of known offshore killer whales along the U.S. West coast, Canada and Alaska is 211 animals, but it is not known what proportion of time this transboundary stock spends in U.S. waters, and therefore this number is difficult to work with for PBR calculations. A minimum abundance estimate for all killer whales along the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington can be estimated from the ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 line-transect surveys as the 20th percentile of the geometric mean ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 abundance estimate, or ~~798~~ 466 killer whales. Using the same prorating as above, a minimum of 56/161 * ~~798~~ 466 = ~~278~~ 162 offshore killer whales are estimated to be in U.S. waters off California, Oregon and Washington.

Current Population Trend

No information is available regarding trends in abundance of Eastern North Pacific offshore killer whales.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for killer whales in this region.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~278~~ 162) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~2.8~~ 1.6 offshore killer whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of information on fisheries that may take animals from this killer whale stock is shown in Table 1 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. In the California drift gillnet fishery, no offshore killer whales have been observed entangled (Julian 1997; Julian and Beeson 1998; Cameron and Forney 1999, 2000; Carretta and Chivers 2004, Carretta et al. 2005a, 2005b, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b), but one killer whale from the Eastern North Pacific Transient Stock was observed taken in 1995, and offshore killer whales may also occasionally be entangled. Additional potential sources of killer whale mortality are set gillnets and longlines. In California, an observer program between July 1990 and December 1994 and additional observations between 2000 and 2008 monitored 5-15% of all sets in the large mesh (>3.5") set gillnet fishery for halibut ~~and angel sharks~~, and no killer whales were observed taken. Based on observations for longline fisheries in other regions (i.e. Alaska; Yano and Dahlheim 1995), fishery interactions may also occur with U.S. West coast pelagic longline fisheries, but no such interactions have been documented to date.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of killer whales (Eastern North Pacific Offshore Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer data	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0
Minimum total annual takes						0

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of killer whales in California in relation to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this ~~species~~ stock. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. There has been no documented human-caused mortality of this stock, and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for offshore killer whales is zero and can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Baird, R. W., and P. J. Stacey. 1988. Variation in saddle patch pigmentation in populations of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) from British Columbia, Alaska, and Washington State. Can. J. Zool. 66:2582-2585.

Baird, R. W., Abrams, P. A., and L. M. Dill. 1992. Possible indirect interactions between transient and resident killer whales: implications for the evolution of foraging specializations in the genus *Orcinus*. Oecologia 89:125-132.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Administrative Report LJ-97-11, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 25p.

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.Barrett-Lennard, L. Univ. of British Columbia, 6270 University Blvd., Vancouver, BC V6T1Z4.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Bigg, M. A., P. F. Olesiuk, G. M. Ellis, J. K. B. Ford, and K. C. Balcomb III. 1990. Social organization and genealogy of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington State. Rep. int. Whal. Commn Special Issue 12:386-406.

Black, N. A., A. Schulman-Janiger, R. L. Ternullo, and M. Guerrero-Ruiz. 1997. Killer whales of California and western Mexico: A Catalog of photo-identified individuals. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-247. 174p.

Braham, H. W., and M. E. Dahlheim. 1982. Killer whales in Alaska documented in the Platforms of Opportunity Program. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., 32:643-646.

Cameron, G., and K. A. Forney. 1999. Estimates of cetacean mortality in the California gillnet fisheries for 1997 and 1998. Paper SC/51/O4 presented to the International Whaling Commission, 1999 (unpublished). 14pp.

Cameron, G.A. and K.A. Forney. 2000. Preliminary estimates of cetacean mortality in California/Oregon Gillnet Fisheries for 1999. Report SC/52/O24 presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission, June 2000 (unpublished). 12p. [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA.]

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries

Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005a. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.

Dahlheim, M. E., D. Ellifrit, and J. Swenson. 1997. Killer Whales of Southeast Alaska: A Catalogue of Photoidentified Individuals. Day Moon Press, Seattle, WA. 82 pp. + appendices.

Ford, J. K. B., Vancouver Aquarium, P.O. Box 3232, Vancouver, BC V6B 3XB, Canada.

Ford, J. K. B., G. M. Ellis, and K.C. Balcomb. 1994. Killer whales. The natural history and genealogy of *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia and Washington State. UBC Press, Vancouver, Canada

Ford, J. K. B., and H. D. Fisher. 1982. Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) dialects as an indicator of stocks in British Columbia. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn 32:671-679.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Goley, P. D., and J. M. Straley. 1994. Attack on gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*) in Monterey Bay, California, by killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) previously identified in Glacier Bay, Alaska. Can. J. Zool. 72:1528-1530.

Green, G., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington. Ch. 1. In: Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. OCS Study 91-0093. Final Report prepared for Pacific OCS Region, Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Los Angeles, California.

Heise, K., G. Ellis, and C. Matkin. 1991. A catalogue of Prince William Sound Killer Whales. North Gulf Oceanic Society, Homer, AK. Published for the National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Hoelzel, A. R., M. E. Dahlheim, and S. J. Stern. 1998. Low genetic variation among killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the Eastern North Pacific, and genetic differentiation between foraging specialists. J. Heredity 89:121-128.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Hoyt, E. 1981. The Whale Called Killer. E. P. Dutton, New York.

Julian, F. 1997. Cetacean mortality in California gill net fisheries: Preliminary estimates for 1996. Paper SC/49/SM02 presented to the International Whaling Commission, 1997 (unpublished). 13 pp.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fishery Bulletin 96:271-284.

Leatherwood, J. S., and M. E. Dahlheim. 1978. Worldwide distribution of pilot whales and killer whales. Naval Ocean Systems Center, Tech. Rep. 443:1-39.

Leatherwood, S., C. O. Matkin, J. D. Hall, and G. M. Ellis. 1990. Killer whales, *Orcinus orca*, photo_identified in Prince William Sound, Alaska 1976 to 1987. Can. Field Naturalist 104:362_371.

Mitchell, E. D. 1975. Report on the meeting on small cetaceans, Montreal, April 1-11, 1974. J. Fish. Res. Board Canada, 32:914-916.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in eastern North Pacific. p. 170-195 *In:* W. E. Schevill (ed.), The Whale Problem - A Status Report. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Yano, K. and M. E. Dahlheim. 1995. Killer whale, *Orcinus orca*, depredation on longline catches of bottomfish in the southeastern Bering Sea and adjacent waters. Fishery Bulletin 93:355-372.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~11/05/2008~~ 04/15/2010

KILLER WHALE (*Orcinus orca*): Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Killer whales have been observed in all oceans and seas of the world (Leatherwood and Dahlheim 1978). Although reported from tropical and offshore waters, killer whales prefer the colder waters of both hemispheres, with greatest abundances found within 800 km of major continents (Mitchell 1975). Along the west coast of North America, killer whales occur along the entire Alaskan coast (Braham and Dahlheim 1982), in British Columbia and Washington inland waterways (Bigg et al. 1990), and along the outer coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California (Green et al. 1992; Barlow 1995, 1997; Forney et al. 1995). Seasonal and year-round occurrence has been noted for killer whales throughout Alaska (Braham and Dahlheim 1982) and in the intracoastal waterways of British Columbia and Washington State, where pods have been labeled as 'resident,' 'transient,' and 'offshore' (Bigg et al. 1990, Ford et al. 1994) based on aspects of morphology, ecology, genetics, and behavior (Ford and Fisher 1982, Baird and Stacey 1988, Baird et al. 1992, Hoelzel et al. 1998). Through examination of photographs of recognizable individuals and pods, movements of whales between geographical areas have been documented. For example, whales identified in Prince William Sound have been observed near Kodiak Island (Matkin et al. 1999) and whales identified in Southeast Alaska have been observed in Prince William Sound, British Columbia, and Puget Sound (Leatherwood et al. 1990, Dahlheim et al. 1997).

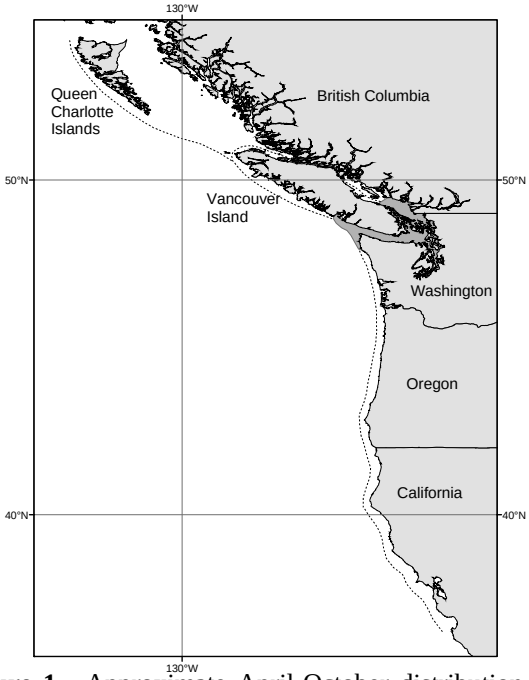


Figure 1. Approximate April-October distribution of the Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident killer whale stock (shaded area) and range of sightings (dotted line).

Studies on mtDNA restriction patterns provide evidence that the 'resident' and 'transient' types are genetically distinct (Stevens et al. 1989, Hoelzel 1991, Hoelzel and Dover 1991, Hoelzel et al. 1998). Analysis of 73 samples collected from eastern North Pacific killer whales from California to Alaska has demonstrated significant genetic differences among 'transient' whales from California through Alaska, 'resident' whales from the inland waters of Washington, and 'resident' whales ranging from British Columbia to the Aleutian Islands and Bering Sea (Hoelzel et al. 1998). However, low genetic diversity throughout this species world-wide distribution has hampered efforts to clarify its taxonomy. At an international symposium in cetacean systematics in May 2004, a workshop was held to review the taxonomy of killer whales. A majority of invited experts felt that the Resident- and Transient-type whales in the eastern North Pacific probably merited species or subspecies status (Reeves et al. 2004).

Most sightings of the Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock of killer whales have occurred in the summer in inland waters of Washington and southern British Columbia. However, pods belonging to this stock have also been sighted in coastal waters off southern Vancouver Island and Washington (Bigg et al. 1990, Ford et al. 2000, NWFSC unpubl. data). The complete winter range of this stock is uncertain. Of the three pods comprising this stock, one (J1) is commonly sighted in inshore waters in winter, while the other two (K1 and L1) apparently spend more time offshore (Ford et al. 2000). These latter two pods have been sighted as far south as Monterey Bay and central California in recent years (N. Black, pers. comm., K. Balcomb, pers. comm.) They sometimes have also been seen entering the inland waters of Vancouver Island from the north–through Johnstone Strait–in the spring (Ford et al. 2000), suggesting that they may spend time along the entire outer coast of Vancouver Island during the winter. In May 2003, these pods were sighted off the northern end of the Queen Charlotte Islands, the furthest north they had ever previously been documented (J. Ford, pers. comm.).

Based on data regarding association patterns, acoustics, movements, genetic differences and potential fishery interactions, five killer whale stocks are recognized within the Pacific U.S. EEZ: 1) the Eastern North Pacific

Northern Resident stock - occurring from British Columbia through Alaska, 2) the Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock - occurring mainly within the inland waters of Washington State and southern British Columbia (see Fig. 1), 3) the Eastern North Pacific Transient stock - occurring from Alaska through California, 4) the Eastern North Pacific Offshore stock - occurring from Southeast Alaska through California, and 5) the Hawaiian stock. The Stock Assessment Reports for the Alaska Region contain information concerning the Eastern North Pacific Northern Resident and Eastern North Pacific Transient stocks.

POPULATION SIZE

The Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock is a trans-boundary stock including killer whales in inland Washington and southern British Columbia waters. Photo-identification of individual whales through the years has resulted in a substantial understanding of this stock's structure, behaviors, and movements. In 1993, the three pods comprising this stock totaled 96 killer whales (Ford et al. 1994). The population increased to 99 whales in 1995, then declined to 79 whales in 2001, and most recently numbered 85 whales in 200~~8.~~9 (Fig. 2; Ford et al. 2000; Center for Whale Research, unpubl. data). The 2001-2005 counts included a whale born in 1999 (L-98) that was listed as missing during the annual census in May and June 2001 but was subsequently discovered alone in an inlet off the west coast of Vancouver Island (J. Ford, pers. comm.). L-98 remained separate from L pod until 10 March 2006 when he died due to injuries associated with a vessel interaction in Nootka Sound. L-98 has been subtracted from the official 2006 and subsequent population censuses. The most recent census includes ~~two~~ three new calves and the deaths of two ~~post~~ reproductive adult females and an ~~sub~~adult male since 1 July 200~~7~~8. It does not include a calf born last ~~fall~~summer that did not survive to 1 July 2008~~9. This estimate also does not include a stillborn neonate from this past summer, or the mortality of two reproductive age females, or a calf that was born and died during the late summer~~ (Center for Whale Research, unpubl. data).

Minimum Population Estimate

The abundance estimate for this stock of killer whales is a direct count of individually identifiable animals. It is thought that the entire population is censused every year. This estimate therefore serves as both a best estimate of abundance and a minimum estimate of abundance. Thus, the minimum population estimate (N_{MIN}) for the Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock of killer whales is 85 animals.

Current Population Trend

During the live-capture fishery that existed from 1967 to 1973, it is estimated that 47 killer whales, mostly immature, were taken out of this stock (Ford et al. 1994). The first complete census of this stock occurred in 1974. Between 1974 and 1993 the Southern Resident stock increased approximately 35%, from 71 to 96 individuals (Ford et al. 1994). This represents a net annual growth rate of 1.8% during those years. Since 1995, the population declined to 79 whales before increasing from 2002-2005 to a total of 91 whales. The population ~~has~~ declined for ~~the past~~ three years to 85 whales but remains unchanged in 2009 (Ford et al. 2000; Center for Whale Research, unpubl. data).

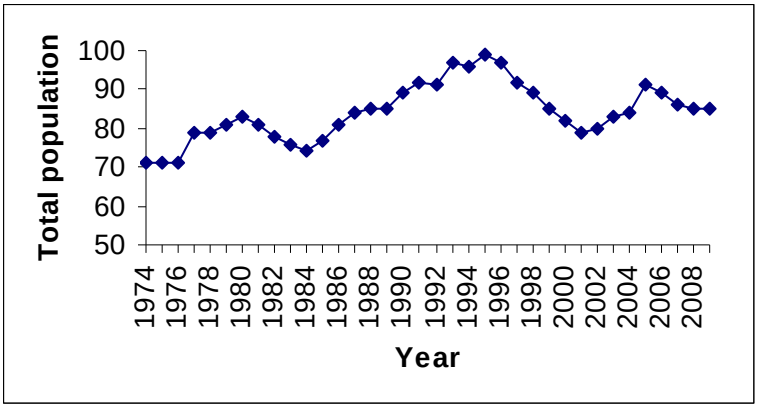


Figure 2. Population of Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock of killer whales, 1974-2008~~9~~. Each year's count includes animals first seen and first missed; a whale is considered first missed the year after it was last seen alive (Ford et al. 2000; Center for Whale Research, unpubl. data).

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

A reliable estimate of the maximum net productivity rate is currently unavailable for this stock of killer whales. Studies of 'resident' killer whale pods in British Columbia and Washington waters resulted in estimated population growth rates of 2.92% and 2.54% over the period from 1973 to 1987 (Olesiuk et al. 1990, Brault and Caswell 1993). For southern resident killer whales, estimates of the population growth rate have been made during the three periods when the population has been documented increasing since monitoring began in 1974. From 1974 to 1980 the population increased at a rate of 2.6%/year, 2.3%/year from 1985 to 1996, and 3.6%/year from 2002 to 2005 (Center for Whale Research, unpubl. data). However, a population increases at the maximum growth rate

(R_{MAX}) only when the population is at extremely low levels; thus, any of these estimates may be an underestimate of R_{MAX}. Hence, until additional data become available, it is recommended that the cetacean maximum theoretical net productivity rate (R_{MAX}) of 4% be employed for this stock (Wade and Angliss 1997).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (85) times one-half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.1 (for an endangered stock, Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 0.17 whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fisheries Information

NMFS observers have monitored the northern Washington marine set gillnet fishery since 1988 (Gearin et al. 1994, 2000; P. Gearin, unpubl. data). Observer coverage ranged from approximately 40 to 83% in the entire fishery (coastal + inland waters) between 1998 and 2002. There was no observer coverage in this fishery from 1999-2003. However, the total fishing effort was 4, 46, 4.5 and 7 net days (respectively) in those years, it occurred only in inland waters, and no killer whale takes were reported. No killer whale mortality has been recorded in this fishery since the inception of the observer program.

In 1993, as a pilot for future observer programs, NMFS in conjunction with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW) monitored all non-treaty components of the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon gillnet fishery (Pierce et al. 1994). Observer coverage was 1.3% overall, ranging from 0.9% to 7.3% for the various components of the fishery. Encounters (whales within 10 m of a net) with killer whales were reported, but not quantified, though no entanglements occurred.

In 1994, NMFS and WDFW conducted an observer program during the Puget Sound non-treaty chum salmon gillnet fishery (areas 10/11 and 12/12B). A total of 230 sets were observed during 54 boat trips, representing approximately 11% observer coverage of the 500 fishing boat trips comprising the total effort in this fishery, as estimated from fish ticket landings (Erstad et al. 1996). No interactions with killer whales were observed during this fishery. The Puget Sound treaty chum salmon gillnet fishery in Hood Canal (areas 12, 12B, and 12C) and the Puget Sound treaty sockeye/chum gillnet fishery in the Strait of Juan de Fuca (areas 4B, 5, and 6C) were also monitored in 1994 at 2.2% (based on % of total catch observed) and approximately 7.5% (based on % of observed trips to total landings) observer coverage, respectively (NWIFC 1995). No interactions resulting in killer whale mortality was reported in either treaty salmon gillnet fishery.

Also in 1994, NMFS, WDFW, and the Tribes conducted an observer program to examine seabird and marine mammal interactions with the Puget Sound treaty and non-treaty sockeye salmon gillnet fishery (areas 7 and 7A). During this fishery, observers monitored 2,205 sets, representing approximately 7% of the estimated number of sets in the fishery (Pierce et al. 1996). Killer whales were observed within 10 m of the gear during 10 observed sets (32 animals in all), though none were observed to have been entangled.

Killer whale takes in the Washington Puget Sound Region salmon drift gillnet fishery are unlikely to have increased since the fishery was last observed in 1994, due to reductions in the number of participating vessels and available fishing time (see details in Appendix 1). Fishing effort and catch have declined throughout all salmon fisheries in the region due to management efforts to recover ESA-listed salmonids.

An additional source of information on the number of killer whales killed or injured incidental to commercial fishery operations is the self-reported fisheries information required of vessel operators by the MMPA. During the period between 1994 and 2004, there were no fisher self-reports of killer whale mortality from any fisheries operating within the range of this stock. However, because logbook records (fisher self-reports required during 1990-94) are most likely negatively biased (Credle et al. 1994), these are considered to be minimum estimates. Logbook data are available for part of 1989-1994, after which incidental mortality reporting requirements were modified. Under the new system, logbooks are no longer required; instead, fishers provide self-reports. Data for the 1994-1995 phase-in period is fragmentary. After 1995, the level of reporting dropped dramatically, such that the records are considered incomplete and estimates of mortality based on them represent minimums (see Appendix 7 in Angliss and Lodge 2002 for details).

Due to a lack of observer programs, there are few data concerning the mortality of marine mammals incidental to Canadian commercial fisheries. Since 1990, there have been no reported fishery-related strandings of killer whales in Canadian waters. However, in 1994 one killer whale was reported to have contacted a salmon gillnet but did not entangle (Guenther et al. 1995). Data regarding the level of killer whale mortality related to commercial fisheries in Canadian waters are not available, though the mortality level is thought to be minimal.

During this decade there have been no reported takes from this stock incidental to commercial fishing operations (D. Ellifrit, pers. comm.), no reports of interactions between killer whales and longline operations (as

occurs in Alaskan waters; see Yano and Dahlheim 1995), no reports of stranded animals with net marks, and no photographs of individual whales carrying fishing gear. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is zero.

Other Mortality

According to Northwest Marine Mammal Stranding Network records, maintained by the NMFS Northwest Region, no human-caused killer whale mortality or serious injuries were reported from non-fisheries sources in 1998-2004. There was documentation of a whale-boat collision in Haro Strait in 2005 which resulted in a minor injury to a whale. In 2006, whale L98 was killed during a vessel interaction. It is important to note that L98 had become habituated to regularly interacting with vessels during its isolation in Nootka Sound. The annual level of human-caused mortality for this stock over the past five years is 0.2 animals per year (reflecting the vessel strike mortality of animal L98 in 2006).

STATUS OF STOCK

On November 15, 2005 NMFS listed Southern Resident killer whales as endangered under the ESA. Total annual fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock (0) is not known to exceed 10% of the calculated PBR (0.17) and, therefore, appears to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. The estimated annual level of human-caused mortality and serious injury of 0.2 animals per year exceeds the PBR (0.17). Southern Resident killer whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the ESA and consequently the stock is automatically considered as a ~~"depleted" and~~ "strategic" stock under the MMPA. This stock was considered "depleted" prior to its 2005 listing under the ESA.

Habitat Issues

Several of the potential risk factors identified for this population have habitat implications. The summer range of this population, the inland waters of Washington and British Columbia, is the home to a large commercial whale watch industry as well as high levels of recreational boating and commercial shipping. There continues to be concern about potential for masking effects by noise generated from these activities on the whales' communication and foraging. This population appears to be Chinook salmon specialists (Ford and Ellis 2006, NWFSC unpubl.data), and there is some evidence that changes in coast–wide Chinook abundance has affected this population (Ford et al. 200~~5~~9). In addition, the high trophic level and longevity of the animals has predisposed them to accumulate levels of contaminants that are high enough to cause potential health impacts. In particular, there is recent evidence of extremely high levels of flame retardants in young animals (Krahn et. al 2007, 2009).

REFERENCES

Angliss, R. P., and K. L. Lodge. 2002. Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2002. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-AFSC-133. 224 pp.

Baird, R. W., and P. J. Stacey. 1988. Variation in saddle patch pigmentation in populations of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) from British Columbia, Alaska, and Washington State. Can. J. Zool. 66 (11):2582-2585.

Baird, R. W., P. A. Abrams, and L. M. Dill. 1992. Possible indirect interactions between transient and resident killer whales: implications for the evolution of foraging specializations in the genus *Orcinus*. Oecologia 89:125-132.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1_14.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Administrative Report LJ-97-11, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 25 pp.

Bigg, M. A., P. F. Olesiuk, G. M. Ellis, J. K. B. Ford, and K. C. Balcomb III. 1990. Social organization and genealogy of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington State. Pp. 386-406, *In:* Hammond, P. S., S. A. Mizroch, and G. P. Donovan (eds.), Individual Recognition of Cetaceans: Use of Photo-identification and Other Techniques to Estimate Population Parameters. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 12.

Black, N. A. P.O. Box 52001, Pacific Grove, CA 93950.

Braham, H. W., and M. E. Dahlheim. 1982. Killer whales in Alaska documented in the Platforms of Opportunity Program. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 32:643-646.

Brault, S., and H. Caswell. 1993. Pod-specific demography of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). Ecology 74(5):1444-1454.

Center for Whale Research, 1359 Smugglers Cove Rd., Friday Harbor, WA 98250.

Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC). 2003. Species Listing. Available at URL: http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/eng/sct0/index_e.cfm (access date - October 2003).

Credle, V. R., D. P. DeMaster, M. M. Merklein, M. B. Hanson, W. A. Karp, and S. M. Fitzgerald (eds.). 1994. NMFS observer programs: minutes and recommendations from a workshop held in Galveston, Texas, November 10-11, 1993. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-94-1. 96 pp.

Dahlheim, M. E., D. K. Ellifrit, and J. D. Swenson. 1997. Killer whales of Southeast Alaska: a catalogue of photoidentified individuals. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, NOAA, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115. 79 pp.

Ellifrit, D. Center for Whale Research, 1359 Smugglers Cove Rd., Friday Harbor, WA 98250.

Erstad, P., S. J. Jeffries, and D. J. Pierce. 1996. 1994 Report for the Puget Sound fishery observer program in management areas 10/11 & 12/12B: nontreaty chum gill net fishery. Final Report, Washington Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 14 pp.

Ford, J. K. B. Pacific Biological Station, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Nanaimo, BC V9R 5K6.

Ford, J. K. B., and H. D. Fisher. 1982. Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) dialects as an indicator of stocks in British Columbia. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 32:671-679.

Ford, J. K. B., G. M. Ellis, and K. C. Balcomb. 1994. Killer Whales: The Natural History and Genealogy of *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia and Washington State. University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, BC, and University of Washington Press, Seattle. 102 pp.

Ford, J. K. B., G. M. Ellis, and K. C. Balcomb. 2000. Killer Whales: The Natural History and Genealogy of *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia and Washington. 2nd edition. University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, BC, and University of Washington Press, Seattle. 104 pp.

Ford, J.K.B., and G.M. Ellis. 2006. Selective foraging by fish-eating killer whales *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia. Marine Ecology Progress Series, 316: 185–199.

Ford, J.K.B., G.M. Ellis, P.F. Olesiuk, and K.C. Balcomb. 2009. Linking killer whale survival and prey abundance: food limitation in the oceans' apex predator? Biol. Lett. published online before print September 15, 2009, doi:10.1098/rsbl.2009.0468

~~Ford, J.K.B., G.M. Ellis, and P.F. Olesiuk. 2005. Linking prey and population dynamics: did food limitation cause recent declines of 'resident' killer whales (Orcinus orca) in British Columbia? Research Document 2005/042. Available http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/csas/, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat.~~

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15_26.

Gearin, P. J. National Marine Mammal Laboratory, AFSC, NMFS, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

Gearin, P. J., S. R. Melin, R. L. DeLong, H. Kajimura, and M. A. Johnson. 1994. Harbor porpoise interactions with a chinook salmon set-net fishery in Washington State. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:427-438.

Gearin, P. J., M. E. Gosho, J. L. Laake, L. Cooke, R. L. DeLong, and K. M. Hughes. 2000. Experimental testing of acoustic alarms (pingers) to reduce bycatch of harbour porpoise, *Phocoena phocoena*, in the state of Washington. J. Cetacean Res. Manage. 2(1):1-9.

Green, G. A., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnel, and K. C. Balcomb. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington, 1989-1990. Pp. 1-100, *In:* Brueggeman, J. J. (ed.), Oregon and Washington marine mammal and seabird surveys. Final Rep. OCS Study MMS 91-0093.

Guenther, T. J., R. W. Baird, R. L. Bates, P. M. Willis, R. L. Hahn, and S. G. Wischniowski. 1995. Strandings and fishing gear entanglements of cetaceans on the west coast of Canada in 1994. Paper SC/47/O6 presented to the International Whaling Commission, May 1995 (unpublished). 7 pp.

Hoelzel, A. R. 1991. Analysis of regional mitochondrial DNA variation in the killer whale; implications for cetacean conservation. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 13:225-233.

Hoelzel, A. R., and G. A. Dover. 1991. Genetic differentiation between sympatric killer whale populations. Heredity 66:191-195.

Hoelzel, A. R., M. E. Dahlheim, and S. J. Stern. 1998. Low genetic variation among killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the Eastern North Pacific, and genetic differentiation between foraging specialists. J. Heredity 89:121-128.

Krahn, M. M., P. R. Wade, S. T. Kalinowski, M. E. Dahlheim, B. L. Taylor, M. B. Hanson, G. M. Ylitalo, R. P. Angliss, J. E. Stein, and R. S. Waples. 2002. Status review of Southern Resident killer whales (*Orcinus*

orca) under the Endangered Species Act. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-54. 133 pp.

Krahn, M. M.,, M. J. Ford, W. F. Perrin, P. R. Wade, R. P. Angliss, M. B. Hanson, B. L. Taylor, G. Ylitalo, M. E. Dahlheim, J. E. Stein, and R. S. Waples. 2004. 2004 Status review of Southern Resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) under the Endangered Species Act. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo NMFS-NWFSC-62. 73 pp.

Krahn,, M.M., M.B. Hanson, R.W. Baird, R.H. Boyer, D.G. Burrows, C.K. Emmons, J. K.B. Ford, L. L. Jones, D. P. Noren, P. S. Ross, G. S. Schorr, T.K. Collier. 2007. Persistent organic pollutants and stable isotopes in biopsy samples (2004/2006) from Southern Resident killer whales. Mar. Poll. Bull. 54 (2007) 1903–1911.

Krahn, Margaret M, M. Bradley Hanson, Gregory S. Schorr, Candice K. Emmons, Douglas G. Burrows, Jennie L. Bolton, Robin W. Baird, Gina M. Ylitalo. 2009. Effects of age, sex and reproductive status on persistent organic pollutant concentrations in "Southern Resident" killer whales. Marine Pollution Bulletin 58: 1522–1529.

Leatherwood, J. S., and M. E. Dahlheim. 1978. Worldwide distribution of pilot whales and killer whales. Naval Ocean Systems Center, Tech. Rep. 443:1-39.

Leatherwood, S., C. O. Matkin, J. D. Hall, and G. M. Ellis. 1990. Killer whales, *Orcinus orca*, photo_identified in Prince William Sound, Alaska 1976 to 1987. Can. Field Nat. 104:362_371.

Matkin, C., G. Ellis, E. Saulitis, L. Barrett-Lennard, and D. Matkin. 1999. Killer Whales of Southern Alaska. North Gulf Oceanic Society. 96 pp.

Mitchell, E. D. 1975. Report on the meeting on small cetaceans, Montreal, April 1-11, 1974. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 32:914-916.

Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission (NWIFC). 1995. Monitoring of marbled murrelet and marine mammal interactions with 1994 tribal gillnet fisheries in northern Puget Sound, Hood Canal, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Final Report to NMFS, Contract No. 52ABNF400087, and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Unpubl. report. 41 pp. Available at NWIFC, 6730 Martin Way E, Olympia, WA 98516.

Olesiuk, P. F., M. A. Bigg, and G. M. Ellis. 1990. Life history and population dynamics of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington State. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 12:209-242.

Pierce, D. J., W. P. Ritchie, and R. Kreuziger. 1994. Preliminary findings of seabird interactions with the non-treaty salmon gill net fishery: Puget Sound and Hood Canal Washington. Unpubl. report. Washington Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 39 pp. Available at WDFW, 600 Capitol Way N, Olympia, WA 98501.

Pierce, D. J., M. Alexandersdottir, S. J. Jeffries, P. Erstad, W. Beattie, and A. Chapman. 1996. Interactions of marbled murrelets and marine mammals with the 1994 Puget Sound sockeye gill net fishery. Final Report, Washington Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 21 pp.

Reeves, R.R., W.F. Perrin, B.L. Taylor, C.S. Baker, and S.L. Mesnick. 2004. Report of the workshop on shortcomings of cetacean taxonomy in relation to needs of conservation and management, April 30 – May 2, 2004, La Jolla, California. U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-363. 94pp. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA. 92037.

Ross, P. S., G. M. Ellis, M. G. Ikonomou, L. G. Barrett-Lennard, and R. F. Addison. 2000. High PCB concentrations in free-ranging Pacific killer whales, *Orcinus orca*: effects of age, sex and dietary preference. Mar. Pollut. Bull. 40(6):504-515.

Stevens, T. A., D. Duffield, E. Asper, K. Hewlett, A. Bolz, L. Gage, and G. Bossart. 1989. Preliminary findings of restriction fragment differences in mitochondrial DNA among killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). Can. J. Zool. 67:2592-2595.

Wade, P. R., and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for assessing marine mammal stocks: report of the GAMMS workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Yano, K., and M. E. Dahlheim. 1995. Killer whale, *Orcinus orca*, depredation on longline catches of bottomfish in the southeastern Bering Sea and adjacent waters. Fish. Bull. 93:355-372.

Ylitalo, G. M., C. O. Matkin, J. Buzitis, M. M. Krahn, L. L. Jones, T. Rowles, and J. E. Stein. 2001. Influence of life-history parameters on organochlorine concentrations in free-ranging killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) from Prince William Sound, AK. Sci. Total Environ. 281:183-203.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

SHORT-FINNED PILOT WHALE (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Short-finned pilot whales were once common off Southern California, with an apparently resident population around Santa Catalina Island, as well as seasonal migrants (Dohl et al. 1980). After a strong El Niño event in 1982-83, short-finned pilot whales virtually disappeared from this region, and despite increased survey effort along the entire U.S. west coast, few sightings were made from 1984-1992 (Jones and Szczepaniak 1992; Barlow 1997; Carretta and Forney 1993; Shane 1994; Green et al. 1992, 1993). In 1993, six groups of short-finned pilot whales were again seen off California (Carretta et al. 1995; Barlow and Gerrodette 1996), and mortality in drift gillnets increased (Julian and Beeson 1998) but sightings remain rare (Barlow 1997). Figure 1 summarizes the sightings of short-finned pilot whales off the U.S. west coast from 1991-~~2005~~2008. Although the full geographic range of the California, Oregon, and Washington population is not known, it may be continuous with animals found off Baja California, and its individuals are morphologically distinct from short-finned pilot whales found farther south in the eastern tropical Pacific (Polisini 1981). Separate southern and northern forms of short-finned pilot whales have also been documented for the western North Pacific (Kasuya et al. 1988; Wada 1988; Miyazaki and Amano 1994). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, short-finned pilot whales within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Hawaiian waters.

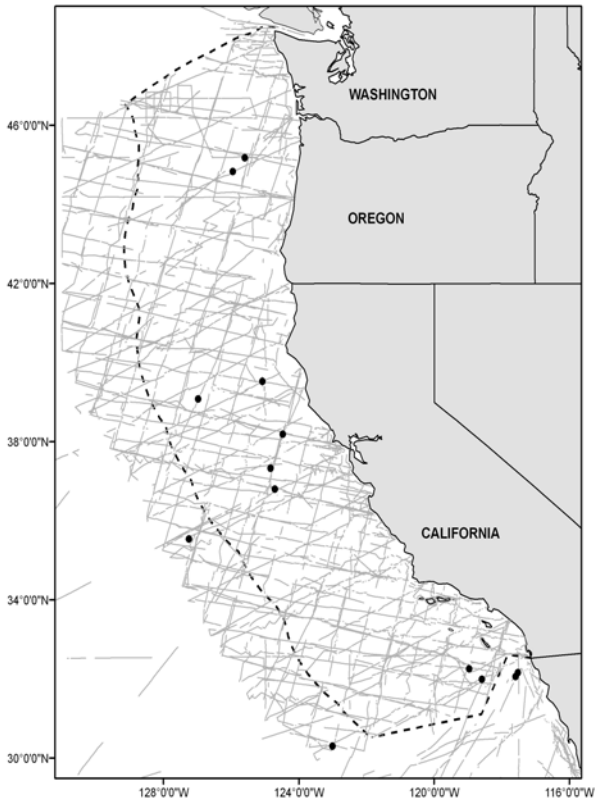


Figure 1. Short-finned pilot whale sightings made during ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys conducted off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008. See Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Only ~~one~~ two groups of pilot whales ~~(~~numbering approximately ~~7~~ 26 and 43 animals, respectively) ~~was~~ were seen during the two most recent ship surveys conducted off California, Oregon, and Washington in ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 (Barlow and Forney 2007; Forney 2007, Barlow 2010). Abundance is estimated at 489 (CV=0.97) and 1,180 (CV=1.00) for the 2005 and 2008 surveys, respectively (Forney 2007, Barlow 2010). ~~All animals were seen during the 2005 survey.~~ The abundance of short-finned pilot whales in this region ~~appears to be~~ is variable and may be influenced by prevailing oceanographic conditions (Forney 1997, Forney and Barlow 1998). Because animals may spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone as oceanographic conditions change, a multi-year average abundance estimate is

the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 ~~unweighted average~~ geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the two ship surveys is ~~245 (CV=0.97)~~ 760 (CV=0.64) short-finned pilot whales (Barlow and Forney 2007 ; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001-2005~~ ~~unweighted average~~ 2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate is ~~123~~ 465 short-finned pilot whales.

Current Population Trend

Approximately nine years after the virtual disappearance of short-finned pilot whales following the 1982-83 El Niño, they appear to have returned to California waters, as indicated by an increase in sighting records as well as incidental fishery mortality (Barlow and Gerrodette 1996; Carretta et al. 1995; Julian and Beeson 1998; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010). However, this cannot be considered a true growth in the population, because it merely reflects large-scale, long-term movements of this species in response to changing oceanographic conditions. It is not known where the animals went after the 82-83 El Niño, or where the recently observed animals came from. Until the range of this population and the movements of animals in relation to environmental conditions are better documented, no inferences can be drawn regarding trends in abundance of short-finned pilot whales off California, Oregon and Washington.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for short-finned pilot whales off California, Oregon and Washington.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~123~~ 465) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.40~~ 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with ~~a mortality rate CV>0.80~~ no known fishery mortality in the last 5 years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~0.98~~ 4.6 short-finned pilot whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of known fishery mortality and injury for this stock of short-finned pilot whale is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of short-finned pilot whale entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species. There have been 11 pilot whale deaths observed in this fishery since 1990. In 1993, there were 8 deaths observed, and one each in 1990, 1992, 1997 (in an unpingered net) and 2003. Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimate of ~~1.0 (CV=1.00)~~ zero short-finned pilot whales taken annually.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to

convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Historically, short-finned pilot whales were also killed in squid purse seine operations off Southern California (Miller et al. 1983; Heyning et al. 1994), but these deaths occurred when pilot whales were still common in the region. An observer program in the squid purse seine fishery was initiated in 2004 and a total of ~~193~~ 377 sets have been observed through ~~2006~~ 2008 without a pilot whale interaction. Observer coverage in this fishery has been less than 10% of all fishing effort.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of short-finned pilot whales (California/Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. ~~All observed entanglements of pilot whales resulted in the death of the animal.~~ Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses; n/a = not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.0%~~ ~~20.0%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~1~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~5 (1.00)~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~1.0 (1.00)~~ 0
Market squid purse seine	observer	~~2004-2006~~ 2004-2008	<10%	0	0	0
Minimum total annual takes						~~1.0 (1.00)~~ 0

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of short-finned pilot whales off California, Oregon and Washington in relation to OSP is unknown. They have declined in abundance in the Southern California Bight, likely a result of a change in their distribution since the 1982-83 El Niño, but the nature of these changes and potential habitat issues are not adequately understood. Short-finned pilot whales are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality from ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 is ~~one animal, which is exceeds the PBR (0.98),~~ zero animals, less than the PBR of 4.6, and therefore they are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. Total annual human-caused mortality and serious injury for this stock is estimated at zero animals, therefore, mortality is considered to be approaching a zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-233.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Administrative Report LJ-97-11, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 25p.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's,

trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and Chivers, S.J. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA]. 20p.~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.

Carretta, J. V. and K. A. Forney. 1993. Report of the two aerial surveys for marine mammals in California coastal waters using a NOAA DeHavilland Twin Otter aircraft, March 9-April 7, 1991, February 8-April 6, 1992. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-185. 77p.

Carretta, J. V., K. A. Forney. And J. Barlow 1995. Report of 1993-94 marine mammal surveys conducted within the U.S. Navy Outer Sea Test Range off Southern California. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-217. 90p.

Dohl, T. P., K. S. Norris, R. C. Guess, J. D. Bryant, and M. W. Honig. 1980. Summary of marine mammal and seabird surveys of the Southern California Bight area, 1975-1978. Part II. Cetacea of the Southern California Bight. Final Report to the Bureau of Land Management, NTIS Rep. No. PB81248189. 414p.

Forney, K. A. 1997. Patterns of variability and environmental models of relative abundance for California cetaceans. Ph.D. Dissertation, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of California, San Diego.

Forney, K. A. and J. Barlow. 1998. Seasonal patterns in the abundance and distribution of California cetaceans, 1991-92. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14:460-489.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Green, G., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington. Ch. 1. In: Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. OCS Study 91-0093. Final Report prepared for Pacific OCS Region, Minerals Management Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Los Angeles, California.

Green, G., R. A. Grotefendt, M. A. Smultea, C. E. Bowlby, and R. A. Rowlett. 1993. Delphinid aerial surveys in Oregon and Washington waters. Final Report prepared for NMFS, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sand Point Way, NE, Seattle, Washington, 98115, Contract #50ABNF200058.

Heyning, J. E., T. D. Lewis and C. D. Woodhouse. 1994. A note on odontocete mortality from fishing gear entanglements off Southern California. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 15:439-442.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Jones, P. A. and I. D. Szczepaniak. 1992. Report on the seabird and marine mammal censuses conducted for the long-term management strategy (LTMS), August 1990 through November 1991, for the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region IX, San Francisco, July 1992.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of marine mammal, turtle, and seabird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-95. Fishery Bulletin 96:271-284.

Kasuya, O., T. Miyashita, and F. Kasamatsu. 1988. Segregation of two forms of short-finned pilot whales off the Pacific coast of Japan. Sci. Rep. Whales Res. Inst. 39:77-90.

Miller, D. J., M. J. Herder and J. P Scholl. 1983. California marine mammal - fishery interaction study, 1979-1981. Administrative Report LJ-83-13C. Available from NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, California, 92038. 233p.

Miyazaki, N. and M. Amano. 1994. Skull morphology of two forms of short-finned pilot whales off the Pacific coast of Japan. Rep. Int. Whaling Commn. 44:499-508.

Polisini, J. M. 1981. A comparison of *Globicephala macrorhyncha* (Gray, 1846) with the pilot whale of the North Pacific Ocean: An analysis of the skull of the broad-rostrum pilot whales of the genus *Globicephala*. Dissertation Abstracts International Vol. 41, No. 08, February 1981, p. 2928-B.

Shane, S. 1994. Occurrence and habitat use of marine mammals at Santa Catalina Island, California from 1983-91. Bull. Southern California Acad. Sci. 93:13-29.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Vojkovich, M. 1998. The California fishery for market squid (*Loligo opalescens*). CalCOFI Rep. 39:55-60.

Wada, S. 1988. Genetic differentiation between forms of short-finned pilot whales off the Pacific coast of Japan. Sci. Rep. Whales Res. Inst. 39:91-101.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

BAIRD'S BEAKED WHALE (*Berardius bairdii*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Baird's beaked whales are distributed throughout deep waters and along the continental slopes of the North Pacific Ocean (Balcomb 1989). They have been harvested and studied in Japanese waters, but little is known about this species elsewhere (Balcomb 1989). Along the U.S. west coast, Baird's beaked whales have been seen primarily along the continental slope (Figure 1) from late spring to early fall. They have been seen less frequently and are presumed to be farther offshore during the colder water months of November through April. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Baird's beaked whales within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Alaskan waters.

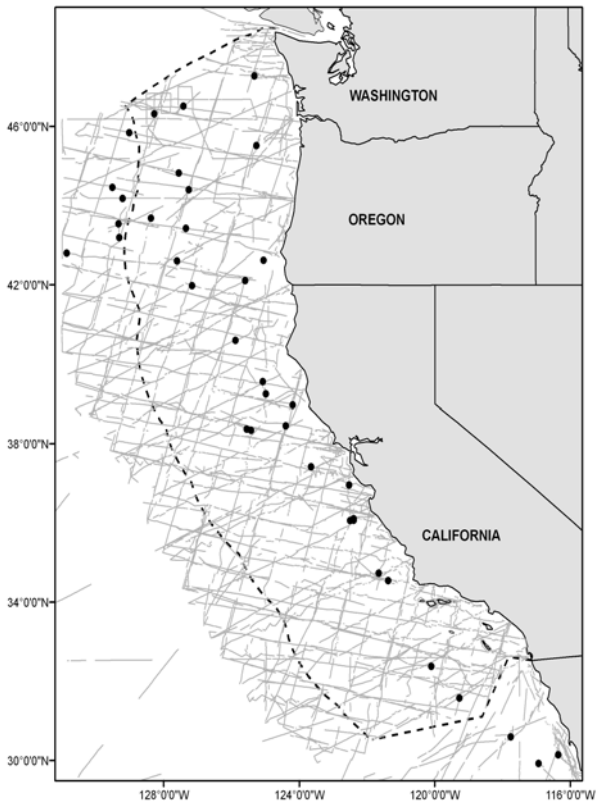


Figure 1. Baird's beaked whale sightings based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Two summer/fall shipboard surveys were conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington ~~in 2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). Because the distribution of Baird's beaked whale varies and animals probably spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the above two ship surveys is ~~540 (CV=0.54)~~ 907 (CV=0.49) Baird's beaked whales (~~Barlow and Forney 2007;~~ Forney 2007, Barlow 2010). This abundance estimate includes correction factors for the proportion of animals missed, based on a model of their diving behavior, detection distances, and the searching behavior of observers (Barlow 1999). About 96% of all trackline groups are estimated to be seen.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 ~~weighted average~~ geometric mean abundance estimate is ~~353~~ 615 Baird's beaked whales.

Current Population Trend

Due to the rarity of sightings of this species on surveys along the U.S. West coast, no information exists regarding trends in abundance of this population. Future studies of trends must take the apparent seasonality of the distribution of Baird's beaked whales into account.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for this species.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~353~~ 615) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no fishery mortality; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~3.5~~ 6.2 Baird's beaked whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

~~A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for Baird's beaked whales in this region is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, 2002-2006 (Carretta and Chivers 2004, Carretta et al. 2005a, 2005b, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of Baird's beaked whale entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this particular species.~~ The California large mesh drift gillnet fishery has been the only fishery known to interact with this stock. One Baird's beaked whale was incidentally killed in this fishery in 1994 (Julian and Beeson 1998), before acoustic pingers were first used in the fishery in 1996 (Barlow and Cameron 2003). Since 1996, no beaked whale of *any* species have been observed entangled or killed in this fishery (Carretta et al. 2008, Carretta and Enriquez 2009a, 2009b). Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimated annual mortality of zero Baird's beaked whales. ~~One Baird's beaked whale was taken in the drift gillnet fishery in 1994.~~

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of Baird's beaked whales (California/Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. The single observed entanglement resulted in the death of the animal. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer data	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0
Minimum total annual takes						0

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to

those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Other mortality

California coastal whaling operations killed 15 Baird's beaked whales between 1956 and 1970, and 29 additional Baird's beaked whales were taken by whalers in British Columbian waters (Rice 1974). One Baird's beaked whale stranded in Washington state in 2003 and the cause of death was attributed to a ship strike. No other human-caused mortality has been reported for this stock for the period 2004-2008.

Additional, unknown levels of injury and mortality of Baird's beaked whales may occur as a result of anthropogenic sound, such as military sonars (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001) or other commercial and scientific activities involving the use of air guns. Such injury or mortality would rarely be documented, due to the remote nature of many of these activities and the low probability that an injured or dead beaked whale would strand.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Baird's beaked whales in California, Oregon and Washington waters relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species, but in recent years questions have been raised regarding potential effects of human-made sounds on deep-diving cetacean species, such as Baird's beaked whales (Richardson et al. 1995). In particular, active sonar has been implicated in the mass stranding of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea (Frantzis 1998) and more recently in the Caribbean (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001). They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~Including the one animal that died as the result of a ship strike in 2003, the~~ The average annual human-caused mortality ~~in 2002-2006~~ during 2004-2008 is ~~0.2~~ zero animals/year. Because recent fishery and human-caused mortality is less than the PBR (~~3.5~~ 6.2), Baird's beaked whales are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is zero and can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero.

REFERENCES

Balcomb, K. C., III. 1989. Baird's beaked whale *Berardius bairdii* Stejneger, 1883: Arnoux's beaked whale *Berardius arnuxii* Duvernoy, 1851. *In*: Ridgway, S. H. and Harrison, R. (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4., p. 261-288. Academic Press Limited.

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-233.Barlow, J. 1999. Trackline detection probability for long-diving whales. p. 209-224 *In*: G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, and D. G. Robertson (eds.) Marine Mammal Survey and Assessment Methods. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam. 287 pp.

Barlow, J. and G.A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V., J. Barlow, and L. Enriquez. 2008. Acoustic pingers eliminate beaked whale bycatch in a gill net fishery. Marine Mammal Science 24(4):956-961.

~~Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

~~Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005a. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Frantzis, A. 1998. Does acoustic testing strand whales? Nature 392(5):29.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in eastern North Pacific. p. 170-195 *In:* W. E. Schevill (ed.), The Whale Problem - A Status Report. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

MESOPLODONT BEAKED WHALES (*Mesoplodon* spp.): California/Oregon/Washington Stocks

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Mesoplodont beaked whales are distributed throughout deep waters and along the continental slopes of the North Pacific Ocean. At least 5 species in this genus have been recorded off the U.S. west coast, but due to the rarity of records and the difficulty in identifying these animals in the field, virtually no species-specific information is available (Mead 1989). The six species known to occur in this region are: Blainville's beaked whale (*M. densirostris*), Perrin's beaked whale (*M. perrini*), Lesser beaked whale (*M. peruvianus*), Stejneger's beaked whale (*M. stejnegeri*), Gingko-toothed beaked whale (*M. gingkodens*), and Hubbs' beaked whale (*M. carlhubbsi*). Insufficient sighting records exist off the U.S. west coast (Figure 1) to determine any possible spatial or seasonal patterns in the distribution of mesoplodont beaked whales.

Until methods of distinguishing these six species are developed, the management unit must be defined to include all *Mesoplodon* stocks in this region. However, in the future, species-level management is desirable, and a high priority should be placed on finding means to obtain species-specific abundance information. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, three *Mesoplodon* stocks are defined: 1) all *Mesoplodon* species off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), 2) *M. stejnegeri* in Alaskan waters, and 3) *M. densirostris* in Hawaiian waters.

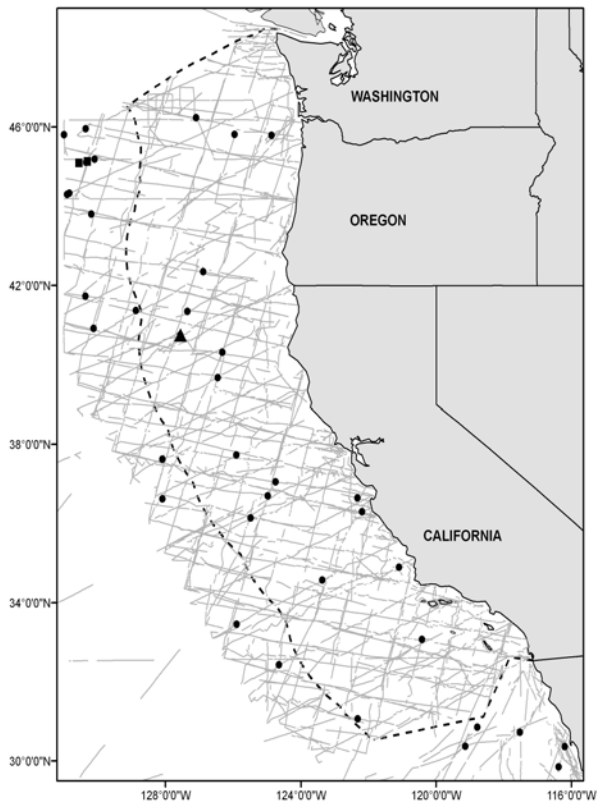


Figure 1. *Mesoplodon* beaked whale sightings based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Key: • = *Mesoplodon* spp.; ▲= identified *Mesoplodon densirostris*; ■ = identified *Mesoplodon carlhubbsi*. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Although mesoplodont beaked whales have been sighted along the U.S. west coast on several line transect surveys utilizing both aerial and shipboard platforms, sightings have generally been too rare to produce reliable population estimates, and species identification has been problematic (Barlow and Forney 2007, Forney 2007). Previous abundance estimates have been imprecise and biased downward by an unknown amount because of the large proportion of time mesoplodont beaked whales spend submerged, and because the surveys on which they were based covered only California waters, and thus could not include animals off Oregon/Washington. Furthermore, there were a large number of unidentified beaked whale sightings, which were either *Mesoplodon* sp. or Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*). Updated analyses are based on 1) combining data from two surveys conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010), 2) whenever possible, assigning unidentified

beaked whale sightings to *Mesoplodon* spp. or *Ziphius cavirostris* based on written descriptions, size estimates, and 'most probable identifications' made by the observers at the time of the sightings, and 3) estimating a correction factor for animals missed, based on a model of their diving behavior, detection distances, and the searching behavior of observers (Barlow 1999). About 45% of all trackline groups are estimated to be seen. Of the 5 sightings of *Mesoplodon* made during ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 surveys [all 5 sightings were made during the 2005 survey] two were identified to the 'probable' species level (one *Mesoplodon densirostris* and one *Mesoplodon carlhubbsi*). The current estimate of Blainville's beaked abundance is based on this one probable sighting, while the Hubb's beaked whale sighting was not recorded during standard survey effort, and thus, there is no estimate of abundance. An updated estimate of abundance for unidentified mesoplodont beaked whales is also presented, based on ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 survey effort and sightings. Because their distribution varies and animals probably spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The abundance of Blainville's beaked whales for California, Oregon, and Washington, based on ~~the geometric mean of~~ ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 surveys is ~~1,206 (CV=1.16)~~ 603 (CV=1.16). The abundance estimate for mesoplodont beaked whales of unknown species, based on the same ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 surveys is ~~421 (CV=0.88)~~ 421 (CV=0.88). The combined estimate of abundance for all species of *Mesoplodon* beaked whales in California, Oregon, and Washington waters out to 300 nmi is ~~1,024 (CV=0.77)~~ 1,024 (CV=0.77) animals. This estimate does not include sightings of 'unidentified beaked whales' made during 2005 and 2008, some of which may have been *Mesoplodont* beaked whales (Forney 2007, Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate (defined as the log-normal 20th percentile of the abundance estimate) for mesoplodont beaked whales in California, Oregon, and Washington is ~~576~~ 576 animals.

Current Population Trend

Due to the rarity of sightings of these species on surveys along the U.S. West coast, no information exists regarding possible trends in abundance.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for mesoplodont beaked whales.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~576~~ 576) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known recent fishery mortality; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~5.7~~ 5.8 mesoplodont beaked whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

~~There has been no recent observed mortality of mesoplodont beaked whales in the drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark (Table 1). Between 1990-95, there were a total of five Hubb's beaked whales, one Stegneger's beaked whale, two unidentified mesoplodont beaked whales, and three unidentified beaked whales killed in this fishery (Julian and Beeson 1998). Since 1996, there have been no mesoplodont beaked whales observed entangled or killed (Carretta et al. 2005), which coincides with the introduction and use of acoustic pingers into this fishery (Barlow and Cameron 2003). A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for mesoplodont beaked whales in this region is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, 2002-2006 data (Carretta and Chivers 2004, Carretta et al. 2005a, 2005b, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the relative rarity of mesoplodont beaked whale entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of this group of~~

~~species.~~ The California large mesh drift gillnet fishery has been the only fishery historically known to interact with *Mesoplodon* beaked whales in this region. Between 1990 and 1995, a total of eight *Mesoplodon* beaked whales (5 Hubb's beaked whales (*Mesoplodon carlhubbsi*), one Stejneger's beaked whale (*Mesoplodon stejnegeri*), and two unidentified *Mesoplodon sp.* were observed entangled in approximately 3,300 sets (Julian and Beeson 1998, Carretta *et al*. 2008). Following the introduction of acoustic pingers into this fishery (Barlow and Cameron 2003), no beaked whales of any species have been observed entangled in over 4,000 observed sets (Carretta *et al*. 2008, Carretta and Enriquez 2009a, 2009b). Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimated annual mortality of zero mesoplodont beaked whales.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of *Mesoplodon* beaked whales (California/Oregon/Washington Stocks) in commercial fisheries that might take these species. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality	Estimated Annual Mortality	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0
Minimum total annual takes of *Mesoplodon* beaked whales						0

Other mortality

Additional, unknown levels of injuries and mortality of mesoplodont beaked whales may occur as a result of anthropogenic sound, such as military sonars (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001) or other commercial and scientific activities involving the use of air guns. Such injuries or mortality would rarely be documented, due to the remote nature of many of these activities and the low probability that an injured or dead beaked whale would strand.

STATUS OF STOCKS

The status of mesoplodont beaked whales in California, Oregon and Washington waters relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species, but in recent years questions have been raised regarding potential effects of human-made sounds on deep-diving cetacean species, such as mesoplodont beaked whales (Richardson et al. 1995). In particular, active sonar has been implicated in the mass stranding of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea (Frantzis 1998) and more recently in the Bahamas (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001).

None of the six species is listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor considered "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~Including driftnet mortality only for years after implementation of the Take Reduction Plan (1997-98), the~~ The average annual human-caused fishery mortality in ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 is zero. Because recent mortality is zero, mesoplodont beaked whales are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. It is likely that the difficulty in identifying these animals in the field will remain a critical obstacle to obtaining species-specific abundance estimates and stock assessments in the future.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. 1999. Trackline detection probability for long-diving whales. p. 209-224 *In*: G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, and D. G. Robertson (eds.) Marine Mammal Survey and Assessment Methods. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam. 287 pp.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

~~Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

~~Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005a. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Frantzis, A. 1998. Does acoustic testing strand whales? Nature 392(5):29.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish,

Xiphias gladius. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fishery Bulletin 96:271-284.

Mead, J. G. 1989. Beaked whales of the genus *Mesoplodon*. *In*: Ridgway, S. H. and Harrison, R. (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4., p. 349-430. Academic Press Limited.

National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. Unpublished data.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

CUVIER'S BEAKED WHALE (*Ziphius cavirostris*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Cuvier's beaked whales are distributed widely throughout deep waters of all oceans (Heyning 1989). Off the U.S. west coast, this species is the most commonly encountered beaked whale (Figure 1). No seasonal changes in distribution are apparent from stranding records, and morphological evidence is consistent with the existence of a single eastern North Pacific population from Alaska to Baja California, Mexico (Mitchell 1968). However, there are currently no international agreements for cooperative management of this species. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Cuvier's beaked whales within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into three discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), 2) Alaskan waters, and 3) Hawaiian waters.

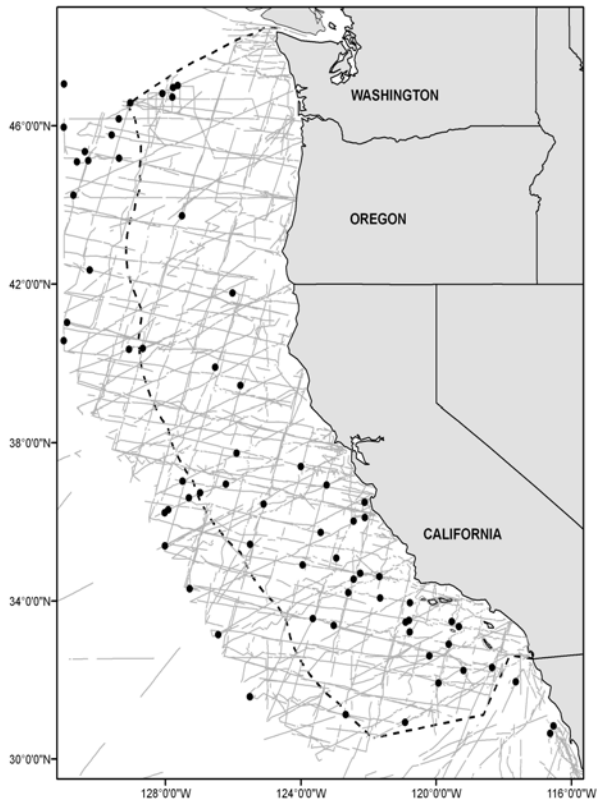


Figure 1. Cuvier's beaked whale sightings based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2, for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Although Cuvier's beaked whales have been sighted along the U.S. west coast on several line transect surveys utilizing both aerial and shipboard platforms, sightings have been too rare to produce reliable population estimates. Previous abundance estimates have been imprecise and biased downward by an unknown amount because of the large proportion of time this species spends submerged, and because the ship surveys on which they were based covered only California waters, and thus could not observe animals off Oregon/Washington. Furthermore, there were a large number of unidentified beaked whale sightings, which were probably either *Mesoplodon* sp. or Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*). Updated analyses are based on 1) combining data from two surveys conducted within 300 nmi of the coasts of California, Oregon and Washington in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010), 2) whenever possible, assigning unidentified beaked whale sightings to *Mesoplodon* spp. or *Ziphius cavirostris* based on written descriptions, size estimates, and 'most probable identifications' made by the observers at the time of the sightings, and 3) estimating a correction factor for animals missed , based on a model of their diving behavior, detection distances, and the searching behavior of observers (Barlow 1999). An estimated 23% of trackline groups are estimated to be seen. Because animals probably spend time outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, a multi-year average abundance estimate is the most appropriate for management within U.S. waters. The ~~2001-2005~~ 2005-2008 geometric mean abundance estimate for California, Oregon and Washington waters based on the above analyses is ~~2,830 (CV=0.73)~~ 2,143 (0.65) Cuvier's beaked whales.

Minimum Population Estimate

Based on the above abundance estimate and CV, the minimum population estimate (defined as the log-normal 20th percentile of the abundance estimate) for Cuvier's beaked whales in California, Oregon, and Washington is ~~1,629~~ 1,298 animals.

Current Population Trend

Due to the rarity of sightings of this species on surveys along the U.S. West coast, no information exists regarding trends in abundance of this population.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for this species.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~1,629~~ 1,298) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.40~~ 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with ~~an unknown~~ no known fishery mortality ~~CV~~; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~13~~ 13 Cuvier's beaked whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for Cuvier's beaked whales in this region is shown in Table 1. ~~More detailed information on these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. Mortality estimates for the California drift gillnet fishery are included for the five most recent years of monitoring, 2002-2006 (Carretta and Chivers 2004, Carretta et al. 2005a, 2005b, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003)~~. The California large mesh drift gillnet fishery has been the only fishery historically known to interact with this stock. There have been no Cuvier's beaked whales observed entangled in over 4,000 drift gillnet fishery sets since acoustic pingers were first used in this fishery in 1996 (Barlow and Cameron 2003, Carretta et al. 2008, Carretta and Enriquez 2009a, 2009b). Prior to 1996, there were a total of 21 Cuvier's beaked whales entangled in approximately 3,300 drift gillnet fishery sets: 1992 (six animals), 1993 (three), 1994 (six) and 1995 (six) (Julian and Beeson 1998). Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based only on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimated annual mortality of zero Cuvier's beaked whales.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of Cuvier's beaked whales (California/ Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise. ~~n/a = not available.~~

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality + ReleasedAlive	Estimated Annual Mortality / Mortality + Entanglements	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer data	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0
Minimum total annual takes						0

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki

1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Other mortality

Additional, unknown levels of injuries and mortality of Cuvier's beaked whales may occur as a result of anthropogenic sound, such as military sonars (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001) or other commercial and scientific activities involving the use of air guns. Such injuries or mortality would rarely be documented, due to the remote nature of many of these activities and the low probability that an injured or dead beaked whale would strand.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Cuvier's beaked whales in California, Oregon and Washington waters relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species, but in recent years questions have been raised regarding potential effects of human-made sounds on deep-diving cetacean species, such as Cuvier's beaked whales (Richardson et al. 1995). In particular, active sonar has been implicated in the mass stranding of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea (Frantzis 1998) and more recently in the Caribbean (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001). They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The average annual human-caused mortality in ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 is zero. Because recent human-caused mortality is less than the PBR, Cuvier's beaked whales are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for this stock is less than 10% of the PBR and thus can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. 1999. Trackline detection probability for long-diving whales. p. 209-224 *In*: G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, and D. G. Robertson (eds.) Marine Mammal Survey and Assessment Methods. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam. 287 pp.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V., J. Barlow, and L. Enriquez. 2008. Acoustic pingers eliminate beaked whale bycatch in a gill net fishery. Marine Mammal Science 24(4):956-961.

~~Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06,~~

~~available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

~~Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005a. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.~~

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.Frantzis, A. 1998. Does acoustic testing strand whales? Nature 392(5):29.~~

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Heyning, J. E. 1989. Cuvier's beaked whale *Ziphius cavirostris* G. Cuvier, 1823. pp. 289-308 *In:* Ridgway, S. H. and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4. Academic Press.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Mitchell, E. 1968. Northeast Pacific stranding distribution and seasonality of Cuvier's beaked whale, *Ziphius cavirostris*. Can. J. Zool. 46:265-279.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

PYGMY SPERM WHALE (*Kogia breviceps*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Pygmy sperm whales are distributed throughout deep waters and along the continental slopes of the North Pacific and other ocean basins (Ross 1984; Caldwell and Caldwell 1989). Along the U.S. west coast, sightings of this species and of animals identified only as *Kogia* sp. have been very rare (Figure 1). However, this probably reflects their pelagic distribution, small body size and cryptic behavior, rather than a measure of rarity. Strandings of pygmy sperm whales in this region are known from California, Oregon and Washington (Roest 1970; Caldwell and Caldwell 1989; NMFS, Northwest Region, unpublished data; NMFS, Southwest Region, unpublished data), while strandings of dwarf sperm whales (*Kogia sima*) are rare in this region. At-sea sightings in this region have all been either of pygmy sperm whales or unidentified *Kogia* sp. Available data are insufficient to identify any seasonality in the distribution of pygmy sperm whales, or to delineate possible stock boundaries. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, pygmy sperm whales within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Hawaiian waters.

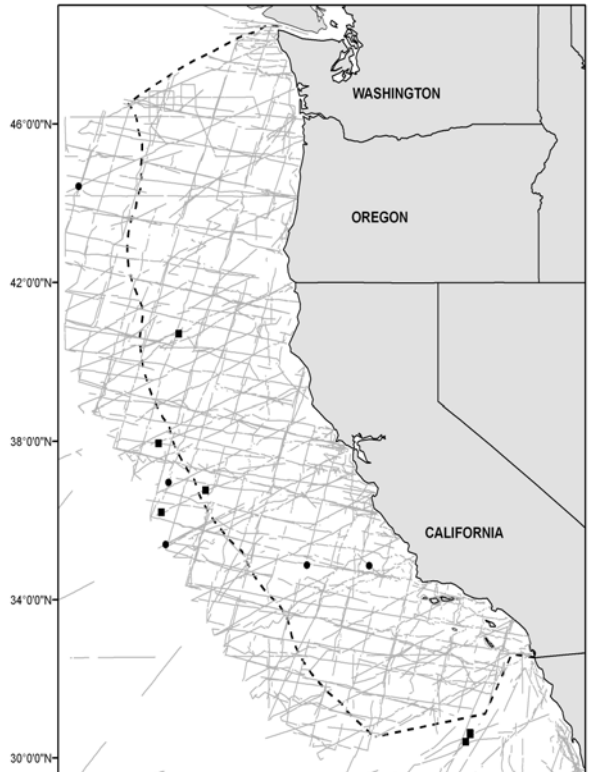


Figure 1. *Kogia* sightings based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~ 2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Key: ■ = *Kogia breviceps*, ● = *Kogia* spp. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Although pygmy sperm whales have been sighted along the U.S. west coast on several line transect surveys ~~utilizing both aerial and shipboard platforms~~, sightings have been too rare to produce reliable population estimates. The most recent abundance estimate of ~~899 (CV=1.00)~~ 1,157 (CV=1.02) animals ~~was~~ is based on one sighting of an unidentified *Kogia* during a ~~1996~~ 2008 ship survey of California, Oregon, and Washington waters (~~Barlow and Forney 2007~~ Barlow 2010). Based on previous sighting surveys and historical stranding data, it is likely that these sightings were of pygmy sperm whales; *K. breviceps*. The ~~1996~~ 2008 estimate incorporate~~s~~ a correction factor for animals missed, based on a model of their diving behavior, detection distances, and the searching behavior of observers (Barlow 1999). About 35% of all trackline groups are estimated to be seen. ~~Because no sightings of pygmy sperm whales have been recorded since 1996 and the most recent abundance estimates is >8 years old (Barlow and Forney 2007), there is no current estimate of abundance available.~~ The ~~lack of recent~~ rarity of sightings likely reflects the cryptic nature of this species (they are detected almost exclusively in extremely calm sea conditions), rather than an absence of animals in the region. The best estimate of abundance for this stock is the mean of 2005 and 2008 shipboard line-transect surveys, or 579 (CV=1.02) animals.

Minimum Population Estimate

~~No current information on abundance is available to obtain a minimum population estimate for pygmy sperm whales.~~ The minimum population estimate is taken as the log-normal 20th percentile of the 2005 and 2008 average abundance estimate for California, Oregon, and Washington waters, or 271 animals.

Current Population Trend

Due to the rarity of sightings of this species on surveys along the U.S. West coast, no information exists regarding trends in abundance of this population.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for this species.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

~~Because there is no current estimate of minimum abundance, a potential biological removal (PBR) cannot be calculated for this stock.~~ The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (271) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality during the last five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 2.7 pygmy sperm whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

A summary of recent fishery mortality and injury for pygmy sperm whales and unidentified *Kogia*, which may have been pygmy sperm whales, is shown in Table 1. More detailed information on the drift gillnet fishery is provided in Appendix 1. In the California drift gillnet fishery, no mortality of pygmy sperm whales or unidentified *Kogia* was observed during the most recent five years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). One pygmy sperm whale was observed killed in the drift gillnet fishery in 1992 and another in 1993. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the rarity of *Kogia* entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of pygmy sperm whales. Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimated annual mortality of zero pygmy sperm whales.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

One pygmy sperm whale stranded in California in 2002 with evidence that it died as a result of a shooting (positive metal detector scan). Due to the cryptic and pelagic nature of this species, it is likely that the shooting resulted from an interaction with an unknown entangling net fishery.

Other mortality

~~This results in an average annual human-caused mortality of 0.2 pygmy sperm whales per year.~~ No human-caused mortality of pygmy sperm whales has been documented during the most recent five-year period (2004-2008). ~~Additional, unknown~~ Unknown levels of injuries and mortality of pygmy sperm whales may occur as a result of anthropogenic sound, such as military sonars (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001) or other commercial and scientific activities involving the use of air guns. Such injuries or mortality would rarely be

documented, due to the remote nature of many of these activities and the low probability that an injured or dead pygmy sperm whale would strand.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of pygmy sperm whales in California, Oregon and Washington waters relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate potential trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species, but in recent years questions have been raised regarding potential effects of human-made sounds on deep-diving cetacean species, such as pygmy sperm whales (Richardson et al. 1995). In particular, active sonar has been implicated in the mass stranding of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea (Frantzis 1998) and more recently in the Caribbean (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001). They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The average annual human-caused mortality for 2002-2006 is 0.2 animals, based on one stranded animal in 2002 that had evidence of gunshot wounds. A PBR cannot be calculated for this stock because there is no current abundance estimate (Barlow and Forney 2007). The lack of recent sightings is probably due to a combination of rough sea conditions during recent cruises and the cryptic nature of this species. Previous estimates of PBR for this stock have ranged between 1 and 28 pygmy sperm whales (Barlow et al. 1995, Barlow et al. 1997, Forney et al. 2000, Carretta et al. 2003). Recent fishery mortality is ≥0.2 animals annually. Because a PBR cannot be calculated for this stock, recent fishery mortality relative to PBR is unknown.~~ Given the rarity of sightings and fishery interactions in U.S. west coast waters, pygmy sperm whales are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of pygmy sperm whales and unidentified *Kogia* sp. (California/Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality *K. breviceps /Kogia* sp.	*Estimated Annual Mortality of K. breviceps/Kogia* sp.	*Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)*
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer data	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0 / 0~~ ~~0 / 0~~ 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0	~~0 / 0~~ ~~0 / 0~~ 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0	0
~~**Unknown fishery interaction**~~	~~Stranding (positive metal detector scan)~~	~~2002~~	~~n/a~~	~~1~~	~~n/a~~	~~≥0.2~~
Minimum total annual takes						~~≥0.2~~ 0

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J., R.L. Brownell, Jr., D.P. DeMaster, K.A. Forney, M.S. Lowry, S. Osmeck, T.J. Ragen, R.R. Reeves, and R.J. Small. 1995. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-219. 162p.

Barlow, J., K.A. Forney, P.S. Hill, R.L. Brownell, Jr., J.V. Carretta, D.P. DeMaster, F. Julian, M.S. Lowry, T. Ragen, and R.R. Reeves. 1997. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 1996. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-248. 223p.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-233.

Barlow, J. 1999. Trackline detection probability for long-diving whales. p. 209-224 *In*: G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, and D. G. Robertson (eds.) Marine Mammal Survey and Assessment Methods. A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam. 287 pp.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Caldwell, D. K. and M. C. Caldwell. 1989. Pygmy sperm whale *Kogia breviceps* (de Blainville, 1838): Dwarf sperm whale *Kogia simus* Owen, 1866. pp. 235-260 *In:* Ridgway, S. H. and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4. Academic Press.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

Carretta, J.V., K.A. Forney, M.M. Muto, J. Barlow, J. Baker, and M. Lowry. 2004. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2003. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-358. 291p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Forney, K.A., J. Barlow, M.M. Muto, M. Lowry, J. Baker, G. Cameron, J. Mobley, C. Stinchcomb, and J.V. Carretta. 2000. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2000. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-300. 230p.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27 p.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

NMFS, Southwest Region, 501 West Ocean Blvd, Long Beach, CA 90802_4213.

Oregon Department of Fish and Game, Unpublished data.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Roest, A. I. 1970. *Kogia simus* and other cetaceans from San Luis Obispo County, California. J. Mammal. 51:410-417.

Ross, G. J. B. 1984. The smaller cetaceans of the south east coast of southern Africa. Ann. Cape Prov. Mus. Nat. Hist. 15:173-410.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

DWARF SPERM WHALE (*Kogia sima*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Dwarf sperm whales are distributed throughout deep waters and along the continental slopes of the North Pacific and other ocean basins (Caldwell and Caldwell 1989; Ross 1984). This species was only recognized as being distinct from the pygmy sperm whale in 1966 (Handley, 1966), and early records for the two species are confounded. Along the U.S. west coast, no at-sea sightings of this species have been reported; however, this may be partially a reflection of their pelagic distribution, small body size and cryptic behavior. A few sightings of animals identified only as *Kogia* sp. have been reported (Figure 1), and some of these may have been dwarf sperm whales. At least five dwarf sperm whales stranded in California between 1967 and 2000 (Roest 1970; Jones 1981; J. Heyning, pers. comm.; NMFS, Southwest Region, unpublished data), and one stranding is reported for western Canada (Nagorsen and Stewart 1983). It is unclear whether records of dwarf sperm whales are so rare because they are not regular inhabitants of this region, or merely because of their cryptic habits and offshore distribution. Available data are insufficient to identify any seasonality in the distribution of dwarf sperm whales, or to delineate possible stock boundaries. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, dwarf sperm whales within the Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington (this report), and 2) Hawaiian waters.

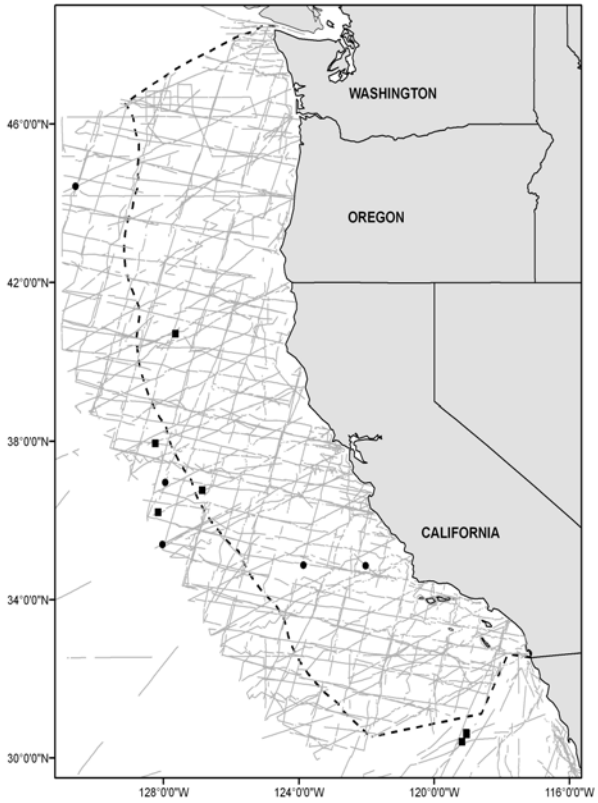


Figure 1. *Kogia* sightings based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon and Washington, 1991-~~2001~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort). Key: ■ = *Kogia breviceps*; ● = *Kogia* spp. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

No information is available to estimate the population size of dwarf sperm whales off the U.S. west coast, as no sightings of this species have been documented despite numerous vessel surveys of this region (Barlow 1995; Barlow and Gerrodette 1996; Barlow and Forney 2007; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010). Based on previous sighting surveys and historical stranding data, it is likely that recent ship survey sightings were of pygmy sperm whales; *K. breviceps*.

Minimum Population Estimate

No information is available to obtain a minimum population estimate for dwarf sperm whales.

Current Population Trend

Due to the rarity of records for this species along the U.S. West coast, no information exists regarding trends in abundance of this population.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rates is available for this species.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

Based on this stock's unknown status and growth rate, the recovery factor (F_r) is 0.5, and ½R_{max} is the default value of 0.02. However, due to the lack of abundance estimates for this species, no potential biological removal (PBR) can be calculated.

ANNUAL HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

In the California drift gillnet fishery, no mortality of dwarf sperm whales or unidentified *Kogia* was observed during the most recent five years of monitoring, ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, because of interannual variability in entanglement rates and the rarity of *Kogia* entanglements, additional years of data will be required to fully evaluate the effectiveness of pingers for reducing mortality of dwarf sperm whales. Mean annual takes in Table 1 are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data. This results in an average estimated annual mortality of zero dwarf sperm whales.

Similar drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which has increased from two vessels in 1986 to 29 vessels in 1992 (Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of dwarf sperm whales in California, Oregon and Washington waters relative to OSP is not known, and there are insufficient data to evaluate potential trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species, but in recent years questions have been raised regarding potential effects of human-made sounds on deep-diving cetacean species, such as dwarf sperm whales (Richardson et al. 1995). In particular, active sonar has been implicated in the mass stranding of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea (Frantzis 1998) and more recently in the Caribbean (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001). They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Given that this species rarely occurs off the U.S. west coast and current fishery mortality is zero, dwarf sperm whales off California, Oregon and Washington are not classified as a "strategic" stock under the MMPA.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of dwarf sperm whales and unidentified *Kogia* sp. (California/Oregon/Washington Stock) in commercial fisheries that might take this species. Coefficients of variation for mortality estimates are provided in parentheses. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Data Type	Year(s)	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality *K. breviceps /Kogia* sp.	*Estimated Annual Mortality of K. breviceps/Kogia* sp.	*Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)*
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	observer data	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0 / 0~~ ~~0 / 0~~ 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0	~~0 / 0~~ ~~0 / 0~~ 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0 0 / 0	0
Minimum total annual takes						0

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. and T. Gerrodette. 1996. Abundance of cetaceans in California waters based on 1991 and 1993 ship surveys. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-233.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004.

Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Caldwell, D. K. and M. C. Caldwell. 1989. Pygmy sperm whale Kogia breviceps (de Blainville, 1838): Dwarf sperm whale Kogia simus Owen, 1866. pp. 235-260 In: Ridgway, S. H. and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4. Academic Press.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Handley, C. O. Jr. 1966. A synopsis of the genus Kogia (pygmy sperm whales). pp. 62-69 In: K. S. Norris (ed.), Whales, dolphins and porpoises. University of California Press, Berkeley.

Jones, R. E. 1981. Food habits of smaller marine mammals from northern California. Proc. California Acad. Sci. 42:409-433.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of mammal, turtle and bird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-1995. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Nagorsen, D. W. and G. E. Stewart. 1983. A dwarf sperm whale (Kogia simus) from the Pacific coast of Canada. J. Mamm. 64:505-506.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Roest, A. I. 1970. Kogia simus and other cetaceans from San Luis Obispo County, California. J. Mammal. 51:410-417.

Ross, G. J. B. 1984. The smaller cetaceans of the south east coast of southern Africa. Ann. Cape Prov. Mus. Nat. Hist. 15:173-410.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa-Pacheco, R. Castro-Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (Xiphias gladius) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

SPERM WHALE (*Physeter macrocephalus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Sperm whales are widely distributed across the entire North Pacific and into the southern Bering Sea in summer but the majority are thought to be south of 40°N in winter (Rice 1974; Rice 1989; Gosho et al. 1984; Miyashita et al. 1995). For management, the International Whaling Commission (IWC) had divided the North Pacific into two management regions (Donovan 1991) defined by a zig-zag line which starts at 150°W at the equator, is 160°W between 40-50°N, and ends up at 180°W north of 50°N; however, the IWC has not reviewed this stock boundary in many years (Donovan 1991). Sperm whales are found year-round in California waters (Dohl et al. 1983; Barlow 1995; Forney et al. 1995), but they reach peak abundance from April through mid-June and from the end of August through mid-November (Rice 1974). They were seen in every season except winter (Dec.-Feb.) in Washington and Oregon (Green et al. 1992). Of 176 sperm whales that were marked with Discovery tags off southern California in winter 1962-70, only three were recovered by whalers: one off northern California in June, one off Washington in June, and another far off British Columbia in April (Rice 1974). Recent summer/fall surveys in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993) show that although sperm whales are widely distributed in the tropics, their relative abundance tapers off markedly westward towards the middle of the tropical Pacific (near the IWC stock boundary at 150°W) and tapers off northward towards the tip of Baja California. The structure of sperm whale populations in the eastern tropical Pacific is not known, but the only photographic matches of known individuals from this area have been between the Galapagos Islands and coastal waters of South America (Dufault and Whitehead 1995) and between the Galapagos Islands and the southern Gulf of California (Jaquet et al. 2003), suggesting that the eastern tropical animals constitute a distinct stock. A recent survey designed specifically to investigate stock structure and abundance of sperm whales in the northeastern temperate Pacific revealed no apparent hiatus in distribution between the U.S. EEZ off California and areas farther west, out to Hawaii (Barlow and Taylor 2005). Recent analyses of genetic relationships of animals in the eastern Pacific found that mtDNA and microsatellite DNA of animals sampled in the California Current is significantly different from animals sampled further offshore and that genetic differences appeared larger in an east-west direction than in a north-south direction (Mesnick et al. 1999). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, sperm whales within the Pacific U.S.

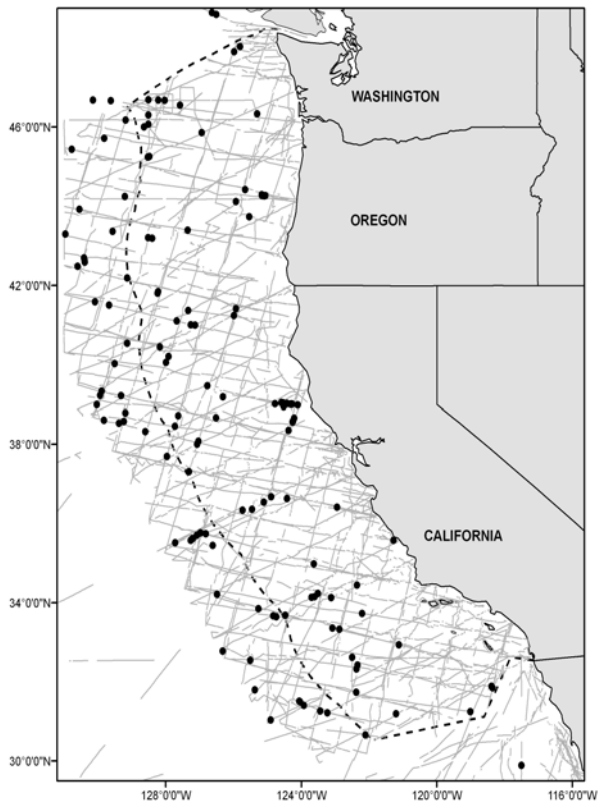


Figure 1. Sperm whale sighting locations based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined. See Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort.

EEZ are divided into three discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) California, Oregon and Washington waters (this report), 2) waters around Hawaii, and 3) Alaska waters.

POPULATION SIZE

Barlow and Taylor (2001) estimated 1,407 (CV=0.39) sperm whales in California, Oregon, and Washington waters during summer/fall based on pooled 1993 and 1996 ship line transect surveys within 300 nmi of the coast and Barlow and Forney (2007) estimated 2,593 (CV= 0.30) sperm whales from a survey of the same area in 2001. A 2005 survey of this area resulted in an abundance estimate of 3,140 (CV=0.40) whales, which is corrected for diving animals not seen during surveys (Forney 2007). The most recent ship survey of the same area in 2008 resulted in an estimate of only 300 (CV = 0.51) sperm whales (Barlow 2010). The 2008 estimate is lower than all previous estimates within this region and may be due to interannual variability of sperm whale distribution in this region. The most recent estimate of abundance for this stock is the geometric mean of the ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 summer/autumn ship survey estimates, or ~~2,853 (CV=0.25)~~ 971 (CV = 0.31) sperm whales. A large 1982 abundance estimate for the entire eastern North Pacific (Gosho et al. 1984) was based on a CPUE method which is no longer accepted as valid by the International Whaling Commission. A combined visual and acoustic line-transect survey conducted in the eastern temperate North Pacific in spring 1997 resulted in estimates of 26,300 (CV=0.81) sperm whales based on visual sightings, and 32,100 (CV=0.36) based acoustic detections and visual group size estimates (Barlow and Taylor 2005). However, it is not known whether any or all of these animals routinely enter the U.S. EEZ. In the eastern tropical Pacific, the abundance of sperm whales has been estimated as 22,700 (95% C.I.=14,800-34,600; Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but this area does not include areas where sperm whales are taken by drift gillnet fisheries in the U.S. EEZ and there is no evidence of sperm whale movements from the eastern tropical Pacific to the U.S. EEZ. Barlow and Taylor (2001) also estimated 1,640 (CV=0.33) sperm whales off the west coast of Baja California, but again there is no evidence for interchange between these animals and those off California, Oregon and Washington.

Clearly, large populations of sperm whales exist in waters that are within several thousand miles west and south of the California, Oregon, and Washington region that is covered by this report; however, there is no evidence of sperm whale movements into this region from either the west or south and genetic data suggest that mixing to the west is extremely unlikely. There **is** limited evidence of sperm whale movement from California to northern areas off British Columbia, but there are no abundance estimates for this area. The most precise and recent estimate of sperm whale abundance for this stock is therefore ~~2,853 (CV=0.25)~~ 971 (CV = 0.31) animals from the ship surveys conducted in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (Forney 2007) and 2008 (Barlow 2010). This estimate is corrected for diving animals not seen during surveys.

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for sperm whales is taken as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of abundance estimated from the ~~2001~~ 2005-2008 summer/fall ship surveys off California, Oregon and Washington (Barlow and Forney 2007; Forney 2007) or approximately ~~2,326~~ 751.

Current Population Trend

Sperm whale abundance appears to have been rather variable off California between 1979/80 and 1991 (Barlow 1994) and between 1991 and ~~2005~~ 2008 (Barlow and Forney 2007, Barlow in prep.). ~~The last two estimates (for 2001 and 2005) are the highest estimates~~, The most recent estimate from 2008 is the lowest to date, in sharp contrast to the highest abundance estimates obtained from 2001 and 2005 surveys. There is no reason to believe that the population has declined; the most recent survey estimate likely reflects interannual variability within the study area. ~~but there has been no~~ To date, there has not been a statistical analysis to detect trends in abundance. Although the population in the eastern North Pacific is expected to have grown since large-scale pelagic whaling stopped in 1980, the possible effects of large unreported catches are unknown (Yablokov 1994) and the ongoing incidental ship strikes and gillnet mortality make this uncertain.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

There are no published estimates of the growth rate for any sperm whale population (Best 1993).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the California portion of this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~2,326~~ 751) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.2~~ 0.1 (for an endangered stock with N_{min} ~~>~~ <1,500, ~~unknown population trend, and abundance estimate CV ≤ 0.50~~; Taylor et al. 2003), resulting in a PBR of ~~9.3~~ 1.5.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

[Information on historic whaling has been moved to the Status of Stock section.]

Fishery Information

The offshore drift gillnet fishery is the only fishery that is likely to take sperm whales from this stock. Detailed information on this fishery is provided in Appendix 1. A summary of known fishery mortality and injury for this stock of sperm whales from ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 is given in Table 1. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). However, two sperm whales have been observed taken in nets with pingers (1996 and 1998). Because sperm whale entanglement is rare and because those nets which took sperm whales did not use the full mandated complement of pingers, it is difficult to evaluate whether pingers have any effect on sperm whale entanglement in drift gillnets. One sperm whale stranded dead in 2004 with 5 to 6-inch mesh nylon netting found in its stomach (NMFS Southwest Regional Office, unpublished data). The fishery source of this netting is unknown. Mean annual takes for this fishery (Table 1) are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b,~~ Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). This results in an average estimate of 0.2 (CV = not available) sperm whale deaths per year.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of sperm whales (CA/OR/WA stock) for commercial fisheries that might take this species (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~). n/a indicates that data are not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Year(s)	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed mortality (and injury in parentheses)	Estimated mortality (CV in parentheses)	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0 (n/a)
Unknown fishery	~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008	stranding	n/a	1	≥1	≥0.2
Total annual takes						≥0.2 (n/a)

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Ship Strikes

No sperm whale mortality has been attributed to ship strikes during the period ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008.

STATUS OF STOCK

The only estimate of the status of North Pacific sperm whales in relation to carrying capacity (Gosho et al. 1984) is based on a CPUE method which is no longer accepted as valid. Whaling removed at least 436,000 sperm whales from the North Pacific between 1800 and the end of commercial whaling for this species in 1987 (Best 1976; Ohsumi 1980; Brownell 1998; Kasuya 1998). Of this total, an estimated 33,842 were taken by Soviet and Japanese pelagic whaling operations in the eastern North Pacific from the longitude of Hawaii to the U.S. West coast, between 1961 and 1976 (Allen 1980, IWC statistical Areas II and III), and approximately 1,000 were reported taken in land-based U.S. West coast whaling operations between 1919 and 1971 (Ohsumi 1980; Clapham et al. 1997). There has been a prohibition on taking sperm whales in the North Pacific since 1988, but large-scale pelagic whaling stopped earlier, in 1980. As a result of this whaling, sperm whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the California to Washington stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The annual rate of kill and serious injury (0.2 per year) is less than the calculated PBR for this stock (~~9.3~~ 1.5). Total human-caused mortality is ~~less~~ greater than 10% of the calculated PBR and, therefore, cannot be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. Increasing levels of anthropogenic sound in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales, particularly for deep-diving whales like sperm whales that feed in the ocean's "sound channel".

REFERENCES

Allison, C. International Whaling Commission. The Red House, 135 Station Road, Impington, Cambridge, UK CB4 9NP.

Allen, K. R. 1980. Size distribution of male sperm whales in the pelagic catches. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 2:51-56.

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456.

Barlow, J. 1994. Abundance of large whales in California coastal waters: a comparison of ship surveys in 1979/80 and in 1991. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 44:399-406.

Barlow, J. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part I: Ship surveys in summer and fall of 1991. Fish. Bull. 93:1-14.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Administrative Report LJ-97-11, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 25p.

Barlow, J. and B. L. Taylor. 2001. Estimates of large whale abundance off California, Oregon, Washington, and Baja California based on 1993 and 1996 ship surveys. Administrative Report LJ-01-03 available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 12p.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and B.L. Taylor. 2005. Estimates of sperm whale abundance in the northeastern temperate Pacific from a combined acoustic and visual survey. Marine Mammal Science 21(3):429-445.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Best, P. B. 1976. A review of world sperm whale stocks. Paper ACMRR/MM/SC/8 Rev. 1, FAO Scientific Consultation of Marine Mammals, Bergen, Norway.

Best, P. B. 1993. Increase rates in severely depleted stocks of baleen whales. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 50:169-186.

Brownell, R. L., Jr., A. V. Yablokov and V. A. Zemmsky. 1998. USSR pelagic catches of North Pacific sperm whales, 1949-1979: Conservation implications. Paper SC/50/CAWS27 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1998 (unpublished).

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Clapham, P. J., S. Leatherwood, I. Szczepaniak, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1997. Catches of humpback and other whales from shore stations at Moss Landing and Trinidad, California, 1919-1926. Marine Mammal Science 13(3):368-394.

Cordaro, J. Southwest Region, NMFS, 501 West Ocean Blvd, Long Beach, CA 90802_4213.

Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-83: Status, abundance, and distribution. Final Report to the Minerals Management Service, Contract No. 14-12-0001-29090. 284p.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Dufault, S. and H. Whitehead. 1995. The geographic stock structure of female and immature sperm whales in the South Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 45:401-405.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A., J. Barlow, M.M. Muto, M. Lowry, J. Baker, G. Cameron, J. Mobley, C. Stinchcomb, and J.V. Carretta. 2000. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2000. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-300. 276p.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Gosho, M. E., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The sperm whale. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46(4):54-64.

Green, G. A., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington, 1989-1990. Ch. 1 In: J. J. Brueggeman (ed.). Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. Minerals Management Service Contract Report 14-12-0001-30426.

Hanan, D. A. 1986. California Department of Fish and Game coastal marine mammal study, annual report for the period July 1, 1983 - June 30, 1984. Admin. Rept. LJ-86-16 available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 55pp.

Hanan, D. A., D. B. Holts, and A. L. Coan, Jr. 1993. The California drift gill net fishery for sharks and swordfish, 1981-82 through 1990-91. Calif. Dept. Fish and Game Fish. Bull. No. 175. 95pp.

Heyning, J. E., and T. D. Lewis. 1990. Fisheries interactions involving baleen whales off southern California. Rep. int. Whal. Commn. 40:427-431.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 pp.

Jaquet, N., D. Gendron, and A. Coakes. 2003. Sperm whales in the Gulf of California: residency, movements, behavior, and the possible influence of variation in food supply. Marine Mammal Science 19 (3): 545–562

~~Julian, F. 1997. Cetacean mortality in California gill net fisheries: Preliminary estimates for 1996. Paper SC/49/SM02 presented to the International Whaling Commission, September 1997 (unpublished). 13 pp.~~

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates of marine mammal, turtle, and seabird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-95. Fishery Bulletin 96:271-284.

Kasuya, T. 1998. Evidence of statistical manipulations in Japanese coastal sperm whale fishery. Paper SC/50/CAWS10 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1998 (unpublished).

Leatherwood, S., K. Goodrich, A. L. Kinter, and R. M. Truppo. 1982. Respiration patterns and 'sightability' of whales. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 32:601-613.

Mesnick, S. L., B. L. Taylor, B. Nachenberg, A. Rosenberg, S. Peterson, J. Hyde, and A. E. Dizon. 1999. Genetic relatedness within groups and the definition of sperm whale stock boundaries from the coastal waters off California, Oregon and Washington. Admin. Rep. LJ-99-12. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 10 pp.

Miyashita, T., H. Kato, and T. Kasuya (Eds.). 1995. Worldwide map of cetacean distribution based on Japanese sighting data. Volume 1. National Research Institute of Far Seas Fisheries, Shizuoka, Japan. 140pp.

Ohsumi, S. 1980. Catches of sperm whales by modern whaling in the North Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 2: 11-18.

Rice, D.W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W.E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.

Rice, D. W. 1989. Sperm whale Physeter macrocephalus, Linnaeus 1758. pp. 177-233 In: S. H. Ridgway and R. J. Harrison (eds.). Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4. Academic Press, London.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Taylor, B.L., M. Scott, J. Heyning, and J. Barlow. 2003. Suggested guidelines for recovery factors for endangered marine mammals. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-354. 6p.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~10/15/2009~~ 04/15/2010

HUMPBACK WHALE (*Megaptera novaeangliae*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Although the International Whaling Commission (IWC) only considered one stock (Donovan 1991), there is now good evidence for multiple populations of humpback whales in the North Pacific (Johnson and Wolman 1984; Baker et al. 1990). Humpback whales in the North Pacific feed in coastal waters from California to Russia and in the Bering Sea. They migrate south to wintering destinations off Mexico, Central America, Hawaii, southern Japan, and the Philippines. Mitochondrial and nuclear genetic markers show that considerable structure exists in humpback whale populations in the North Pacific (Baker et al. 1998). Significant levels of mitochondrial and nuclear genetic differences were found between central California and Southeast Alaska feeding areas (Baker et al. 1998). Mitochondrial genetic differences are also found between feeding area in the Atlantic (Palsboll et al. 1995). The genetic exchange rate between California and Alaska is estimated to be less than 1 female per generation (Baker 1992). Two breeding areas (Hawaii and coastal Mexico) showed fewer genetic differences than did the two feeding areas (Baker 1992). Individually identified whales have been found to move between winter breeding areas in Hawaii and Mexico (Baker et al. 1990). There have been no individual matches between 597 humpbacks photographed in California and 617 humpbacks photographed in Alaska (Calambokidis et al. 1996). Only two of the 81 whales photographed in British Columbia have matched with a California catalog (Calambokidis et al. 1996), indicating that the U.S./Canada border is an approximate geographic boundary between feeding populations. Waters off northern Washington may be an area of mixing between the California/Oregon/Washington stock and a southern British Columbia stock. Alternatively, humpback whales in northern Washington and southern British Columbia may be a distinct feeding population (Calambokidis et al. 2008) and a separate stock. For humpback whales, maternally directed fidelity to specific feeding areas within an ocean basin appears to be so strong that genetic differences have evolved in both the Atlantic, where there is a single breeding area, and in the Pacific, where there are multiple breeding areas. Because fidelity appears to be greater in feeding areas than in breeding areas, the stock structure of humpback whales is defined based on feeding areas.

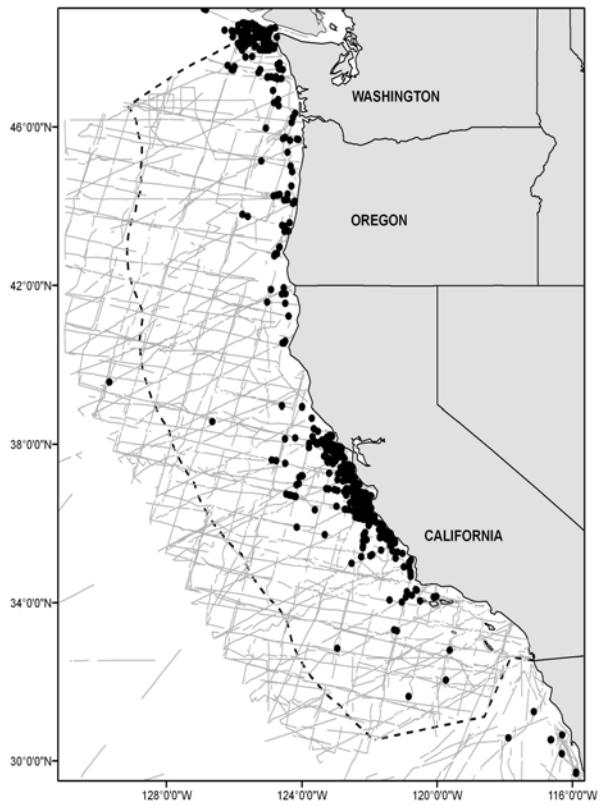


Figure 1. Humpback whale sightings based on shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008. Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ, thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined. See Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of survey effort.

For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, the California/Oregon/Washington Stock is defined to include humpback whales that feed off the west coast of the United States. The winter migratory destination of this stock is primarily in coastal waters of Mexico and Central America. ~~Two~~ Three other stocks are recognized in the U.S. MMPA Pacific stock assessment reports: the Central North Pacific Stock (with feeding areas from Southeast Alaska to the Alaska Peninsula), ~~and~~ the Western North Pacific Stock (with feeding areas from the

Aleutian Islands, the Bering Sea, and Russia), and the American Samoa Stock (with largely undocumented feeding areas as far south as the Antarctic Peninsula).

POPULATION SIZE

Based on whaling statistics, the pre-1905 population of humpback whales in the North Pacific was estimated to be 15,000 (Rice 1978), but this population was reduced by whaling to approximately 1,200 by 1966 (Johnson and Wolman 1984). A photo-identification study in 2004-2006 estimated the abundance of humpback whales in the entire Pacific Basin to be approximately 18,000-20,000 (Calambokidis et al. 2008). Estimates of regional abundance in the California/Oregon stratum from that study (1,702) are less precise than estimates from dedicated west-coast studies. Barlow and Forney (2007) estimated 1,096 (CV=0.22) humpbacks in California, Oregon, and Washington waters based on summer/fall ship line-transect surveys in 2001. Forney (2007) estimated 1,769 (CV=0.16) humpbacks in the same region based on a 2005 summer/fall ship line-transect survey, which included additional fine-scale coastal strata not included in the 2001 survey. Barlow (2010) recently estimated 1,090 (CV=0.41) humpback whales from a 2008 summer/fall ship line-transect survey of the same region. The combined ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 line-transect estimate of abundance is the geometric mean of the two annual estimates, or ~~1,392 (CV=0.13)~~ 1,389 (CV=0.21). Calambokidis et al. (~~2004~~ 2009) estimated humpback whale abundance in these feeding areas from 1991 to ~~2003~~ 2008 using Petersen mark-recapture estimates based on photo-identification collections in adjacent pairs of years (Figure 2). ~~These data show a general upward trend in abundance followed by a large (but not statistically significant) drop in the 1999/2000 and 2000/2001 estimates.~~ The ~~2002/2003~~ 2007/2008 mark-recapture population estimate for California and Oregon (~~1,391, CV=0.22~~ 2,043, CV=0.10) is higher than any previous mark-recapture estimates ~~and may indicate that the apparent decline in the previous two estimates exaggerates any real decline that might have occurred (Calambokidis et al. 2004).~~ (Calambokidis et al. 2009). ~~This latter view is substantiated by the greater fraction of new whales seen for the first time in 2003 (Calambokidis et al. 2004).~~ In general, mark-recapture estimates are negatively biased due to heterogeneity in sighting probabilities (Hammond 1986); however, this bias is likely to be minimal because the above mark-recapture estimate is based on data from nearly ~~half~~ a third of the entire population (the ~~2002/2003~~ 2007/2008 data contained ~~542~~ 672 known individuals). The estimate of 2,043 humpback whales in 2007/2008 is also a negatively biased estimate of this stock because it excludes some whales in Washington. The best estimate of abundance ~~is the unweighted geometric mean of the 2002/2003 mark-recapture and 2001-2005 line-transect estimates, or 1,391 (CV=0.13) whales~~ for this stock is the mark-recapture estimate of 2,043 (CV=0.10), which is also the most precise estimate.

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for humpback whales in the California/Mexico stock is taken as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of ~~the unweighted mean estimate or approximately 1,250.~~ the 2007/2008 mark-recapture estimate (Calambokidis 2009) or 1,878.

Current Population Trend

Ship surveys provide some indication that humpback whales increased in abundance in California coastal waters between 1979/80 and 1991 (Barlow 1994) and between 1991 and 2005 (Barlow and Forney 2007; Forney 2007), but this increase was not steady, and estimates showed a slight dip in 2001. Mark-recapture population estimates ~~increased steadily from 1988/90 to 1997-98 at about 8% per year (Calambokidis et al. 1999), showed a decrease around 1999-2001, and then increased again in 2002-2003 (Figure 2, Calambokidis et al. 2004). The observed decrease in abundance between 1999-2001 may have been related to prevailing oceanographic conditions off the U.S. west coast. The apparent dip in the 1999/2000 and 2000/2001 estimates may indicate that population growth is slowing, but the subsequent increases in 2001/2002 and 2002/2003 casts some doubt on this explanation.~~ have shown a long-term increase of approximately 7.5% per year (Calambokidis 2009, Figure 2), although there have been short-term declines during this period, probably due to oceanographic variability. Population estimates for the entire North Pacific have also increased substantially from 1,200 in 1966 to ~~6,000-8,000 circa 1992~~. approximately 18,000 to 20,000 whales in 2004 to 2006 (Calambokidis et al. 2008). Although these estimates are based on different methods and the earlier estimate is extremely uncertain, the growth rate implied by these estimates (6-7%) is consistent with the recently observed growth rate of the California/Oregon/Washington stock.

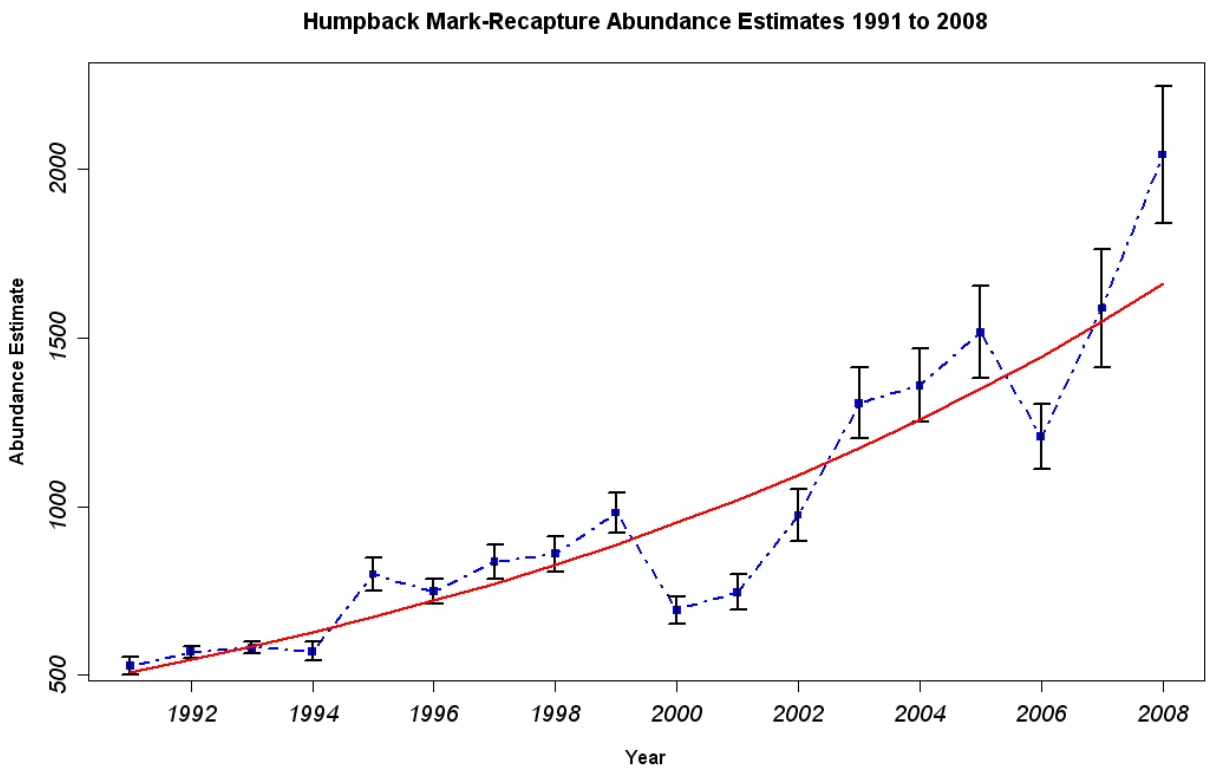


Figure 2. Mark-recapture estimates of humpback whale abundance in California and Oregon, 1991-2008 (Calambokidis 2009). Horizontal bars indicate ±1 standard error of each abundance estimate. Solid line shows a linear regression of the natural logarithim of abundance over time. The slope of this regression is statistically significant ($p < 0.001$) and approximates an annual population growth rate of between 7% and 8%.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

The proportion of calves in the California/Oregon/Washington stock from 1986 to 1994 appeared much lower than previously measured for humpback whales in other areas (Calambokidis and Steiger 1994), but in 1995-97 a greater proportion of calves were identified, and the 1997 reproductive rates for this population are closer to those reported for humpback whale populations in other regions (Calambokidis et al. 1998). Despite the apparently low proportion of calves, two independent lines of evidence indicate that this stock was growing in the 1980s and early 1990s (Barlow 1994; Calambokidis et al. 2003) with a best estimate of 8% growth per year (Calambokidis et al. 1999). The current net productivity rate is unknown.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~1,250~~ 1,878) times one half the estimated population growth rate for this stock of humpback whales (½ of 8%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.1 (for an endangered species with Nmin < 1,500)~~ 0.3 (for an endangered species, with $N_{min} > 1{,}500$ and $CV(N_{min}) < 0.50$), resulting in a PBR of ~~5~~ 22.5. Because this stock spends approximately half its time outside the U.S. EEZ, the PBR allocation for U.S. waters is ~~2.5~~ 11.3 whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Information on historic whaling has been moved to the Status of Stock section.

Fishery Information

A summary of known fishery mortality and injury for this stock of humpback whales for ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 is given in Table 1. A total of ~~19~~ 18 humpback whales were observed entangled in fishing gear during ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 in California, ~~and~~ Oregon, and Washington (Table 1). No entanglements were reported from the

observer program that monitors the large-mesh swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b); however, a free-swimming humpback was observed entangled in gillnet gear of unknown origin in 2006 (NMFS, Southwest Regional Stranding Program, unpublished data). Of the ~~19~~ 18 humpbacks entangled in fishing gear, ~~13~~ 11 were reported entangled at sea in trap/pot fishery gear off California and Oregon, including ~~one~~ two animals ~~that was~~ later found dead in Oregon (Northwest Regional Stranding Program, unpublished data). ~~Six~~ Seven humpbacks were reported entangled in unknown gillnet or other gear, including lines and buoys of unknown origin. Two of the ~~13~~ 11 pot/trap gear entanglements could be attributed to specific fisheries: One whale was entangled in sablefish trap gear and another in spot prawn trap gear (NMFS, Southwest Regional Stranding Program, unpublished data). The whale entangled in sablefish trap gear was successfully disentangled by divers who removed all the gear, and the animal swam away immediately following disentanglement. Another whale entangled in crab pot gear in 2008 was successfully disentangled from gear. ~~Two~~ One of the sightings involving crab pot gear ~~were~~ included a cow/calf pair~~s~~ where the cow was entangled. Due to the trailing gear, ~~17~~ 14 of the humpbacks are considered as serious injuries in Table 1 (~~the~~ two released animals ~~is~~ were not considered seriously injured). Including the ~~17~~ 14 serious injuries and ~~one~~ two deaths, ~~mortality,~~ total mean annual serious injury and mortality for the commercial fisheries listed in Table 1 is ~~3.6~~ 3.2 per year for the period ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008. In addition to the humpback entanglements, there were ~~five unidentified~~ 12 unidentified whales observed entangled in pot/trap gear ~~and two unidentified whales entangled in~~ or unknown gillnet gear during ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008. Some of these animals may represent re-sightings of entangled humpback whales described above. It is likely that ~~some of these whales~~ most of the unidentified pot/trap fishery entanglements involved humpback whales ~~were humpbacks~~.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from the same population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Ship Strikes

~~One humpback was reported injured as the result of a ship strike in 2005, and another in 2007, but the fate of both animals is unknown and details are lacking to determine if these were serious injuries.~~ Two humpback whale deaths were attributed to ship strikes during the period 2004-2008 (NMFS, unpublished stranding data). An additional animal that was struck in Washington waters in 2008 was reported to have broken the stabilizer on the vessel that struck it, but the condition of the whale is unknown. During ~~2003-2007,~~ 2004-2008, there were an additional ~~six~~ eight injuries of unidentified large whales attributed to ship strikes. Additional mortality from ship strikes probably goes unreported because the whales do not strand or, if they do, they do not have obvious signs of trauma. Several humpback whales have been photographed in California with large gashes in their dorsal surface that appear to be from ship strikes (J. Calambokidis, pers. comm.). The average number of documented humpback whale deaths by ship strikes for ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 is ~~zero~~ 0.4 per year, but it is apparent that animals struck by ships are unlikely to be reported.

Other human-caused mortality

There was no humpback whale mortality reported from non-commercial fishery sources for the period ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008. The average number of humpback deaths from unknown anthropogenic sources is zero per year from ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of humpback whales (California/Oregon/Washington stock) for commercial fisheries that might take this species (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). Injury includes any entanglement that does not result in immediate death and may include serious injury resulting in death. n/a indicates that data are not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Year(s)	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality (and injury)	Estimated mortality	Mean Annual Takes
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	Observer	~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0 (n/a)
CA halibut and white seabass and other species large mesh (>3.5") set gillnet fishery	~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer	~~0%~~ 0% 0% ~~0%~~ ~1% 17.8% 0%	~~n/a~~ n/a n/a n/a 0 (0) n/a	n/a	0 (n/a)
Pot or trap fisheries	~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	Strandings & sightings	n/a	~~0 (5)~~ 0 (0) 0 (3) 1 (1) 1 (1) 0 (2)	n/a	~~≥2.4~~ ≥1.8
unidentified fisheries	~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	Strandings & sightings		~~0 (0)~~ 0 (1) 0 (0) 0 (2) 0 (3) 0 (1)	n/a	~~≥ 1.2~~ ≥ 1.4
Total Annual Takes						~~≥3.6~~ ≥3.2

STATUS OF STOCK

Approximately 15,000 humpback whales were taken from the North Pacific from 1919 to 1987 (Tonnessen and Johnsen 1982; C. Allison, IWC unpubl. Data), and, of these, approximately 8,000 were taken from the west coast of Baja California, California, Oregon and Washington (Rice 1978), presumably from this stock. Shore-based whaling apparently depleted the humpback whale stock off California twice: once prior to 1925 (Clapham et al. 1997) and again between 1956 and 1965 (Rice 1974). There has been a prohibition on taking humpback whales since 1966. As a result of commercial whaling, humpback whales were listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Conservation Act of 1969. This protection was transferred to the Endangered Species Act (ESA) in 1973. The species is still listed as "endangered", and consequently the California/Mexico stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The estimated annual mortality and serious injury due to entanglement (~~3.6~~ 3.2/yr), other anthropogenic sources (zero), plus ship strikes (~~zero~~ 0.4) in California ~~exceeds~~ is less than the PBR allocation of ~~2.5~~ 11.3 for U.S. waters. Based on strandings and at sea observations, annual humpback whale mortality and serious injury in commercial fisheries is greater than 10% of the PBR; therefore, total fishery mortality and serious injury is not approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. The eastern North Pacific stock appears to be increasing in abundance.

Habitat Concerns

Increasing levels of anthropogenic sound in the world's oceans (Andrew et al. 2002), such as those produced by shipping traffic, ATOC (Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate) or LFA (Low Frequency Active) sonar, have been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales, particularly for baleen whales that may communicate using low-frequency sound. Based on vocalizations (Richardson et al. 1995; Au et al. 2006), reactions to sound sources (Lien et al. 1990, 1992; Maybaum 1993), and anatomical studies (Hauser et al. 2001), humpback whales also appear to be sensitive to mid-frequency sounds, including those used in active sonar military exercises (Navy 2007).

REFERENCES

Allison, C. International Whaling Commission. The Red House, 135 Station Road, Impington, Cambridge, UK CB4 9NP.

Andrew, R. K., B. M. Howe, J. A. Mercer, and M. A. Dzieciuch. 2002. Ocean ambient sound: comparing the 1960's with the 1990's for a receiver off the California coast. Acoustic Research Letters Online 3:65-70.

Au, W.W.L., A.A. Pack, M.O. Lammers, L.M. Herman, M.H. Deakos, K. Andrews. Acoustic properties of humpback whale songs. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 120 (2), August 2006.

Baker, C. S. 1992. Genetic variability and stock identity of humpback whales, world-wide. Final Contract Report to Int. Whal. Commn. 45pp.

Baker, C. S., L. Medrano-Gonzalez, J. Calambokidis, A. Perry, F. Pichler, H. Rosenbaum, J. M. Straley, J. Urban-Ramirez, M. Yamaguchi, and O. von Ziegesar. 1998. Population structure of nuclear and mitochondrial DNA variation among humpback whales in the North Pacific. Mol. Ecol. 7:695-708.

Baker, C. S., S. R. Palumbi, R. H. Lambertsen, M. T. Weinrich, J. Calambokidis, and S. J. O'Brien. 1990. Influence of seasonal migration on geographic distribution of mitochondrial DNA haplotypes in humpback whales. Nature 344(15):238-240.

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19pp.

Barlow, J. 1994. Abundance of large whales in California coastal waters: a comparison of ship surveys in 1979/80 and in 1991. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 44:399-406.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Berzin, A. A., and A. A. Rovnin. 1966. The distribution and migrations of whales in the northeastern part of the Pacific, Chukchi and Bering Seas. Izvestiya Tikhookeanskogo Nauchno-Issledovatel'skogo Institut Rybnogo Khozyaistva I Okeanografii 58:179-207. (Translated by Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Seattle, 1968, pp. 103-136 *In:* K. I. Panin (ed.), Soviet Research on Marine Mammals of the Far East).

Braham, H. W. 1991. Endangered whales: status update. A Report on the 5-year status of stocks review under the 1978 amendments to the U.S. Endangered Species Act. NMFS Unpublished Report.

Calambokidis, J., E. Falcone, A. Douglas, L. Schlender, and J. Huggins. 2009. Photographic identification of humpback and blue whales off the U.S. West Coast: results and updated abundance estimates from 2008 field season. Final Report for Contract AB133F08SE2786 from Southwest Fisheries Science Center. 18pp.

Calambokidis, J., E.A. Falcone, T.J. Quinn, A.M. Burdin, P.J. Clapham, J.K.B. Ford, C.M. Gabriele, R. LeDuc, D. Mattila, L. Rojas-Bracho, J.M. Straley, B.L. Taylor, J. Urban, D. Weller, B.H. Witteveen, M. Yamaguchi, A. Bendlin, D. Camacho, K. Flynn, A. Havron, J. Huggins, and N. Maloney. 2008. SPLASH: Structure of Populations, Levels of Abundance and Status of Humpback Whales in the North Pacific. Final report for Contract AB133F-03-RP-00078. 58 p. Available from Cascadia Research (www.cascadiaresearch.org) and NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center (http://swfsc.noaa.gov).

Calambokidis, J., T. Chandler, E. Falcone, and A. Douglas. 2004. Research on large whales off California, Oregon and Washington in 2003. Contract Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 48p.

Calambokidis, J., T. Chandler, K. Rasmussen, G. H. Steiger, L. Schlender. 1998. Humpback and blue whale photographic identification: Report on research in 1997. Contract Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 41pp.

Calambokidis, J., T. Chandler, K. Rasmussen, G. H. Steiger, and L. Schlender. 1999. Humpback and blue whale photo-identification research off California, Oregon and Washington in 1998. Final Contract Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 35 pp.

Calambokidis, J., T. Chandler, L. Schlender, G. H. Steiger, and A. Douglas. 2003. Research on humpback and blue whale off California, Oregon and Washington in 2002. Final Contract Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 49 pp.

Calambokidis, J., and G. H. Steiger. 1994. Population assessment of humpback and blue whales using photo-identification from 1993 surveys off California. Final Contract Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 31pp.

Calambokidis, J., G. H. Steiger, J. R. Evenson, K. R. Flynn, K. C. Balcomb, D. E. Claridge, P. Bloedel, J. M. Straley, C. S. Baker, O. von Ziegesar, M. E. Dahlheim, J. M. Waite, J. D. Darling, G. Ellis, and G. A. Green. 1996. Interchange and isolation of humpback whales in California and other North Pacific feeding grounds. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 12(2):215-226.

Calambokidis, J., G. H. Steiger, J. M. Straley, T. J. Quinn, II, L. M. Herman, S. Cerchio, D. R. Salden, M. Yamaguchi, F. Sato, J. Urbán R., J. Jacobsen, O. von Ziegesar, K. C. Balcomb, C. M. Gabriele, M. E. Dahlheim, N. Higashi, S. Uchida, J. K. B. Ford, Y. Miyamura, P. Ladrón de Guevara P., S. A. Mizroch, L. Schlender and K. Rasmussen. 1997. Abundance and population structure of humpback whales in the North Pacific Basin. Final Contract Report 50ABNF500113 to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 72p.

Calambokidis, J., G. H. Steiger, J. M. Straley, L. M. Herman, S. Cerchio, D. R. Salden, J. Urbán-R., J. K. Jacobsen, O. von Ziegesar, K. C. Balcomb, C. M. Gabriele, M. E. Dahlheim, S. Uchida, G. Ellis, Y. Miyamura, P. Ladrón de Guevara-P., M. Yamaguchi, F. Sata, S. A. Mizroch, L. Schlender, K. Rasmussen, J. Barlow, and T. J. Quinn II. 2001. Movements and population structure of humpback whales in the North Pacific. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 17(4):769-794.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA] 21p.

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005a. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.

Clapham, P. J., S. Leatherwood, I. Szczepaniak, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1997. Catches of humpback and other whales from shore stations at Moss Landing and Trinidad, California, 1919-1926. Marine Mammal Science 13(3):368-394.

Cordaro, J. Southwest Region, NMFS, 501 West Ocean Blvd, Long Beach, CA 90802_4213.

Darling, J. D. 1991. Humpback whales in Japanese waters. Ogasawara and Okinawa. Fluke identification catalog 1987-1990. Final Contract Report, World Wildlife Fund for Nature, Japan. 22 pp.

Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-83: Status, abundance, and distribution. Final Report to the Minerals Management Service, Contract No. 14-12-0001-29090. 284p.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27 p.

Green, G. A., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington, 1989-1990. Ch. 1 In: J. J. Brueggeman (ed.). Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. Minerals Management Service Contract Report 14-12-0001-30426.

Hammond, P. S. 1986. Estimating the size of naturally marked whale populations using capture-recapture techniques. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 8:253-282.

Hauser, D.S., D.A. Helweg, and P.W.B. Moore, 2001. A bandpass filter-bank model of auditory sensitivity in the humpback whale. Aquatic Mammals 27:82-91.

Heyning, J. E., and T. D. Lewis. 1990. Fisheries interactions involving baleen whales off southern California. Rep. int. Whal. Commn. 40:427-431.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Johnson, J. H., and A. A. Wolman. 1984. The humpback whale, Megaptera novaeangliae. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46(4):30-37.

Lien, J., S. Todd and J. Guigne. 1990. Inferences about perception in large cetaceans, especially humpback whales, from incidental catches in fixed fishing gear, enhancement of nets by "alarm" devices, and the acoustics of fishing gear. P. 347-362 *in* J.A. Thomas, R.A. Kastelein and A.Ya. Supin (eds.), Marine mammal sensory systems. Plenum, New York.

Lien, J., W. Barney, S. Todd, R. Seton and J. Guzzwell. 1992. Effects of adding sounds to cod traps on the probability of collisions by humpback whales. P. 701-708 *in* J.A. Thomas, R.A. Kastelein and A.Ya. Supin (eds.), Marine mammal sensory systems. Plenum, New York.

Maybaum, H.L. 1993. Responses of humpback whales to sonar sounds. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 94(3, Pt. 2): 1848-1849.

Nishiwaki, M. 1966. Distribution and migration of the larger cetaceans in the North Pacific as shown by Japanese whaling results. Pp. 172-191 *In:* K. S. Norris (ed.), Whales, Dolphins and Porpoises. University of California Press, Berkeley, CA. Academic Press, New York.

Norris, T. F., M. McDonald, and J. Barlow. 1999. Acoustic detections of singing humpback whales (Megaptera novaeangliae) in the eastern North Pacific during their northbound migration. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 106(1):506-514.

Perry, A., C. S. Baker, L. M. Herman. 1990. Population characteristics of individually identified humpback whales in the central and eastern North Pacific: a summary and critique. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. (Special Issue 12):307-317.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.

Rice, D. W. 1978. The humpback whale in the North Pacific: distribution, exploitation, and numbers. pp. 29-44 In: K. S. Norris and R. R. Reeves (eds.). Report on a Workshop on Problems Related to Humpback Whales (Megaptera novaeangliae) in Hawaii. Contr. Rept. to U. S. Marine Mammal Commn. NTIS PB-280-794. 90pp.

Richardson, W.J., C.R. Greene, C.I. Malme, and D.H. Thomson. 1995. Marine mammals and noise. Academic Press.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Steiger, G. H., J. Calambokidis, R. Sears, K. C. Balcomb, and J. C. Cubbage. 1991. Movement of humpback whales between California and Costa Rica. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 7:306-310.

Tonnessen, J. N., and A. O. Johnsen. 1982. The History of Modern Whaling. Univ. Calif. Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles. 798pp.7:306-310.

Urbán R., J., C. Alverez F., M. Salinas Z., J. Jacobson, K. C. Balcomb III, A. Jaramillo L., P. L. de Guevara P., and A. Aguayo L. 1999. Population size of humpback whale, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, in waters off the Pacific coast of Mexico.

U.S. Department of the Navy (Navy). 2007. Composite Training Unit Exercises and Joint Task Force Exercises Draft Final Environmental Assessment/Overseas Environmental Assessment. Prepared for the Commander, U.S. Pacific Fleet and Commander, Third Fleet. February 2007.

Revised ~~05/29/2009~~ 04/15/2010

BLUE WHALE (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*): Eastern North Pacific Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) has formally considered only one management stock for blue whales in the North Pacific (Donovan 1991), but this ocean is thought to include more than one population (Ohsumi and Wada 1972; Braham 1991), possibly as many as five (Reeves et al. 1998). Blue whales in the North Pacific produce two distinct, stereotypic calls that have been termed the northwestern and northeastern call types, and it has been proposed that these represent two distinct populations with some degree of geographic overlap (Stafford et al. 2001, Stafford 2003). The northeastern call predominates in the Gulf of Alaska, the U.S. West Coast, and the eastern tropical Pacific, and the northwestern call predominates from south of the Aleutian Islands to the Kamchatka Peninsula in Russia, though both call types have been recorded concurrently in the Gulf of Alaska (Stafford et al. 2001, Stafford 2003). Both call types are represented in lower latitudes in the central North Pacific but differ in their seasonal patterns (Stafford et al. 2001). Gilpatrick and Perryman (2008) showed that blue whales from California to Central America (the eastern North Pacific stock) are on average about two meters shorter than blue whales measured from historic whaling from the central and western north Pacific regions. Mate et al. (1999) used satellite tags to show that the eastern tropical Pacific is a migratory destination for blue whales that were tagged off southern California, and photographs of blue whales on the Costa Rica Dome in the eastern tropical Pacific have matched individuals that had been previously photographed off California (Calambokidis, pers. comm.). Photographs of blue whales in California have also been matched to individuals photographed off the Queen Charlotte Islands in northern British Columbia and to one individual photographed in the northern Gulf of Alaska (Calambokidis et al. 2009).

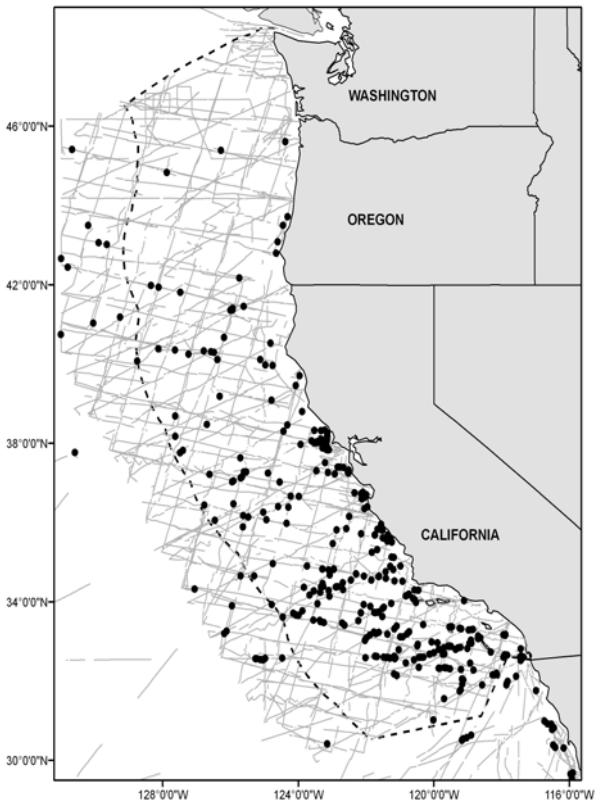


Figure 1. Blue whale sighting locations based on aerial and summer/autumn shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of surveys). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ; thin lines represent completed transect effort for all surveys combined.

For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, the Eastern North Pacific Stock of blue whales includes animals found in the eastern North Pacific from the northern Gulf of Alaska to the eastern tropical Pacific. This definition is consistent with both the distribution of the northeastern call type, photogrammetric length determinations and with the known range of photographically identified individuals. Based on locations where the northeastern call type has been recorded, some individuals in this stock may range as far west as Wake Island and as far south as the Equator (Stafford et al. 1999, 2001). The U.S. West Coast is certainly one of the most important feeding areas in summer and fall (Figure 1), but, increasingly, blue whales from this stock have been found feeding to the north and south of this area during summer and fall. Most of this stock is believed to migrate south to spend the winter and spring in high productivity areas off Baja California, in the Gulf of California,

and on the Costa Rica Dome. Given that these migratory destinations are areas of high productivity and given the observations of feeding in these areas, blue whales can be assumed to feed year round. Some individuals from this stock may be present year-round on the Costa Rica Dome (Reilly and Thayer 1990). However, it is also possible that some Southern Hemisphere blue whales might occur north of the equator during the austral winter. One other stock of North Pacific blue whales (the Central North Pacific stock in Hawaiian waters) is recognized in the Pacific Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) Stock Assessment Reports.

POPULATION SIZE

The size of the feeding stock of blue whales off the U.S. West Coast was estimated recently by both line-transect and mark-recapture methods. Barlow and Forney (2007) estimated 603 (CV=0.29) blue whales off California, Oregon, and Washington based on ship line-transect surveys in 2001 and Forney (2007), estimated 721 (CV=0.27) from a 2005 line-transect survey of the same area. More recently, Barlow (2010) estimated 442 (CV=0.25) blue whales from a 2008 line-transect survey in the same region. The unweighted geometric mean of the ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 line-transect estimates is ~~659 (CV=0.20)~~ 565 (CV=0.18) whales. Calambokidis et al. (2007) used photographic mark-recapture and estimated population sizes of 2,117 (CV=0.34) based on 2004-2006 photographs of left sides and 3,568 (CV=0.42) based on right sides. The average of the mark-recapture estimates is 2,842 (CV=0.41) whales. Mark-recapture estimates are often negatively biased by individual heterogeneity in sighting probabilities (Hammond 1986); however, Calambokidis et al. (2007) minimize such effects by selecting one sample that was taken randomly with respect to distance from the coast. Similarly, the line-transect estimates may also be negatively biased because some blue whales in this stock are outside of the study area at the time of survey (Calambokidis and Barlow 2004). Because some fraction of the population is always outside the survey area, the line-transect and mark recapture estimation methods provide different measures of abundance for this stock. Line transect estimates reflect the average density and abundance of blue whales in the study area during summer and autumn surveys, while mark recapture estimates provide an estimate of total population size. Therefore, the best estimate of blue whale abundance is the average of mark-recapture estimates, or 2,842 (CV= 0.41).

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for blue whales is taken as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of abundance estimated from the ~~combined~~ mark-recapture ~~and line-transect~~ estimate~~s~~, or approximately 2,039.

Current Population Trend

There is some indication that blue whales increased in abundance in California coastal waters between 1979/80 and 1991 (regression $p<0.05$, Barlow 1994) and between 1991 and 1996 (not significant, Barlow 1997). Although this may be due to an increase in the stock as a whole, it could also be the result of an increased use of California as a feeding area. The size of the apparent increase in abundance seen by Barlow (1994) is too large to be accounted for by population growth alone. Also, Larkman and Veit (1998) did not detect any increase along consistently surveyed tracklines in the Southern California Bight from 1987 to 1995. Although the population in the North Pacific is expected to have grown since being given IWC protected status in 1966, there is no evidence showing that the eastern North Pacific stock is currently growing. Estimates from line transect surveys declined between 1991-2005 (Figure 2), which is probably due to interannual variability in the fraction of the population that utilizes California waters during the summer and autumn.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information exists on the rate of growth of blue whale populations in the Pacific (Best 1993).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (2,039) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.1~~ 0.3 (for an endangered species which has a minimum abundance ~~less~~ greater than 1,500), resulting in a PBR of ~~4.0~~. 12. Because this stock spends approximately half its time outside the U.S. EEZ, the PBR allocation for U.S. waters is half this total, or ~~2.0~~ 6 whales per year.

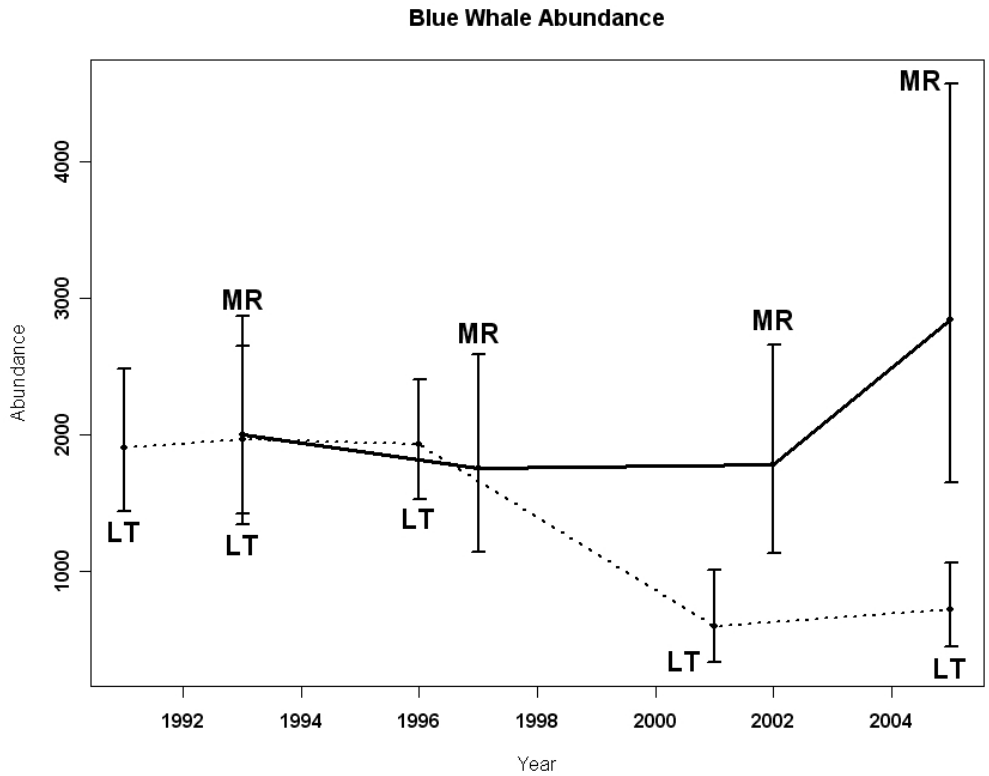


Figure 2. Estimates of abundance from vessel-based line transect (LT) and mark-recapture (MR) surveys conducted in California waters, 1991-2005 (Barlow and Forney 2007; Calambokidis et al. 2003; Calambokidis and Barlow 2004; Forney 2007; Calambokidis et al. 2007). The four line transect estimates are based on annual surveys conducted in 1991, 1993, 1996, 2001, and 2005, respectively. The three mark-recapture estimates are based on 1991-1993, 1995-1997, 2000-2002, and 2004-2006 pooled estimates, respectively. Approximate 95% lognormal confidence intervals of the individual LT and MR estimates are also shown.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fisheries Information

The offshore drift gillnet fishery is the only fishery that is likely to take blue whales from this stock, but no fishery mortality or serious injuries have been observed (Table 1). Detailed information on this fishery is provided in Appendix 1. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 1999). Mean annual takes for this fishery (Table 1) are based only on ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 data (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b,~~ Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b ~~Carretta and Enriquez, in prep~~.). This results in an average estimate of zero blue whales taken annually. Some gillnet mortality of large whales may go unobserved because whales swim away with a portion of the net; however, fishermen report that large rorquals (blue and fin whales) usually swim through nets without entangling and with very little damage to the nets.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from the same population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a

mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of blue whales (Eastern North Pacific stock) for commercial fisheries that might take this species (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). Mean annual takes are based on ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Year(s)	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed Mortality (and injury)	Estimated mortality (CV in parentheses)	Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer	~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0 (n/a)
Total Annual Takes						0 (n/a)

Ship Strikes

Ship strikes were implicated in the deaths of five blue whales, from ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008 (NMFS SWR Stranding Database). Four of these deaths ~~were attributed to ship strikes~~ occurred in 2007, the highest number recorded for any year. ~~In addition, there was one blue whale injured as the result of a ship strike in 2003 (blood observed in the water).~~ During ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008, there were an additional ~~six~~ eight injuries of unidentified large whales attributed to ship strikes. Additional mortality from ship strikes probably goes unreported because the whales do not strand or, if they do, they do not always have obvious signs of trauma. Several blue whales have been photographed in California with large gashes in their dorsal surface that appear to be from ship strikes (J. Calambokidis, pers. comm.). ~~Including the serious injury in 2003 and the 5 deaths between 2003-2007, blue~~ Blue whale mortality and injuries attributed to ship strikes in California waters averaged ~~1.2~~ 1.0 per year for ~~2003-2007~~ 2004-2008. The high number of ship strikes observed in 2007 resulted in NOAA implementing a mitigation plan ~~to reduce these deaths. The plan involved~~ that includes NOAA weather radio and U.S. Coast Guard advisory broadcasts to mariners entering the Santa Barbara Channel to be observant for whales, along with recommendations that mariners ~~and recommended that they~~ transit the channel at 10 knots or less. The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary also developed a blue whale/ship strike response plan, which involved weekly overflights to record whale locations. Additional plan information can be found at http://channelislands.noaa.gov/focus/alert.html.

STATUS OF STOCK

The reported take of North Pacific blue whales by commercial whalers totaled 9,500 between 1910 and 1965 (Ohsumi and Wada 1972). Approximately 3,000 of these were taken from the west coast of North America from Baja California, Mexico to British Columbia, Canada (Tonnessen and Johnsen 1982; Rice 1992; Clapham et al. 1997; Rice 1974). Blue whales in the North Pacific were given protected status by the IWC in 1966, but Doroshenko (2000) reported that a small number of blue whales were taken illegally by Soviet whalers after that date. As a result of commercial whaling, blue whales were listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Conservation Act of 1969. This protection was transferred to the Endangered Species Act (ESA) in 1973. They are still listed as “endangered”, and consequently the Eastern North Pacific stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The annual incidental mortality and injury rate (~~1.2~~ 1.0/year) from ship strikes is less than the calculated PBR (~~2.0~~ 6.0) for this stock, but this rate does not include unidentified large whales struck by vessels, some of which may have been blue whales. To date, no blue whale mortality has been associated with California gillnet fisheries; therefore, total fishery mortality is approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

Habitat Concerns

Increasing levels of anthropogenic sound in the world’s oceans (Andrew et al. 2002) have been suggested to be a habitat concern for blue whales (Reeves et al. 1998).

REFERENCES

Andrew, R. K., B. M. Howe, J. A. Mercer, and M. A. Dzieciuch. 2002. Ocean ambient sound: comparing the 1960's with the 1990's for a receiver off the California coast. Acoustic Research Letters Online 3:65-70.

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1994. Abundance of large whales in California coastal waters: a comparison of ship surveys in 1979/80 and in 1991. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 44:399-406.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon, and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Admin. Rept. LJ-97-11. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 25 pp.

Barlow, J. 2003. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off the U.S. West Coast: 1991-2001. Administrative Report LJ-03-03. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Dr., La Jolla, CA. 26 pp.

Barlow, J., R. W. Baird, J. E. Heyning, K. Wynne, A. M. Manville, II, L. F. Lowry, D. Hanan, J. Sease, and V. N. Burkanov. 1994. A review of cetacean and pinniped mortality in coastal fisheries along the west coast of the U.S. and Canada and the east coast of the Russian Federation. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn, Special Issue 15:405-425.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 1999. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Report SC/51/SM2 to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission, May 1999. 20pp.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Best, P. B. 1993. Increase rates in severely depleted stocks of baleen whales. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 50:169-186.

Braham, H. W. 1991. Endangered whales: status update. A Report on the 5-year status of stocks review under the 1978 amendments to the U.S. Endangered Species Act. NMFS Unpublished Report.

Calambokidis, J., T. Chandler, L. Schlender, G. H. Steiger, and A. Douglas. 2003. Research on humpback and blue whale off California, Oregon and Washington in 2002. Final Contract Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 49 pp.

Calambokidis, J. and J. Barlow. 2004. Abundance of blue and humpback whales in the eastern North Pacific estimated by capture-recapture and line-transect methods. Marine Mammal Science 21(1):63-85.

Calambokidis, J., A. Douglas, E. Falcone, and L. Schlender. 2007. Abundance of blue whales off the US West Coast using photo identification. Contract Report AB133F06SE3906 to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 13p.

Calambokidis, J., J. Barlow, J.K.B. Ford, T.E. Chandler, and A.B. Douglas. 2009. Insights into the population structure of blue whales in the Eastern North Pacific from recent sightings and photographic identification. Marine Mammal Science.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Clapham, P. J., S. Leatherwood, I. Szczepaniak, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1997. Catches of humpback and other whales from shore stations at Moss Landing and Trinidad, California, 1919-1926. Marine Mammal Science 13(3):368-394.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Doroshenko, N. V. 2000. Soviet whaling for blue, gray, bowhead and right whales in the North Pacific Ocean, 1961-1979. Pages 96-103 *in* Soviet Whaling Data (1949-1979). Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Moscow. [In Russian and English].

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Gilpatrick, J. W., Jr. and W. L. Perryman. 2008. Geographic variation in external morphology of North Pacific and Southern Hemisphere blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*). Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 10(1):9-21.

Hammond, P. S. 1986. Estimating the size of naturally marked whale populations using capture-recapture techniques. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 8:253-282.

Hanan, D. A. 1986. California Department of Fish and Game coastal marine mammal study, annual report for the period July 1, 1983 - June 30, 1984. Admin. Rep. LJ-86-16. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 55 pp.

Hanan, D. A., D. B. Holts, and A. L. Coan, Jr. 1993. The California drift gill net fishery for sharks and swordfish, 1981-82 through 1990-91. Calif. Dept. Fish and Game Fish. Bull. No. 175. 95 pp.

Heyning, J. E., and T. D. Lewis. 1990. Fisheries interactions involving baleen whales off southern California. Rep. int. Whal. Commn. 40:427-431.

Holts, D. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Larkman, V. E. and R. R. Veit. 1998. Seasonality and abundance of blue whales off southern California. CalCOFI Rep. 39:236-239.

Mate, B. R., B. A. Lagerquist, and J. Calambokidis. 1999. Movements of North Pacific blue whales during their feeding season off southern California and their southern fall migration. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 15(4):1246-1257.

Mizroch, S. A., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The blue whale, Balaenoptera musculus. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46:15-19.

Ohsumi, S. and S. Wada. 1972. Stock assessment of blue whales in the North Pacific. Working Paper for the 24th Meeting of the International Whaling Commission. 20 pp.

Rankin, S., J. Barlow, and K.M. Stafford. 2006. Blue whale (Balaenoptera musculus) sightings and recordings south of the Aleutian Islands. Marine Mammal Science 22(3):708-713.

Reilly, S. B. and V. G. Thayer. 1990. Blue whale (Balaenoptera musculus) distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 6(4):265-277.

Reeves, R. R., P. J. Clapham, R. L. Brownell, Jr., and G. K. Silber. 1998. Recovery plan for the blue whale (Balaenoptera musculus). Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, NOAA, Silver Spring, Maryland. 30 pp.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Stafford, K. M., S. L. Nieukirk, and C. G. Fox. 1999. An acoustic link between blue whales in the eastern tropical Pacific and the Northeast Pacific. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 15(4):1258-1268.

Stafford, K. M., S. L. Nieukirk, and C. G. Fox. 2001. Geographic and seasonal variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific. Journal Cetacean Research and Management. 3:65-76.

Stafford, K.M. 2003. Two types of blue whale calls recorded in the Gulf of Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 19(4):682-693.

Tonnessen, J. N., and A. O. Johnsen. 1982. The History of Modern Whaling. Univ. Calif. Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles. 798 pp.
Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.
Yablokov, A. V. 1994. Validity of whaling data. Nature 367:108.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

FIN WHALE (*Balaenoptera physalus physalus*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) recognized two stocks of fin whales in the North Pacific: the East China Sea and the rest of the North Pacific (Donovan 1991). Mizroch et al. (1984) cites evidence for additional fin whale subpopulations in the North Pacific. From whaling records, fin whales that were marked in winter 1962-70 off southern California were later taken in commercial whaling operations between central California and the Gulf of Alaska in summer (Mizroch et al. 1984). More recent observations show aggregations of fin whales year-round in southern/central California (Dohl et al. 1983; Barlow 1997; Forney et al. 1995), year-round in the Gulf of California (Tershy et al. 1993), in summer in Oregon (Green et al. 1992; McDonald 1994), and in summer/autumn in the Shelikof Strait/Gulf of Alaska (Brueggeman et al. 1990). Acoustic signals from fin whale are detected year-round off northern California, Oregon and Washington, with a concentration of vocal activity between September and February (Moore et al. 1998). Fin whales appear very scarce in the eastern tropical Pacific in summer (Wade and Gerrodette 1993) and winter (Lee 1993).

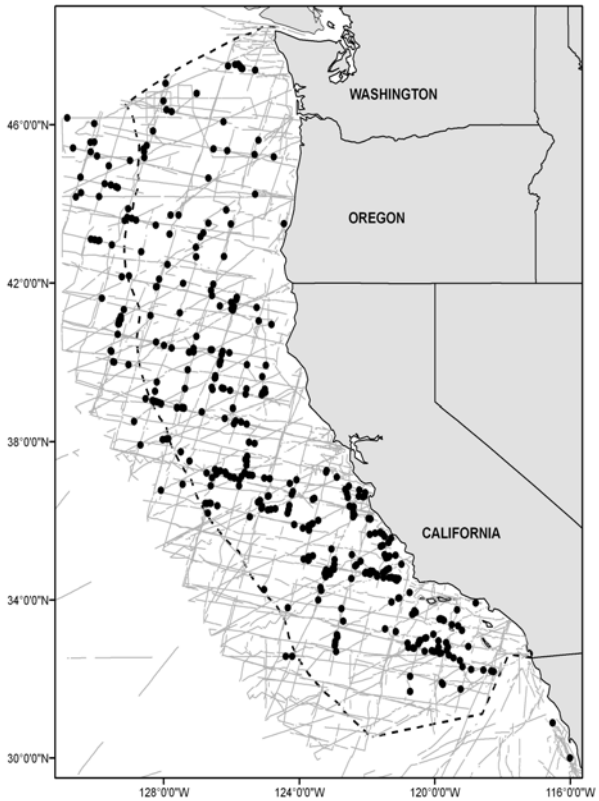


Figure 1. Fin whale sighting locations based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~ 2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of surveys). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ; thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

There is still insufficient information to accurately determine population structure, but from a conservation perspective it may be risky to assume panmixia in the entire North Pacific. In the North Atlantic, fin whales were locally depleted in some feeding areas by commercial whaling (Mizroch et al. 1984), in part because subpopulations were not recognized. This assessment will cover the stock of fin whales which is found along the coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington. Because fin whale abundance appears lower in winter/spring in California (Dohl et al. 1983; Forney et al. 1995) and in Oregon (Green et al. 1992), it is likely that the distribution of this stock extends seasonally outside these coastal waters. Genetic studies of the fin whales have shown that the population in the Gulf of California is isolated from fin whales in the rest of the eastern North Pacific and is an evolutionary unique population (Bérubé et al. 2002). The Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports recognize three stocks of fin whales in the North Pacific: 1) the California/Oregon/Washington stock (this report), 2) the Hawaii stock, and 3) the Alaska stock.

POPULATION SIZE

The initial pre-whaling population of fin whales in the North Pacific was estimated to be 42,000-45,000 (Ohsumi and Wada 1974). In 1973, the North Pacific population was estimated to have been reduced to 13,620-18,680 (Ohsumi and Wada 1974), of which 8,520-10,970 were estimated to belong to the eastern Pacific stock. A minimum of 148 individually-identified fin whales are found in the Gulf of California (Tershy et al. 1990). ~~Recently 2,118 (CV=0.18) fin whales were estimated to be off California, Oregon and Washington based on ship surveys in summer/autumn of 2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007). A 2005 ship survey of the same area resulted in an abundance estimate of 3,281 (CV=0.25) fin whales (Forney 2007).~~ The best estimate of fin whale abundance in California, Oregon, and Washington waters out to 300 nmi is the geometric mean of line transect estimates from summer/autumn ship surveys conducted in ~~2001 (Barlow and Forney 2007) and~~ 2005 (3,281, CV=0.25) ~~Forney 2007)~~ and 2008 (2,825, CV = 0.26) (Forney 2007, Barlow 2010), or ~~2,636 (CV = 0.15)~~ 3,044 (CV=0.18) whales. This is probably an underestimate because it almost certainly excludes some fin whales which could not be identified in the field and which were recorded as "unidentified rorqual" or "unidentified large whale".

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for fin whales is taken as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of abundance estimated from ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 summer/fall ship surveys (~~Barlow 2003;~~ Forney 2007; Barlow 2010) or approximately ~~2,316~~ 2,624.

Current Population Trend

There is some indication that fin whales have increased in abundance in California coastal waters between 1979/80 and 1991 (Barlow 1994) and between 1991 and 1996 (Barlow 1997), but these trends are not significant. Although the population in the North Pacific is expected to have grown since receiving protected status in 1976, the possible effects of continued unauthorized take (Yablokov 1994) and incidental ship strikes and gillnet mortality make this uncertain. There is no evidence of a population trend from recent line-transect abundance surveys conducted in 1996, 2001, ~~and~~ 2005, and 2008 in California, Oregon, and Washington waters out to 300 nmi. Estimates from these ~~three~~ four surveys have been 2,042 (CV= 0.13); 2,118 (CV= 0.18); ~~and~~ 3,281 (CV=0.25); and 2,825 (CV=0.26) whales, respectively (Barlow and Forney 2007; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010).

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

There are no estimates of the growth rate of fin whale populations in the North Pacific (Best 1993).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~2,316~~ 2,624) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.3 (for an endangered species, with N_{min} > 1,500 and CV_{Nmin} < 0.50), resulting in a PBR of ~~14~~ 16.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Information on historic whaling has been moved to the Status of Stock section.

Fisheries Information

The offshore drift gillnet fishery is the only fishery that is likely to take fin whales from this stock, and one fin whale death has been observed since 1990 when NMFS began observing the fishery . Detailed information on this fishery is provided in Appendix 1. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). Mean annual takes for this fishery (Table 1) are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). This results in an average estimate of zero fin whales taken annually. Some gillnet mortality of large whales may go unobserved because whales swim away with a portion of the net; however, fishermen report that large rorquals (blue and fin whales) usually swim through nets without entangling and with very little damage to the nets.

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of fin whales (CA/OR/WA stock) for commercial fisheries that might take this species ~~(Carretta and Chivers 2004, Carretta et al. 2005a, 2005b)~~.

Fishery Name	Year(s)	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed mortality (and injury in parentheses)	Estimated mortality (CV in parentheses)	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	~~2002~~	observer	~~22.1%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	0 (n/a)
	~~2003~~		~~20.2%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	
	2004		20.6%	0	0	
	2005		20.9%	0	0	
	2006		18.5%	0	0	
	2007		16.4%	0	0	
	2008		13.5%	0	0	
Total annual takes						0 (n/a)

Ship Strikes

Ship strikes were implicated in the deaths of ~~seven~~ four fin whales and the injury of another from ~~2002 to 2006~~ 2004 to 2008, NMFS, unpublished stranding data). During ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008, there were an additional ~~twelve~~ eight injuries ~~and one mortality~~ of unidentified large whales attributed to ship strikes. Additional mortality from ship strikes probably goes unreported because the whales do not strand or, if they do, they do not always have obvious signs of trauma. The average observed annual mortality and injury due to ship strikes is ~~1.6~~ 1.0 fin whales per year for the period ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008.

STATUS OF STOCK

Fin whales in the entire North Pacific were estimated to be at less than 38% (16,625 out of 43,500) of historic carrying capacity (Mizroch et al. 1984). The initial abundance has never been estimated separately for the "west coast" stock, but this stock was also probably depleted by whaling. Approximately 46,000 fin whales were taken from the North Pacific by commercial whalers between 1947 and 1987 (C. Allison, IWC, pers. comm.). Approximately 5,000 fin whales were taken from the west coast of North America from 1919 to 1965 (Rice 1974; Tonnessen and Johnsen 1982; Clapham et al. 1997). Fin whales in the North Pacific were given protected status by the IWC in 1976. Fin whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the California to Washington stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. The total incidental mortality due to fisheries (zero) and ship strikes (~~1.6/yr~~ 1.0/yr) is less than the calculated PBR (~~14~~ 16). Total fishery mortality is less than 10% of PBR and, therefore, may be approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. There is some indication that the population may be growing. Increasing levels of anthropogenic sound in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales, particularly for baleen whales that may communicate using low-frequency sound (Croll *et al.* 2002).

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1994. Abundance of large whales in California coastal waters: a comparison of ship surveys in 1979/80 and in 1991. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 44:399-406.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon, and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Admin. Rept. LJ-97-11 available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 25 pp.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Bérubé, M., J. Urban-R., A. E. Dizon, R. L. Brownell, and P. J. Palsbøll. 2002. Genetic identification of a small and highly isolated population of fin whales (*Balaenoptera physalus*) in the Sea of Cortez, México. Conservation Genetics 3:183-190.

Best, P. B. 1993. Increase rates in severely depleted stocks of baleen whales. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 50:169-186.

Brueggeman, J. J., G. A. Green, K. C. Balcomb, C. E. Bowlby, R. A. Grotefendt, K. T. Briggs, M. L. Bonnell, R. G. Ford, D. H. Varoujean, D. Heinemann, and D. G. Chapman. 1990. Oregon-Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Survey: Information synthesis and hypothesis formulation. U.S. Department of the Interior, OCS Study MMS 89-0030.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Clapham, P. J., S. Leatherwood, I. Szczepaniak, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1997. Catches of humpback and other whales from shore stations at Moss Landing and Trinidad, California, 1919-1926. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 13(3):368-394.

Croll, D.A., C.W. Clark, A. Acevedo, B. Tershy, S. Flores, J. Gedamke, and J. Urban. 2002. Only male fin whales sing loud songs. Nature 417:809

Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-83: Status, abundance, and distribution. Final Report to the Minerals Management Service, Contract No. 14-12-0001-29090. 284p.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, M. M. Muto, M. Lowry, J. Baker, G. Cameron, J. Mobley, C. Stinchcomb, and J. V. Carretta. 2000. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2000. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-300. 276p.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Green, G. A., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington, 1989-1990. Ch. 1 In: J. J. Brueggeman (ed.). Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. Minerals Management Service Contract Report 14-12-0001-30426.

Heyning, J. E., and T. D. Lewis. 1990. Fisheries interactions involving baleen whales off southern California. Rep. int. Whal. Commn. 40:427-431.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates for marine mammal, turtle, and seabird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-95. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Lee, T. 1993. Summary of cetacean survey data collected between the years of 1974 and 1985. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-181. 184 pp.

McDonald, M. A., J. A. Hildebrand, and S. C. Webb. 1994. Blue and fin whales observed on a seafloor array in the Northeast Pacific. (unpubl. ms.).

Mizroch, S. A., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The fin whale, Balaenoptera physalus. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46:20-24.

Moore, S. E., K. M. Stafford, M. E. Dahlheim, C. G. Fox, H. W. Braham, J. J. Polovina, and D. E. Bain. 1998. Seasonal variation in reception of fin whale calls at five geographic areas in the North Pacific. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 14(3):617-627.

Ohsumi, S. and S. Wada. 1974. Status of whale stocks in the North Pacific, 1972. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 25:114-126.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Tershy, B. R., D. Breese, and C. S. Strong. 1990. Abundance, seasonal distribution and population composition of balaenopterid whales in the Canal de Ballenas, Gulf of California, Mexico. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 12:369-375.

Tershy, B. R., J. Urbán-R., D. Breese, L. Rojas-B., and L. T. Findley. 1993. Are fin whales resident to the Gulf of California? Rev. Invest. Cient., Univ. Auton. de Baja California Sur. 1:69-71.

Tonnessen, J. N., and A. O. Johnsen. 1982. The History of Modern Whaling. Univ. Calif. Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles. 798pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Yablokov, A. V. 1994. Validity of whaling data. Nature 367:108.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

SEI WHALE (*Balaenoptera borealis borealis*): Eastern North Pacific Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) only considers one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan 1991), but some evidence exists for multiple populations (Masaki 1977; Mizroch et al. 1984; Horwood 1987). Sei whales are distributed far out to sea in temperate regions of the world and do not appear to be associated with coastal features. Whaling effort for this species was distributed continuously across the North Pacific between 45-55°N (Masaki 1977). Two sei whales that were tagged off California were later killed off Washington and British Columbia (Rice 1974) and the movement of tagged animals has been noted in many other regions of the North Pacific. Sei whales are now rare in California waters (Dohl et al. 1983; Barlow 1997; Forney et al. 1995; Mangels and Gerrodette 1994), but were the fourth most common whale taken by California coastal whalers in the 1950s-1960s (Rice 1974). They are extremely rare south of California (Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Lee 1993). Lacking additional information on sei whale population structure, sei whales in the eastern North Pacific (east of longitude 180°) will be considered as a separate stock.

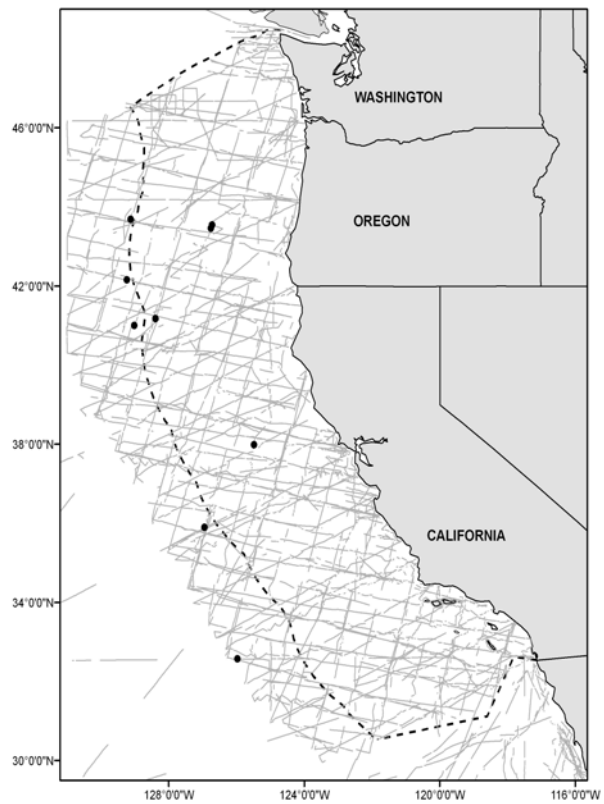


Figure 1. Sei whale sighting locations based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of surveys). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ; thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

Ohsumi and Wada (1974) estimate the pre-whaling abundance of sei whales to be 58,000-62,000 in the North Pacific. Later, Tillman (1977) used a variety of different methods to estimate the abundance of sei whales in the North Pacific and revised this pre-whaling estimate to 42,000. His estimates for the year 1974 ranged from 7,260 to 12,620. All methods depend on using the history of catches and trends in CPUE or sighting rates; there have been no direct estimates of sei whale abundance in the entire (or eastern) North Pacific based on sighting surveys. Only ~~five~~ nine confirmed sightings of sei whales were made in California, Oregon, and Washington waters during extensive ship and aerial surveys between 1991-~~2005~~ 2008 (Hill and Barlow 1992; Carretta and Forney 1993; Mangels and Gerrodette 1994; VonSaunder and Barlow 1999; Barlow 2003; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010). Green et al. (1992) did not report any sightings of sei whales in aerial surveys of Oregon and Washington. Abundance estimates for the two most recent line transect surveys of California, Oregon, and Washington waters out to 300 nmi are ~~29 (CV=1.00) and~~ 74 (CV=0.88) and 215 (CV=0.71) sei whales, respectively (~~Barlow and Forney 2007,~~ Forney 2007, Barlow 2010). The best estimate of abundance for California, Oregon, and Washington waters out to 300 nmi is the unweighted geometric mean of the ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 estimates, or ~~46 (CV = 0.61)~~ 126 (CV=0.53) sei whales (Barlow and Forney 2007 ; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010).

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for sei whales is taken as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of abundance estimated from ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 shipboard line-transect surveys, or approximately ~~28~~ 83.

Current Population Trend

There are no data on trends in sei whale abundance in the eastern North Pacific waters. Although the population in the North Pacific is expected to have grown since being given protected status in 1976, the possible effects of continued unauthorized take (Yablokov 1994) and incidental ship strikes and gillnet mortality make this uncertain.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

There are no estimates of the growth rate of sei whale populations in the North Pacific (Best 1993).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~28~~ 83) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.1 (for an endangered species), resulting in a PBR of ~~0.05~~ 0.17.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

[Information on historic whaling has been moved to the Status of Stock section]

Fishery Information

The offshore drift gillnet fishery is the only fishery that is likely to take sei whales from this stock, but no fishery mortality or serious injuries have been observed (Table 1). Detailed information on this fishery is provided in Appendix 1. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). Mean annual takes for this fishery (Table 1) are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b.). This results in an average estimate of zero sei whales taken annually. However, some gillnet mortality of large whales may go unobserved because whales swim away with a portion of the net.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of sei whales (eastern North Pacific stock) for commercial fisheries that might take this species. n/a indicates that data are not available. Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Year(s)	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed mortality (and injury in parentheses)	Estimated mortality (CV in parentheses)	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	~~2002~~	observer	~~22.1%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	0 (n/a)
	~~2003~~		~~20.2%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	
	2004		20.6%	0	0	
	2005		20.9%	0	0	
	2006		18.5%	0	0	
	2007		16.4%	0	0	
	2008		13.5%	0	0	
Total annual takes						0 (n/a)

Ship Strikes

One ship strike mortality was reported in Washington in 2003 (NMFS Northwest Regional Office, unpublished data). During ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008, there were an additional ~~twelve~~ eight injuries ~~and one mortality~~ of unidentified large whales attributed to ship strikes. Additional mortality from ship strikes probably goes unreported because the whales do not strand or, if they do, they do not always have obvious signs of trauma. The average observed annual mortality due to ship strikes is ~~0.2~~ zero sei whales per year for the period ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008.

STATUS OF STOCK

Previously, sei whales were estimated to have been reduced to 20% (8,600 out of 42,000) of their pre-whaling abundance in the North Pacific (Tillman 1977). The initial abundance has never been reported separately for the eastern North Pacific stock, but this stock was also probably depleted by whaling. The reported take of North Pacific sei whales by commercial whalers totaled 61,500 between 1947 and 1987 (C. Allison, IWC, pers. comm.). Of these, at least 410 were taken by-shore-based whaling stations in central California between 1919 and 1965 (Rice 1974; Clapham et al. 1997). There has been an IWC prohibition on taking sei whales since 1976, and commercial whaling in the U.S. has been prohibited since 1972. Sei whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the eastern North Pacific stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA). Total estimated fishery mortality is zero and therefore is approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. ~~The total incidental mortality due to ship strikes (0.2/yr) is greater than the calculated PBR (0.05).~~ Although the current rate of ship strike deaths and serious injuries is zero, it is likely that some sei whale ship strikes are unreported. Increasing levels of anthropogenic sound in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales, particularly for baleen whales that may communicate using low-frequency sound (Croll *et al.* 2002).

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon, and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Admin. Rept. LJ-97-11. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 25 pp.

Barlow, J., R. W. Baird, J. E. Heyning, K. Wynne, A. M. Manville, II, L. F. Lowry, D. Hanan, J. Sease, and V. N. Burkanov. 1994. A review of cetacean and pinniped mortality in coastal fisheries along the west coast of the U.S. and Canada and the east coast of the Russian Federation. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn, Special Issue 15:405-425.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. 2003. Preliminary estimates of the abundance of cetaceans along the U.S. west coast: 1991_2001. Southwest Fisheries Science Center Administrative Report LJ_03_03. Available from SWFSC, 8604 La Jolla Shores Dr., La Jolla CA 92037. 31p.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Best, P. B. 1993. Increase rates in severely depleted stocks of baleen whales. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 50:169-186.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

Carretta, J. V. and K. A. Forney. 1993. Report on two aerial surveys for marine mammals in California coastal waters utilizing a NOAA DeHavilland Twin Otter Aircraft: March 9-April7, 1991 and February 8-April 6, 1992. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-185. 77 pp.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005~~a~~. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.~~

Clapham, P. J., S. Leatherwood, I. Szczepaniak, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1997. Catches of humpback and other whales from shore stations at Moss Landing and Trinidad, California, 1919-1926. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 13(3):368-394.

Croll, D.A., C.W. Clark, A. Acevedo, B. Tershy, S. Flores, J. Gedamke, and J. Urban. 2002. Only male fin whales sing loud songs. Nature 417:809

Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-83: Status, abundance, and distribution. Final Report to the Minerals Management Service, Contract No. 14-12-0001-29090. 284 pp.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Green, G. A., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington, 1989-1990. Ch. 1 In: J. J. Brueggeman (ed.). Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. Minerals Management Service Contract Report 14-12-0001-30426.

Hanan, D. A. 1986. California Department of Fish and Game coastal marine mammal study, annual report for the period July 1, 1983 - June 30, 1984. Admin. Rept. LJ-86-16. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 55pp.

Hanan, D. A., D. B. Holts, and A. L. Coan, Jr. 1993. The California drift gill net fishery for sharks and swordfish, 1981-82 through 1990-91. Calif. Dept. Fish and Game Fish. Bull. No. 175. 95pp.

Heyning, J. E., and T. D. Lewis. 1990. Fisheries interactions involving baleen whales off southern California. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 40:427-431.

Hill, P. S. and J. Barlow. 1992. Report of a marine mammal survey of the California coast aboard the research vessel McARTHUR July 28-November 5, 1991. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-169. 103 pp.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Horwood, J. 1987. The Sei Whale: Population Biology, Ecology and Management. Croom Helm, London, U.K. 375pp.

Lee, T. 1993. Summary of cetacean survey data collected between the years of 1974 and 1985. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-181. 184 pp.

Mangels, K. F. and T. Gerrodette. Report of cetacean sightings during a marine mammal survey in the eastern Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of California aboard the NOAA ships *McArthur* and *David Starr Jordan* July 28 - November 6, 1993. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-221. 88 pp.

Masaki, Y. 1977. The separation of the stock units of sei whales in the North Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 1:71-77.

Mizroch, S. A., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The sei whale, Balaenoptera borealis. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46:25-29.

Ohsumi, S. and S. Wada. 1974. Status of whale stocks in the North Pacific, 1972. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 25:114-126.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.

Tillman, M. F. 1977. Estimates of population size for the North Pacific sei whale. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 1:98-106.

Von Saunder, A. and J. Barlow. 1999. A report of the Oregon, California and Washington Line-transect Experiment (ORCAWALE) conducted in west coast waters during summer/fall 1996. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-264. 40 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Yablokov, A. V. 1994. Validity of whaling data. Nature 367:108.

Revised ~~12/15/2008~~ 04/15/2010

MINKE WHALE (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata scammoni*): California/Oregon/Washington Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) recognizes 3 stocks of minke whales in the North Pacific: one in the Sea of Japan/East China Sea, one in the rest of the western Pacific west of 180°N, and one in the "remainder" of the Pacific (Donovan 1991). The "remainder" stock only reflects the lack of exploitation in the eastern Pacific and does not imply that only one population exists in that area (Donovan 1991). In the "remainder" area, minke whales are relatively common in the Bering and Chukchi seas and in the Gulf of Alaska, but are not considered abundant in any other part of the eastern Pacific (Leatherwood et al. 1982; Brueggeman et al. 1990). In the Pacific, minke whales are usually seen over continental shelves (Brueggeman et al. 1990). In the extreme north, minke whales are believed to be migratory, but in inland waters of Washington and in central California they appear to establish home ranges (Dorsey et al. 1990). Minke whales occur year-round in California (Dohl et al. 1983; Forney et al. 1995; Barlow 1997) and in the Gulf of California (Tershy et al. 1990). Minke whales are present at least in summer/fall along the Baja California peninsula (Wade and Gerrodette 1993). Because the "resident" minke whales from California to Washington appear behaviorally distinct from migratory whales further north, minke whales in coastal waters of California, Oregon, and Washington (including Puget Sound) are considered as a separate stock. Minke whales in Alaskan waters are considered in a separate stock assessment report.

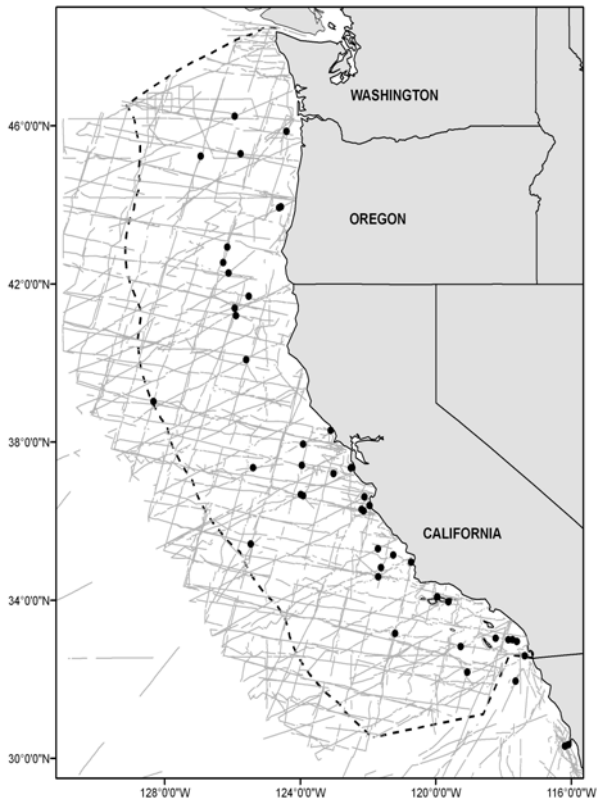


Figure 1. Minke whale sighting locations based on ~~aerial and~~ shipboard surveys off California, Oregon, and Washington, 1991-~~2005~~2008 (see Appendix 2 for data sources and information on timing and location of surveys). Dashed line represents the U.S. EEZ; thin lines indicate completed transect effort of all surveys combined.

POPULATION SIZE

No estimates have been made for the number of minke whales in the entire North Pacific. Forney (2007) estimated 957 (CV=1.36) during a 2005 ship survey off California, Oregon, and Washington, while the most recent survey in 2008 did not record any minke whales while on survey effort (Barlow 2010). The number of minke whales off California Oregon, and Washington is estimated to be the ~~geometric~~ arithmetic mean of two recent ship line transect surveys conducted in summer and autumn ~~of 2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 (Barlow and Forney 2007 ; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010); or ~~806 (CV = 0.63)~~ 478 (CV=1.36) whales. Two minke whales were seen during 1996 aerial surveys in Washington and British Columbia inland waters (Calambokidis et al. 1997), but no abundance estimates are available for this area.

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for minke whales is taken as the lower 20th percentile of the log-normal distribution of abundance estimated from ~~2001 and~~ 2005 and 2008 summer/fall ship surveys in California, Oregon, and Washington waters (Barlow and Forney 2007; Forney 2007; Barlow 2010) or approximately ~~495~~ 202.

Current Population Trend

There are no data on trends in minke whale abundance in waters of California, Oregon and/or Washington.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

There are no estimates of the growth rate of minke whale populations in the North Pacific (Best 1993).

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~495~~ 202) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.5 (for a stock of unknown status), resulting in a PBR of ~~5~~ 2.0 whales.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Information on historic whaling has been moved to the Status of Stock section.

Table 1. Summary of available information on the incidental mortality and injury of minke whales (CA/OR/WA stock) for commercial fisheries that might take this species (~~Pierce et al. 1996; Cameron and Forney 1999, 2000 Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~, Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). Mean annual takes are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data unless noted otherwise.

Fishery Name	Year(s)	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed mortality (and injury in parentheses)	Estimated mortality (CV in parentheses)	Mean annual takes (CV in parentheses)
CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer	~~22.1%~~ ~~20.2%~~ 20.6% 20.9% 18.5% 16.4% 13.5%	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	~~0~~ ~~0~~ 0 0 0 0 0	0 (n/a)
~~**WA Puget Sound Region salmon drift gillnet fishery (areas 7 and 7A)**~~	~~2000-2004~~	~~Self reports~~	~~0%~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~n/a~~
CA ~~angel shark/~~halibut and other species large mesh (>3.5") set gillnet fishery	~~2002~~ ~~2003~~ 2004 2005 ~~2006~~ 2006 2007 2008		~~0%~~ ~~0%~~ 0% 0% ~~<1%~~ ~1% 17.8% 0%	0	0	n/a
Total annual takes						0

Fishery Information

Minke whales may occasionally be caught in coastal set gillnets off California, in salmon drift gillnet in Puget Sound, Washington, and in offshore drift gillnets off California and Oregon. A summary of known fishery mortality and injury for this stock of minke whales is given in Table 1 for the period ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008. Detailed information on ~~this fishery~~ these fisheries is provided in Appendix 1. After the 1997 implementation of a Take Reduction Plan, which included skipper education workshops and required the use of pingers and minimum 6-fathom extenders, overall cetacean entanglement rates in the California drift gillnet fishery dropped considerably (Barlow and Cameron 2003). Mean annual takes for this fishery (Table 1) are based on ~~2002-2006~~ 2004-2008 data (~~Carretta and Chivers 2004,~~ Carretta et al. 2005~~a, 2005b~~,

Carretta and Enriquez 2006, 2007, 2009a, 2009b). This results in an average estimate of zero minke whales taken annually. In 1999, a whale skin sample was retrieved from a large hole that had been punched through a drift gillnet (trip DN-SD-0941). The sample was later identified as a minke whale using genetic sequencing methods. ~~Total fishery mortality for minke whales was not estimated for the 1980-86 California Department of Fish and Game observer program for the drift gillnet fishery, but based on the 2 observed deaths in 1% of the total sets, the total mortality during this time may have been on the order of 200 minke whales or 40 per year.~~

Drift gillnet fisheries for swordfish and sharks exist along the entire Pacific coast of Baja California, Mexico and may take animals from this population. Quantitative data are available only for the Mexican swordfish drift gillnet fishery, which uses vessels, gear, and operational procedures similar to those in the U.S. drift gillnet fishery, although nets may be up to 4.5 km long (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The fleet increased from two vessels in 1986 to 31 vessels in 1993 (Holts and Sosa-Nishizaki 1998). The total number of sets in this fishery in 1992 can be estimated from data provided by these authors to be approximately 2700, with an observed rate of marine mammal bycatch of 0.13 animals per set (10 marine mammals in 77 observed sets; Sosa-Nishizaki et al. 1993). This overall mortality rate is similar to that observed in California driftnet fisheries during 1990-95 (0.14 marine mammals per set; Julian and Beeson, 1998), but species-specific information is not available for the Mexican fisheries. Previous efforts to convert the Mexican swordfish driftnet fishery to a longline fishery have resulted in a mixed-fishery, with 20 vessels alternately using longlines or driftnets, 23 using driftnets only, 22 using longlines only, and seven with unknown gear type (Berdegué 2002).

Ship Strikes

Ship strikes were implicated in the death of one minke whale in 1977 (J. Heyning and J. Cordaro, pers. comm.). The reported minke whale mortality due to ship strikes is zero for the period ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008. Additional mortality from ship strikes probably goes unreported because the whales do not strand or, if they do, they do not always have obvious signs of trauma.

STATUS OF STOCK

The estimated take of western North Pacific minke whales by commercial whalers was approximately 31,000 from 1930 to 1987 (C. Allison, IWC, pers. comm.). Minke whales were not harvested commercially in the eastern North Pacific (Rice 1974; Clapham et al. 1997). Reported aboriginal takes of minke whales in Alaska totaled 7 between 1930 and 1987 (C. Allison, IWC, pers. comm.). Minke whales are not listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act and are not considered "depleted" under the MMPA. The greatest uncertainty in their status is whether entanglement in commercial gillnets and ship strikes could have reduced this relatively small population. Because of this, the status of the west-coast stock is considered "unknown". The annual mortality due to fisheries (0.0/yr) and ship strikes (0.0/yr) is less than the calculated PBR for this stock (~~5.4~~ 2.0), so they are not considered a "strategic" stock under the MMPA. Fishery mortality is less than 10% of the PBR; therefore, total fishery mortality is approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. There is no information on trends in the abundance of this stock. Increasing levels of anthropogenic sound in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales, particularly for baleen whales that may communicate using low-frequency sound.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2010. Cetacean abundance in the California Current from a 2008 ship-based line-transect survey. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-456. 19 p.

Barlow, J. 1997. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off California, Oregon, and Washington based on a 1996 ship survey and comparisons of passing and closing modes. Admin. Rep. LJ-97-11. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 25 pp.

Barlow, J., K. A. Forney, P. S. Hill, R. L. Brownell, Jr., J. V. Carretta, D. P. DeMaster, F. Julian, M. S. Lowry, T. Ragen, and R. R. Reeves. 1997. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 1996. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS_SWFSC-248. 223 pp.

Barlow, J., R. W. Baird, J. E. Heyning, K. Wynne, A. M. Manville, II, L. F. Lowry, D. Hanan, J. Sease, and V. N. Burkanov. 1994. A review of cetacean and pinniped mortality in coastal fisheries along the

west coast of the U.S. and Canada and the east coast of the Russian Federation. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn, Special Issue 15:405-425.

Barlow, J. and G. A. Cameron. 2003. Field experiments show that acoustic pingers reduce marine mammal bycatch in the California drift gillnet fishery. Marine Mammal Science 19(2):265-283.

Barlow, J. and K.A. Forney. 2007. Abundance and population density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105:509-526.

Berdegué, J. 2002. Depredación de las especies pelágicas reservadas a la pesca deportiva y especies en peligro de extinción con uso indiscriminado de artes de pesca no selectivas (palangres, FAD's, trampas para peces y redes de agallar fijas y a la deriva) por la flota palangrera Mexicana. Fundación para la conservación de los picudos. A.C. Mazatlán, Sinaloa, 21 de septiembre.

Best, P. B. 1993. Increase rates in severely depleted stocks of baleen whales. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 50:169-186.

Brueggeman, J. J., G. A. Green, K. C. Balcomb, C. E. Bowlby, R. A. Grotefendt, K. T. Briggs, M. L. Bonnell, R. G. Ford, D. H. Varoujean, D. Heinemann, and D. G. Chapman. 1990. Oregon-Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Survey: Information synthesis and hypothesis formulation. U.S. Department of the Interior, OCS Study MMS 89-0030.

Calambokidis, J., S. Osmek, and J. L. Laake. 1997. Aerial surveys for marine mammals in Washington and British Columbia inside waters. Final Contract Report to National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Seattle, WA.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009a. Marine mammal and seabird bycatch observed in California commercial fisheries in 2007. Administrative Report LJ-09-01, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 12 p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2009b. Marine mammal bycatch observed in the California/Oregon swordfish and thresher shark drift gillnet fishery in 2008. Administrative Report LJ-09-03, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Rd., La Jolla, CA 92037. 10 p .

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2007. Marine mammal and sea turtle bycatch in the California/Oregon thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery in 2006. Administrative Report LJ-07-06, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 9p.

Carretta, J.V. and L. Enriquez. 2006. Marine mammal bycatch and estimated mortality in California commercial fisheries during 2005. Administrative Report LJ-06-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 14p.

~~Carretta, J.V. and S.J. Chivers. 2004. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal mortality and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2003. Paper SC/56/SM1 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, June 2004 (unpublished). [Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA].~~

Carretta, J.V., S.J. Chivers, and K. Danil. 2005a. Preliminary estimates of marine mammal bycatch, mortality, and biological sampling of cetaceans in California gillnet fisheries for 2004. Administrative Report LJ-05-10, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037. 17 p.

~~Carretta, J.V., T. Price, D. Petersen, and R. Read. 2005b. Estimates of marine mammal, sea turtle, and seabird mortality in the California drift gillnet fishery for swordfish and thresher shark, 1996-2002. Marine Fisheries Review 66(2):21-30.Dohl, T. P., R. C. Guess, M. L. Duman, and R. C. Helm. 1983. Cetaceans of central and northern California, 1980-83: Status, abundance, and distribution. Final Report to the Minerals Management Service, Contract No. 14-12-0001-29090. 284p.~~

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Dorsey, E. M., S. J. Stern, A. R. Hoelzel, and J. Jacobsen. 1990. Minke whale (Balaenoptera acutorostrata) from the west coast of North America: individual recognition and small-scale site fidelity. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 12:357-368.

Forney, K. A., J. Barlow, and J. V. Carretta. 1995. The abundance of cetaceans in California waters. Part II: Aerial surveys in winter and spring of 1991 and 1992. Fish. Bull. 93:15-26.

Forney, K.A. 2007. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance along the U.S. west coast and within four National Marine Sanctuaries during 2005. U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-406. 27p.

Green, G. A., J. J. Brueggeman, R. A. Grotefendt, C. E. Bowlby, M. L. Bonnell, K. C. Balcomb, III. 1992. Cetacean distribution and abundance off Oregon and Washington, 1989-1990. Ch. 1 In: J. J. Brueggeman (ed.). Oregon and Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Surveys. Minerals Management Service Contract Report 14-12-0001-30426.

Hanan, D. A. 1986. California Department of Fish and Game coastal marine mammal study, annual report for the period July 1, 1983 - June 30, 1984. Admin. Rept. LJ-86-16. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA. 55 pp.

Hanan, D. A., D. B. Holts, and A. L. Coan, Jr. 1993. The California drift gill net fishery for sharks and swordfish, 1981-82 through 1990-91. Calif. Dept. Fish and Game Fish. Bull. No. 175. 95 pp.

Heyning, J. E., and T. D. Lewis. 1990. Fisheries interactions involving baleen whales off southern California. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 40:427-431.

Holts, D. and O. Sosa-Nishizaki. 1998. Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*, fisheries of the eastern North Pacific Ocean. *In*: I. Barrett, O. Sosa-Nishizaki and N. Bartoo (eds.). Biology and fisheries of swordfish, *Xiphias gladius*. Papers from the International Symposium on Pacific Swordfish, Ensenada Mexico, 11-14 December 1994. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 142, 276 p.

Julian, F. and M. Beeson. 1998. Estimates for marine mammal, turtle, and seabird mortality for two California gillnet fisheries: 1990-95. Fish. Bull. 96:271-284.

Leatherwood, S., R. R. Reeves, W. F. Perrin, and W. E. Evans. 1982. Whales, dolphins, and porpoises of the eastern North Pacific and adjacent Arctic waters: A guide to their identification. NOAA Technical Rept. NMFS Circular 444. 245pp.

Pierce, D. J., M. Alexandersdottie, S. J. Jeffries, P. Erstad, W. Beattie, and A. Chapman. 1996. Interactions of marbled murrelets and marine mammals with the 1994 Puget Sound sockeye gill net fishery. Final Report, Wash. Dept. Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. 21pp.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.

Sosa-Nishizaki, O., R. De la Rosa Pacheco, R. Castro Longoria, M. Grijalva Chon, and J. De la Rosa Velez. 1993. Estudio biologico pesquero del pez (*Xiphias gladius*) y otras especies de picudos (marlins y pez vela). Rep. Int. CICESE, CTECT9306.

Tershy, B. R., D. Breese, and C. S. Strong. 1990. Abundance, seasonal distribution and population composition of balaenopterid whales in the Canal de Ballenas, Gulf of California, Mexico. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 12:369-375.

Von Saunder, A. and J. Barlow. 1999. A report of the Oregon, California and Washington Line-transect Experiment (ORCAWALE) conducted in west coast waters during summer/fall 1996. U.S. Dep. Commer. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-264. 40 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

ROUGH-TOOTHED DOLPHIN (*Steno bredanensis*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Rough-toothed dolphins are found throughout the world in tropical and warm-temperate waters (~~Miyazaki and Perrin 1994~~ Perrin et al. 2009). They are present around all the main Hawaiian islands (Shallenberger 1981; Tomich 1986) and have been observed at least as far northwest as French Frigate Shoals (Nitta and Henderson 1993). Recent sighting locations of rough-toothed dolphins during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006) are shown in Figure 1. Eight strandings have been reported from Maui, Oahu, and the island of Hawaii (Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). ~~Nothing~~ Little is known about stock structure for this species in the North Pacific. Photographic identification studies around the main Hawaiian islands have.~~not demonstrated any inter-island movement of this species (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.)~~ indicate that dispersal rates between the islands of Kauai/Niihau and Hawaii do not exceed 2% per year (Baird *et al*. 2008). Resighting rates off the island of Hawaii are high, with 75% of well-marked individuals resighted on two or more occasions, suggesting high site fidelity and low population size. Resighting data coupled and relatively high sighting rates within the Main Islands stratum versus the outer EEZ stratum (Barlow 2006), may suggest that there are island-associated populations of rough-toothed dolphins in the Hawaii EEZ. Rough-toothed dolphins have also been documented in American Samoan waters (NMFS, PIR, unpublished data). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there ~~is a single~~ are two Pacific management stocks: 1) The Hawaiian Stock (this report), ~~including only animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands~~, and 2) the American Samoa Stock.. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

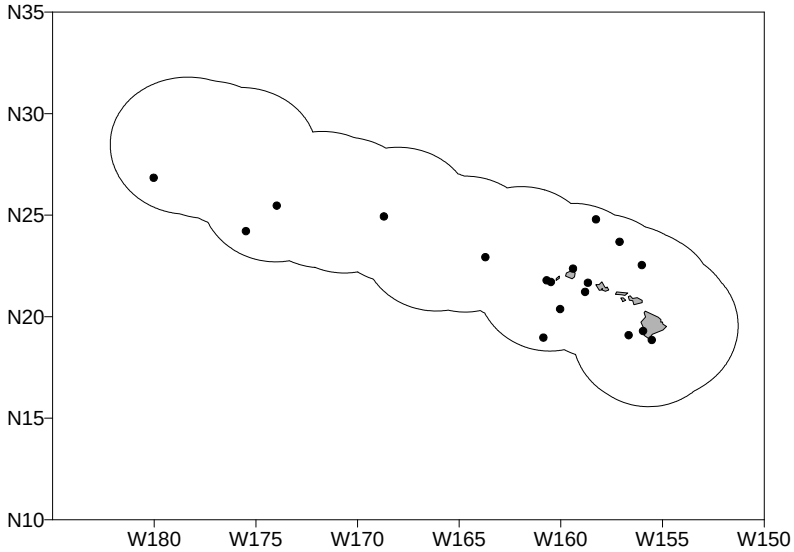


Figure 1. Rough-toothed dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

A population estimate for this species has been made in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 123 (CV=0.63) rough-toothed dolphins was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This study underestimated the total number of rough-toothed dolphins within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ Mark-recapture estimates for the islands of Kauai/Nihau and Hawaii were estimated from identification photographs obtained between 2003 and 2006, resulting in estimates of 1,665 (CV=0.33) around Kauai/Niihau and 198 (CV=0.12) around the island of Hawaii (Baird *et al.* 2008). These estimates are specific to those island areas and do not represent the abundance of rough-toothed dolphins within the Hawaiian EEZ as

surveys were primarily conducted within 40km of shore. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~19,904 (CV=0.52)~~ 8,709 (CV=0.45) rough-toothed dolphins (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate for Hawaiian Islands EEZ waters (Barlow 2006) is ~~13,184~~ 6,067 rough-toothed dolphins within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~13,184~~ 6,067) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~132~~ 61 rough-toothed dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used~~, and float lines~~ from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries, and some of these interactions involved rough-toothed dolphins (Nitta and Henderson 1993). ~~None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ Rough-toothed dolphins are known to take bait and catch from Hawaiian sport and commercial fisheries operating near the main islands and in a portion of the northwestern islands (Shallenberger 1981; Schlais 1984; Nitta and Henderson 1993), and they have been specifically reported to interact with the day handline fishery for tuna (palu-ahi) and the troll fishery for billfish and tuna (Schlais 1984; Nitta and Henderson 1993). There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no rough-toothed dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010). Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins. Baird *et al.* (2008) reported increased vessel avoidance of rough-toothed dolphins off the island of Hawaii relative to those off Kauai or Niihau, and attributed this to possible shooting of dolphins that are stealing bait or catch from recreational fisherman off the island of Hawaii (Kuljis 1983).

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of rough-toothed dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries, the Hawaiian stock of rough-toothed dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~Although information on rough-toothed dolphins in Hawaiian waters is limited, this stock would not be considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA given the absence of reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. However, there is no systematic monitoring of gillnet fisheries that may take this species, and the potential effects of~~

~~interactions with the bottomfish fishery in the NWHI are not known. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for rough-toothed dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~

REFERENCES

Baird, R.W., D.L. Webster, S.D. Mahaffy, D.J. McSweeney, G.S. Schorr, and A.D. Ligon. 2008. Site fidelity and association patterns in a deep-water dolphin: Rough-toothed dolphins (*Steno bredanensis*) in the Hawaiian Archipelago. Marine Mammal Science 24(3): 535-553.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994_2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Kuljis, B.A. 1983. Porpoise/fisheries interactions within the Hawaiian islands. Southwest Fisheries Science Center Admin Rep H-83-19C. 16pp.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

~~Miyazaki, N. and W. F. Perrin. 1994. Rough-toothed dolphin *Steno bredanensis* (Lesson, 1828). *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol.5: The First Book of Dolphins, pp. 1-21. Academic Press, 416 pp.~~

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Schlais, J.F. 1984. Thieving dolphins: A growing problem in Hawaii's fisheries. Sea Front. 30(5):293-298.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Tomich, P. Q. 1986. Mammals in Hawaii: A Synopsis and Notational Bibliography. Bishop Museum Press, Hawaii, 375 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Created 10/08/2009

ROUGH-TOOTHED DOLPHIN *(Steno bredanensis)*: American Samoa Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Rough-toothed dolphins are found throughout the world in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Perrin et al. 2009). Rough-toothed dolphins are common in the South Pacific from the Solomon Islands, where they were taken by dolphin hunters, to French Polynesia and the Marquesas (reviewed by Reeves et al 1999). Rough-toothed dolphins have been observed during summer and winter surveys around the American Samoan island of Tutuila (Johnston et al 2008) and are thought to be common throughout the Samoan archipelago (Craig 2005). Rough-toothed dolphins were among the most commonly-sighted cetaceans during small boat surveys conducted from 2003 to 2006 around Tutuila, though not observed during a 2006 survey of Swain's Island and the Manu'a Group (Johnston et al. 2008). Photo-identification data collected during the surveys suggest the presence of a resident population of rough-toothed dolphins in the waters surrounding Tutuila (Johnston et al. 2008). Approximately 1/3 of the individuals within the photo-id catalog were sighted in multiple years (Johnston et al. 2008). One rough-toothed dolphin was taken entangled near 40-fathom bank south of the islands by the American Samoa-based longline in 2008 (Oleson 2009), indicating some rough-toothed dolphins maintain a more pelagic distribution. Nothing is known about stock structure for this species in the South Pacific. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there are two Pacific management stocks: 1) The Hawaiian Stock, which includes animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands, and 2) the American Samoa Stock, which include animals inhabiting the EEZ waters around American Samoa (this report).

Figure 1. Rough-toothed dolphin sightings during cetacean sighting surveys around Tutuila, American Samoa, 2003-2006 (Johnston et al, 2008).

POPULATION SIZE

No abundance estimates are currently available for rough-toothed dolphins in U.S. EEZ waters of American Samoa; however, density estimates for rough-toothed dolphins in other tropical Pacific regions can provide a range of likely abundance estimates in this unsurveyed region. Published estimates of rough-toothed dolphins (animals per km^2) in the Pacific are: 0.0035 (CV=0.45) for the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006); 0.0017 (CV=0.63) for nearshore waters surrounding the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000), 0.0076 (CV=0.32) and 0.0017 (CV=0.16) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Ferguson and Barlow 2003). Applying the lowest and highest of these density estimates to U.S. EEZ waters surrounding American Samoa (area size = 404,578 km^2) yields a range of plausible abundance estimates of 692 – 3,115 rough-toothed dolphins.

Minimum Population Estimate

No minimum population estimate is currently available for waters surrounding American Samoa, but the rough-toothed dolphin density estimates from other tropical Pacific regions (Barlow 2003, Mobley et al. 2000, Wade and Gerrodette 1993, Ferguson and Barlow 2003, see above) can provide a range of likely values. The lognormal 20th percentiles of plausible abundance estimates for the American Samoa EEZ, based on the densities observed elsewhere, range from 426 – 2,731 rough-toothed dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

No PBR can presently be calculated for rough-toothed dolphins within the American Samoa EEZ, but based on the range of plausible minimum abundance estimates (426 – 2,731), a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with a fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV > 0.50 within the American Samoa EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), and the default growth rate (½ of 4%), the PBR would likely fall between 3.4 and 22 rough-toothed dolphins per year.

ANNUAL HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in American Samoan fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle whales (Perrin et al. 1994). The primary fishery in American Samoa is the commercial pelagic longline fishery that targets tunas, which was introduced in 1995 (Levine and Allen 2009). In 2008, there were 28 federally permitted vessels within the longline fishery in American Samoa. The fishery has been monitored since March 2006 under a mandatory observer program, which records all interactions with protected species (Pacific Islands Regional Office 2009). One rough-toothed dolphin was seriously injured by the fishery in 2008 (Oleson 2009).

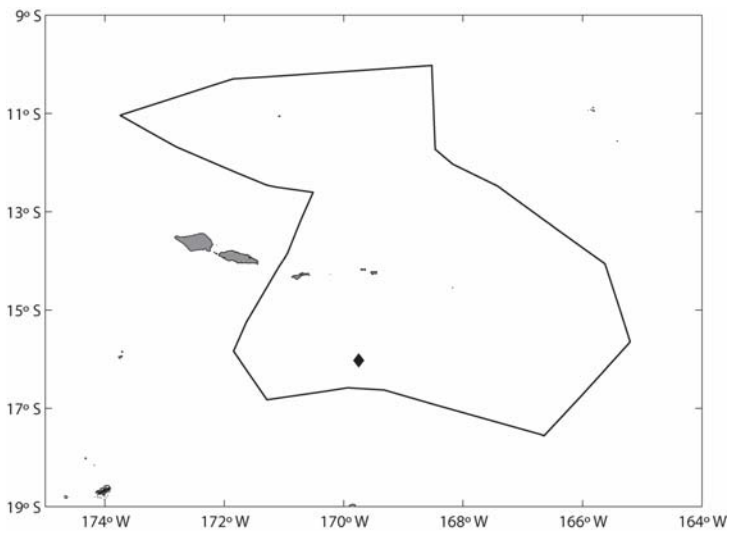


Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of rough-toothed dolphins (American Samoan stock) in commercial fisheries within the U.S. EEZ (Oleson 2009). Longline fishery take estimates represent only those trips with at least 10 sets/trip (Oleson 2009). Mean annual takes are based on 2006-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed and estimated mortality and serious injury of rough-toothed dolphins in the American Samoa EEZ		
				American Samoa EEZ		
				Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
American Samoa-based longline fishery	2006 2007 2008	observer data	9.0% 7.7% 8.5%	0 0 1	0 (-) 0 (-) 10.9 (2.0)	3.6 (0.6)
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters						3.6 (0.6)

Prior to 1995, bottom fishing and trolling were the primary fisheries in American Samoa but became less prominent after longlining was introduced (Levine and Allen 2009). Nearshore subsistence fisheries include spear fishing, rod and reel, collecting, gill netting, and throw netting (Craig 1993, Levine and Allen 2009). Information on

fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in the nearshore fisheries is unknown, but the gear types used in American Samoan fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used. Although boat-based nearshore fisheries have been randomly monitored since 1991, by the American Samoa Department of Marine and Wildlife Sources (DMWR), no estimates of annual human-caused mortality and serious injury of cetaceans are available.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of rough-toothed dolphins in American Samoan waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The status of the American Samoan stock of rough-toothed dolphins under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA cannot be determined at this time because no abundance estimates are available and PBR cannot be calculated. However, the estimated rate of fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the American Samoa EEZ (3.6 animals per year) is between the range of likely PBRs (3.4 – 22) for this region. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for rough-toothed dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Craig, P., B. Ponwith, F. Aitaoto, and D. Hamm. 1993. The commercial, subsistence, and recreational fisheries of American Samoa –Fisheries of Hawaii and U.S. – associated pacific Islands. Marine Fisheries Review, Spring.

Ferguson, M. C. and J. Barlow. 2003. Addendum: Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-96. Administrative Report LJ-01-04 (addendum), Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Johnston, D.W., J. Robbins, M.E. Chapla, D.K. Mattila, and K.R. Andrews. 2008. Diversity, habitat associations, and stock structure of odontocete cetaceans in the waters of American Samoa, 2003-2006. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 10(1):59-66.

Levine, A., and S. Allen. 2009. American Samoa as a fishing community. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo., NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-19, 74 p.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Oleson, E.M. 2009.Characteristics of the American Samoa Longline Fishery and Estimates of Cetacean Take, 2006-2008. PSRG-2009-14.

Pacific Islands Regional Office. 2009. Pacific Islands Regional Observer Program American Samoa longline annual status report, January 1, 2008 – December 31, 2008. http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/Library/PUBDOCs/ObserverQtrAnnRpts/obs_as_ll_rprts/2008/obs_as_ll_annual_2008.pdf

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Reeves, R.R.S., S. Leatherwood, G.S. Stone, and G. Eldridge. 1999. Marine mammals in the area served by the South Pacific Regional Environmental Planning Programme (SPREP). South Pacific Regional Environmental Programme and United Nations Environment Programme. 48pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~04/15/2010

RISSO'S DOLPHIN (*Grampus griseus*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Risso's dolphins are found in tropical to warm-temperate waters worldwide (~~Kruse et al. 1999~~ Perrin et al. 2009). Although they have been considered rare in Hawaiian waters (Shallenberger 1981), six sightings were made during a 2002 survey of the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1). There are five stranding records from the main islands (Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Risso's dolphins within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) Hawaiian waters (this report), and 2) waters off California, Oregon and Washington. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

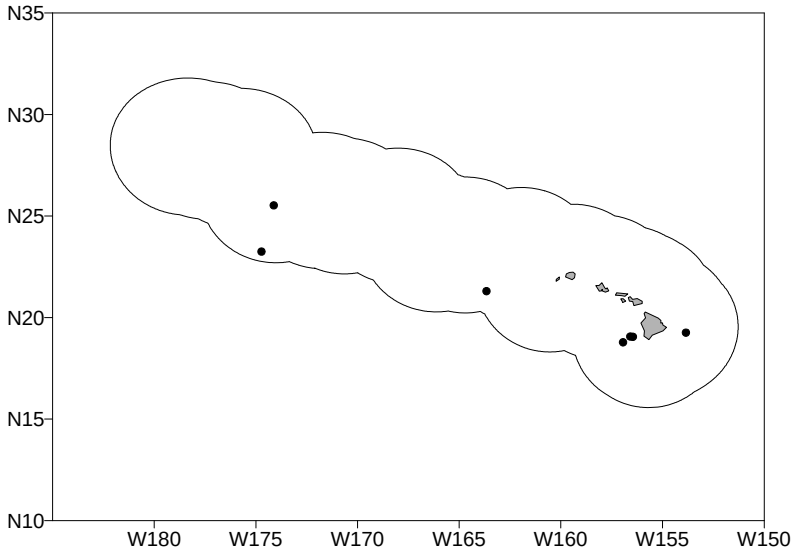


Figure 1. Risso's dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

Population estimates have been made off Japan (Miyashita 1993), ~~and~~ in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), and off the U.S. West Coast (Barlow and Forney 2007), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands and in the central North Pacific. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998 (Mobley et al. 2000). Only one sighting of a single Risso's dolphin was made, and no abundance estimate was calculated.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~2,351 (CV=0.65)~~ 2,372 (CV=0.97) Risso's dolphins (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~1,426~~ 1,195 Risso's dolphins within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for Hawaiian animals.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size

within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~1,426~~ 1,195) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~14~~ 12 Risso's dolphins per year.

HUMAN CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993), and some of these interactions involved Risso's dolphins.

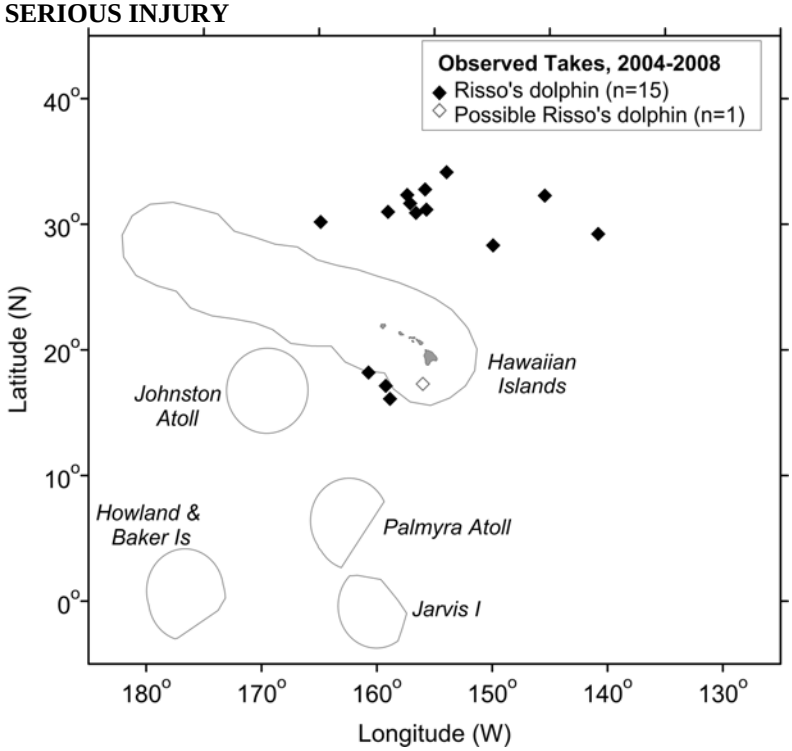


Figure 2. Locations of Risso's dolphin takes (filled diamonds) and possible takes of this species (open diamonds) in ~~the~~ Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008 ~~fishery, 1994-2002~~. Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZs. ~~Set locations in this fishery are summarized~~ Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, 10 Risso's dolphins were observed killed or seriously injured in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage), and 15 Risso's dolphins were observed killed or seriously injured in the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (Forney 2009, McCracken & Forney 2010). ~~Between 1994 and 2002, seven Risso's dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery outside of U.S. EEZ waters, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Table 1; Figure 2; Forney 2004. During the 905 observed trips with 11,014 sets, the average interaction rate of Risso's dolphins was one animal per 129 fishing trips, or one animal per 1,573 sets. All Risso's dolphins caught were considered~~ Three Risso's dolphin in the DSLL fishery and two in the SSLL fishery were killed; the remainder were determined to have been seriously injured (Forney ~~2004~~ 2009), based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following ~~established guidelines~~ the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (~~Angliss and Demaster 1998~~ Andersen et al. 2008). The total observed mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in the SSLL fishery (with 100% coverage), and the estimated annual and 5-yr average mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in the DSLL fishery are reported by McCracken and Forney (2010). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for ~~1998-2002 are 8.2 (CV = 0.66)~~ 2004-2008 are 2.6 (CV = 0.40) Risso's dolphins outside of U.S. EEZs, and none within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Table 1, McCracken & Forney 2010). ~~Several~~ One additional unidentified cetacean~~s~~, which may have been a Risso's dolphin~~s~~, ~~were~~ was also taken in ~~this~~ the DSLL fishery within U.S. EEZ waters during 2006 (Figure 2, Forney and McCracken 2008 ~~2004~~) ~~in international waters and U.S. EEZ waters of Palmyra Island. In 2001, regulations in the Hawaii-based longline fishery prohibited swordfish-style fishing methods north of the equator in an effort to reduce sea turtle mortality (NMFS 2001); however, a portion of the Hawaii-based fleet subsequently moved to California and continued to fish in international waters of the North Pacific, in roughly the same areas as previously. No Risso's dolphins were observed taken in the California-based longline fishery during 2001 and 2002, with roughly 5.5% observer coverage~~

~~(Forney 2004). Preliminary data for 2003 indicate one Risso's dolphin was hooked and released alive in international waters (NMFS/SWR, unpublished data). Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone further regulatory changes, but potential impacts of these changes on the rate of Risso's dolphin takes are unknown.~~

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of Risso's dolphin (Hawaii stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of U.S. EEZs (McCracken & Forney 2010 ~~Forney 2004~~). Mean annual takes are based on ~~1998-2002~~ 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 2 4 4 5	0 (n/a) 3 (0.6) 5 (0.4) 3 (1.0) 2 (1.2)	2.6 (0.4)	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 1 2 3 4	Same as observed	2.0	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)
~~**Hawaii-based longline fishery**~~	~~1998~~ ~~1999~~ ~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ ~~2002~~	~~observer data~~	~~4.6%~~ ~~3.5%~~ ~~11.8%~~ ~~22.7%~~ ~~24.9%~~	~~0~~ ~~1~~ ~~1~~ ~~1~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~29 (1.0)~~ ~~8 (1.0)~~ ~~4 (1.0)~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~8.2 (0.66)~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~0 ( )~~
~~**California based longline fishery**~~	~~2001~~ ~~2002~~ ~~2003~~	~~observer data~~ ~~observer data~~	~~5.5%~~ ~~(2001-02)~~ ~~n/a~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~n/a~~	~~0~~[‡]			
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									0 (-)

~~[‡]Mean annual takes for the California-based longline fishery are based on 2001-2002.~~

Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ stealing bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether Risso's dolphins are involved.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Risso's dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the Hawaiian stock of Risso's dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~The Hawaiian stock of Risso's dolphin is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA given the absence of reported fisheries-related mortality within the U.S. EEZs.~~ However, the ~~The~~ potential effect of injuries sustained by Risso's dolphins in U.S. pelagic longline fisheries in international waters is not known, because no abundance or bycatch estimates are available for international waters. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for Risso's dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~

REFERENCES

Andersen, M. S., K. A. Forney, T. V. N. Cole, T. Eagle, R. Angliss, K. Long, L. Barre, L. Van Atta, D. Borggaard, T. Rowles, B. Norberg, J. Whaley, and L. Engleby. 2008. Differentiating Serious and Non-Serious Injury of Marine Mammals: Report of the Serious Injury Technical Workshop, 10-13 September 2007, Seattle, Washington. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-39. 94p.

~~Angliss, R. P. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Differentiating Serious and Non_Serious Injury of Marine Mammals Taken Incidental to Commercial Fishing Operations: Report of the Serious Injury Workshop 1_2 April 1997, Silver Spring, Maryland. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-13. 48 pp.~~

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Barlow, J., and Forney, K.A. 2007. Abundance and density of cetaceans in the California Current ecosystem. Fishery Bulletin 105(4): 509-526.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994_2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Forney, K. A. and McCracken, M. 2008. Preliminary estimates of cetacean injury and mortality in Hawaii-based longline fisheries during 2006. Draft document PSRG-2008-16 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, January 8-10, 2008, Monterey, CA.

~~Kruse, S. K., D. K. Caldwell, and M. C. Caldwell. 1999. Risso's dolphin *Grampus griseus*. Pages 183-212 *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Volume 6. Academic Press, San Diego.~~

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M. and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

~~NMFS, Southwest Region, Observer Program, 501 W. Ocean Blvd, Long Beach, CA, 90802.~~

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised 04/15/2010

COMMON BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus truncatus*): Hawaiian Islands Stock Complex- Kauai/Niiahu, Oahu, 4-island, Hawaii Island, Hawaii Pelagic

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Common bottlenose dolphins are widely distributed throughout the world in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Perrin et al. 2009). The species is primarily coastal in much of its range, but there are populations in some offshore deepwater areas as well. Bottlenose dolphins are common throughout the Hawaiian Islands, from the island of Hawaii to Kure Atoll (Shallenberger 1981). Twelve strandings have been reported within the main Hawaiian Islands (Nitta 1991, Maldini et al. 2005). Recent sighting locations based on a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006) are shown in Figure 1. In the Hawaiian Islands, they are found in shallow inshore waters and deep water (Baird et al. 2009).

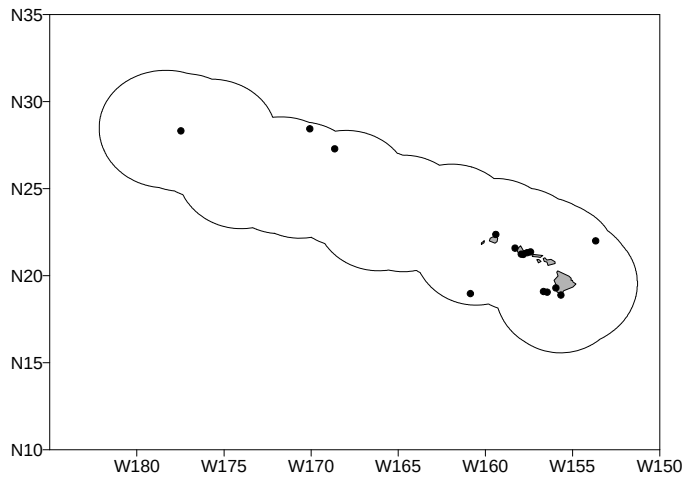


Figure 1. Bottlenose dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

Separate offshore and coastal forms of bottlenose dolphins have been identified along continental coasts in several areas (Ross and Cockcroft 1990; Van Waerebeek et al. 1990), and there is some evidence that similar onshore-offshore forms may exist in Hawaiian waters. In their analysis of sightings of bottlenose dolphins in the eastern tropical Pacific (ETP), Scott and Chivers (1990) noted that there was a large hiatus between the westernmost sightings and the Hawaiian Islands. These data suggest that bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters belong to a separate stock from those in the ETP. Furthermore, recent photo-identification and genetic studies off Oahu, Maui, Lanai, Kauai, Niihau, and Hawaii suggest limited movement of bottlenose dolphins between islands and into offshore waters (Baird et al. 2009; Martien et al. in review). These data suggest the existence of demographically distinct resident populations at each of the four main Hawaiian Island groups – Kaua‘i & Ni'ihau, Oahu, the ‘4-island Region (Moloka‘i, Lana‘i, Maui, Kaho‘olawe), and Hawai‘i. In addition, the genetic data indicate that the deeper waters surrounding the main Hawaiian Islands are utilized by a larger pelagic population.

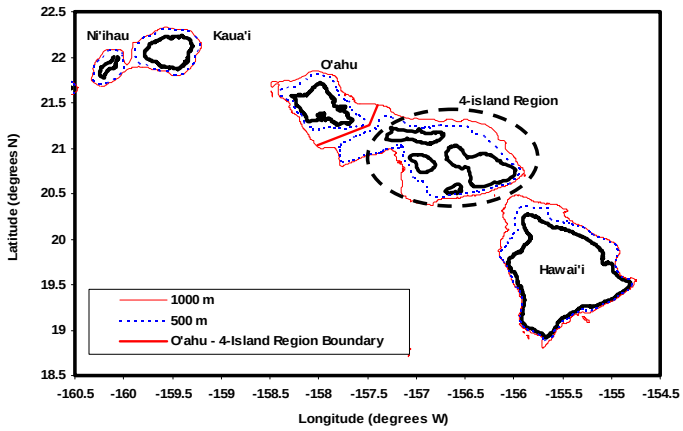


Figure 2. Insular bottlenose dolphin stock boundaries (red lines). Areas beyond the 1000 m isobath represent the pelagic stock range.

Over 99% of the bottlenose dolphins known to be part of one of the insular populations photo-identified around the main Hawaiian Islands (Baird et al. 2009) have been documented in waters of 1000 m or less (Martien et al. 2009). Based on these data, Martien et al. (2009) suggested that the boundaries between the insular stocks and the Pelagic stock be placed along the 1000 m isobath. Since that isobath does not separate O‘ahu from the 4-Islands Region, the boundary between those stocks would run approximately equidistant between the 500 m isobaths around O‘ahu and the 4-Islands Region, through the middle of Ka‘iwi Channel. These boundaries (Figure 2) are provisionally applied in this report

to recognize separate insular and pelagic bottlenose dolphin stocks for management (NMFS 2005). These boundaries may be revised in the future as additional information becomes available. To date, no data are available regarding population structure of bottlenose dolphins in the Northwest Hawaiian Islands (NWHI). However, given the existence of island resident populations in the main Hawaiian Islands, the larger distances between islands in the NWHI, and the finding of population structure with the NWHI in other dolphin species (e.g., Andrew 2009), it is likely that additional demographically independent populations of bottlenose dolphins exist in the NWHI. However, until data become available upon which to base stock designations in this area, the NWHI will remain part of the Hawaiʻi Pelagic Stock. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) Pacific stock assessment reports, bottlenose dolphins within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into seven stocks: 1) California, Oregon and Washington offshore stock, 2) California coastal stock, and five Pacific Islands Region management stocks (this report): 3) Kauaʻi and Niʻihau, 4) Oʻahu, 5) the "4-Island Region" (Molokaʻi, Lanaʻi, Maui, Kahoʻolawe), 6) Hawaiʻi Island and 7) the Hawaiian Pelagic Stock, including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of the Hawaii pelagic stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005). Estimates of abundance, potential biological removals, and status determinations for the five Hawaiian stocks are presented separately below.

HUMAN CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used (Perrin et al. 1994). In Hawaii, some mortality of bottlenose dolphins has been observed in inshore gillnets, but no estimate of annual human-caused mortality and serious injury is available, because these fisheries are not observed or monitored.

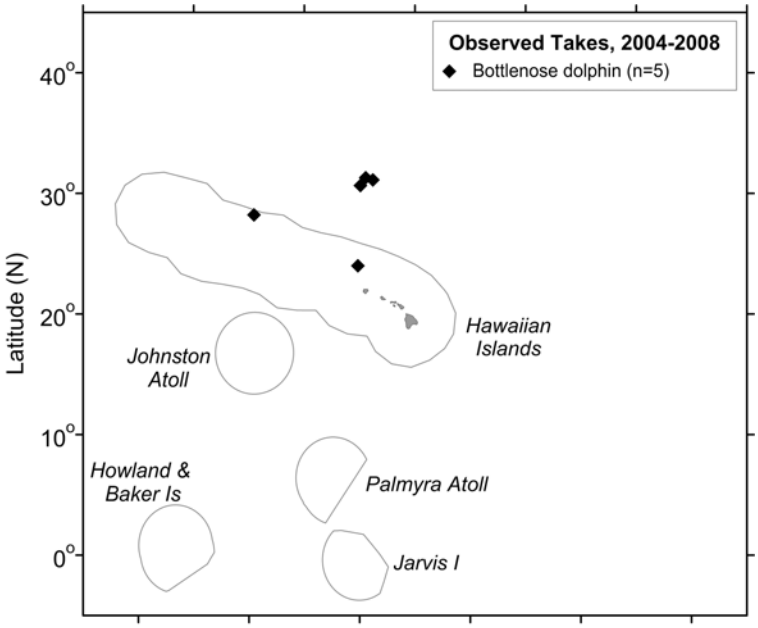


Figure 3. Locations of observed Pelagic Stock bottlenose dolphin takes (filled diamonds) in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, 2004-2008. Solid lines represent the U. S. EEZ. Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries, and some of these interactions involved bottlenose dolphins (Nitta and Henderson 1993). There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, four bottlenose dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage), and one bottlenose dolphin was observed taken in the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (Forney 2009, McCracken 2009). Based on the locations, these takes are all considered to have been from the Pelagic Stock of bottlenose dolphins. All five dolphins were determined to have been seriously injured (Forney 2009), based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Andersen et al. 2008). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for the Pelagic Stock during 2004-2008 are 0.6 (CV = 0) bottlenose dolphins outside of U.S. EEZs, and 0.4 (CV = 0.68) within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Table 1, McCracken 2009).

Bottlenose dolphins are one of the species commonly reported to steal bait and catch from several Hawaiian sport and commercial fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993; Schlais 1984). Observations of bottlenose dolphins stealing bait or catch have also been made in the day handline fishery (palu-ahi) for tuna, the handline fishery for mackerel scad, the troll fishery for billfish and tuna, and the inshore set gillnet fishery (Nitta and

Henderson 1993). Nitta and Henderson (1993) indicated that bottlenose dolphins remove bait and catch from handlines used to catch bottomfish off the island of Hawaii and Kaula Island and on several banks of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins that steal bait and catch are increasing. Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins. Beginning in the early 1970s the National Marine Fisheries Service received reports of fishermen shooting at bottlenose dolphins to deter them from stealing fish catches (Nitta and Henderson 1993). Nitta and Henderson (1993) also reported that one bottlenose dolphin calf was removed from small-mesh set gillnet off Maui in 1991 and expressed surprise that bottlenose dolphins are "rarely reported entangled or raiding set gill nets in Hawaii," considering that they so often remove fish from fishing lines. One bottlenose dolphin entangled in a gillnet was reported stranded on Maui in 1998 (NMFS/PIR, unpublished data; Maldini 2003). During 2009, one bottlenose dolphin was photographed off the Kona Coast of the island of Hawai'i with a hook and line trailing out of its mouth (pers. comm. Robin Baird), but the responsible fishery is not known.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of bottlenose dolphins (Hawaii stock) in commercial and gillnet fisheries, within and outside of the U.S. EEZs (McCracken 2009, Forney 2009). Mean annual takes are based on 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated; n/a = not available.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)	0 0 1 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 1 (1.6) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0.2 (3.1)
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 0 1 2 0	Same as observed	0.6 (0.0)	0 0 0 1 0	Same as observed	0.2
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									0.4 (0.68)[1]

[1] **Takes were all from the Pelagic Stock of bottlenose dolphins**

KAUA'I AND NI'IHAU STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

A photo-identification study conducted in 2003, 2004 and 2005 identified 102 individual bottlenose dolphins around Kaua'i and Ni'ihau (Baird et al. 2009). A Lincoln-Peterson mark-recapture analysis of the photo-identification data resulted in an abundance estimate of 147 (CV=0.11) (Baird et al. 2009). This abundance underestimates the total number of bottlenose dolphins around Kaua'i and Ni'ihau because it only represents individuals with distinguishable marks.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the Baird et al. (2009) mark-recapture estimate is 134. This is greater than the number of distinct individuals (102) identified during the photo-identification study.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size

(134) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no reported fishery mortality or serious injury during the last five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 1.3 bottlenose dolphins per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Kaua'i and Ni'ihau Stock of bottlenose dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because there have been no reports of recent mortality or serious injuries of this stock. However, there is no systematic monitoring of near-shore fisheries that may take this species. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for bottlenose dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

O'AHU STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

A photo-identification study conducted in 2002, 2003 and 2006 identified 67 individual bottlenose dolphins around O'ahu (Baird et al. 2009). A Lincoln-Peterson mark-recapture analysis of the photo-identification data resulted in an abundance estimate of 594 (CV=0.54) (Baird et al. 2009). The estimate only represents individuals with distinguishable marks and does not include individuals from the Northwestern (windward) side of the island. The sample size of encounters (11) was small compared to encounters off other islands; therefore, this estimate is imprecise and should be considered provisional until additional abundance studies can be completed.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the Baird et al. (2009) mark-recapture estimate is 388. This is substantially greater than the number of distinct individuals (67) identified during the photo-identification study.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (388) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no reported fishery mortality during the last five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 3.9 bottlenose dolphins per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The O'ahu stock of bottlenose dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because there have been no reports of recent mortality or serious injuries of this stock. However, there is no systematic monitoring of near-shore fisheries that may take this species. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for bottlenose dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

4-ISLANDS REGION STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

A photo-identification study conducted from 2000-2006 identified 98 individual bottlenose dolphins around Kaua'i and Ni'ihau (Baird et al. 2009). A Lincoln-Peterson mark-recapture analysis of the photo-identification data resulted in an abundance estimate of 153 (CV=0.24) (Baird et al. 2009). This abundance underestimates the total number of bottlenose dolphins in the 4-islands region because it only represents individuals with distinguishable marks and does not include individuals from the Northwestern (windward) sides of Mau'i and Moloka'i.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the Baird et al. (2009) mark-recapture estimate is 125. This is greater than the number of distinct individuals (98) identified during the photo-identification study.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (125) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no reported fishery mortality during the last five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 1.3 bottlenose dolphins per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The 4-Islands Region Stock of bottlenose dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, there have been no reports of recent mortality or serious injuries of this stock. However, there is no systematic monitoring of near-shore fisheries that may take this species. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for bottlenose dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

HAWAIʻI ISLAND STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

A photo-identification study conducted from 2000-2006 identified 69 individual bottlenose dolphins around the island of Hawaiʻi (Baird et al. 2009). A Lincoln-Peterson mark-recapture analysis of the photo-identification data resulted in an abundance estimate of 102 (CV=0.13) (Baird et al. 2009). This abundance underestimates the total number of bottlenose dolphins around the island of Hawaiʻi because it only represents individuals with distinguishable marks and does not include individuals from the Northwestern (windward) side of the island.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the Baird et al. (2009) mark-recapture estimate is 91. This is greater than the number of distinct individuals (69) identified during the photo-identification study.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (91) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no reported fishery mortality during the last five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 0.9 bottlenose dolphins per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Hawaiʻi Island Stock of bottlenose dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA,

because there have been no reports of recent mortality or serious injuries of this stock. However, there is no systematic monitoring of gillnet fisheries that may take this species. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for bottlenose dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

HAWAIIAN PELAGIC STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

Population estimates have been made in Japanese waters (Miyashita 1993) and the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 3,215 (CV= 0.59) bottlenose dolphins (Barlow 2006), equivalent to a density of 1.31 individuals per 1000 km^2. Applying this density to the 2,464,486 km^2 area of the Pelagic Stock between the 1000m isobath and the Hawaiian Islands EEZ boundary (see Figures 1-2), the stock-specific abundance is estimated as 3,178 (CV=0.59). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for the Hawaiian Pelagic stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 line-transect abundance estimate for the Hawaiian Pelagic Stock is 2,006 bottlenose dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (2,006) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.45 (for a stock of unknown status with a Hawaiian Islands EEZ fishery mortality and serious injury rate between 0.60 and 0.80; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 18 bottlenose dolphin per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Hawaiian Pelagic Stock of bottlenose dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because the estimated rate of fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (0.4 animals per year) is less than the PBR (18). However, the potential effects of interactions with U.S. and international pelagic longline fisheries in international waters are not known. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for bottlenose dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Andersen, M. S., K. A. Forney, T. V. N. Cole, T. Eagle, R. Angliss, K. Long, L. Barre, L. Van Atta, D. Borggaard, T. Rowles, B. Norberg, J. Whaley, and L. Engleby. 2008. Differentiating Serious and Non-Serious Injury of Marine Mammals: Report of the Serious Injury Technical Workshop, 10-13 September 2007, Seattle, Washington. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-39. 94p.

Baird, R.W., A.M. Gorgone, D.J. McSweeney, A.D. Ligon, M.H. Deakos, D.L. Webster, G.S. Schorr, K.K. Martien, D.R. Salden, and S.D. Mahaffy. 2009. Population structure of island-associated dolphins: Evidence from photo-identification of common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in the main Hawaiian Islands. Mar. Mam. Sci. 25:251-274.

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2008-16 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5,

2009, Del Mar, CA..Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

Martien, K.K., R.W. Baird, N.M. Hedrick, A.M. Gorgone, J.L. Thieleking, D.J. McSweeney, K. Robertson, and D.L. Webster, . In review. Population structure of island-associated dolphins: evidence from mitochondrial and microsatellite markers for common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) around the main Hawaiian Islands. Marine Mammal Science.

Martien, K.K., R.W. Baird 2009. A proposal for new stock boundaries for bottlenose dolphins in Hawai‘i. Document PSRG-13 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, Observer Program, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.

NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Ross, G.J.B. and V. G. Cockcroft. 1990. Comments on Australian bottlenose dolphins and the taxonomic status of *Tursiops aduncus* (Ehrenberg, 1832). *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. Reeves). pp. 101-128. Academic Press, 653pp.

Schlais, J.F. 1984. Thieving dolphins: A growing problem in Hawaii's fisheries. Sea Front. 30(5):293-298.

Scott, M. D. and S. J. Chivers. 1990. Distribution and herd structure of bottlenose dolphins in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean. *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. Reeves). pp. 387-402. Academic Press, 653pp.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Van Waerebeek, K., J. C. Reyes, A. J. Read, and J. S. McKinnon. 1990. Preliminary observations of bottlenose dolphins from the Pacific coast of South America. *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. Reeves). pp. 143-154. Academic Press, 653 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

~~Revised 12/15/2006~~

~~BOTTLENOSE DOLPHIN (*Tursiops truncatus*): Hawaiian Stock~~

~~STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE~~

~~Bottlenose dolphins are widely distributed throughout the world in tropical and warm-temperate waters. The species is primarily coastal in much of its range, but there are populations in some offshore deepwater areas as well. Separate offshore and coastal forms have been identified along continental coasts in several areas (Ross and Cockcroft 1990; Van Waerebeek et al. 1990), and there is some evidence that similar onshore-offshore forms may exist in Hawaiian waters (Martien et al 2005; Baird et al, in prep).~~

~~Bottlenose dolphins are common throughout the Hawaiian Islands, from the island of Hawaii to Kure Atoll (Shallenberger 1981). Twelve strandings have been reported within the main Hawaiian Islands (Nitta 1991, Maldini 2003). Recent sighting locations based on a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands are shown in Figure 1. In the Hawaiian Islands, they are found in shallow inshore waters and deep water (Baird et al. 2003).~~

~~**Figure 1.** Bottlenose dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.~~

~~In their analysis of sightings of bottlenose dolphins in the eastern tropical Pacific (ETP), Scott and Chivers (1990) noted that there was a large hiatus between the westernmost sightings and the Hawaiian Islands. These data suggest that bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters, belong to a separate stock from those in the ETP. Recent nearshore photo-identification studies off Oahu, Maui, Lanai, Kauai, Niihau, and Hawaii suggest limited movement of bottlenose dolphins between islands and into offshore waters (Baird et al. 2002; 2003). Further analyses of these data (Baird et al., in prep), along with recent genetic analyses (Martien et al. 2005) suggest that up to five different stocks of bottlenose dolphins may exist in Hawaiian EEZ waters: 1) the "4-Island Region" (Moloka'i, Lana'i, Maui, Kaho'olawe) 2) Oahu, 3) Kauai, Niihau & Hawaii, 4) Offshore Kauai & Niihau and 5) Offshore Oahu. However, the limited number of bottlenose dolphin groups sampled in these studies preclude any strong inference regarding stock structure within the Hawaiian EEZ at this time. Estimates of abundance and potential biological removals will be presented separately for the 4-Island Region, which currently is the only region with detailed information. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, bottlenose dolphins within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into three stocks: 1) Hawaiian Stock (this report), 2) California, Oregon and Washington offshore stock, and 3) California coastal stock.~~

~~POPULATION SIZE~~

~~Population estimates have been made in Japanese waters (Miyashita 1993) and the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. Photographic mark-recapture studies off Maui and Lanai estimated 134 (95% C.I. 107-180) bottlenose dolphins inhabiting that area (Baird et al. 2002). More recently, a minimum of 235 distinct bottlenose dolphins were identified around all the main Hawaiian Islands (Baird et al. 2006). As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 743 (CV=0.56) bottlenose dolphins was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This abundance underestimates the total number of bottlenose dolphins within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 3,215 (CV= 0.59) bottlenose dolphins (Barlow 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for the Hawaiian Islands EEZ stock. If the bottlenose dolphins in the 4-Island Region comprise a distinct stock, the most recent available~~

~~estimate is the number of individuals identified during photo-identification studies between 1999 and 2003, 141 dolphins (Baird et al., in prep).~~

~~Minimum Population Estimate~~

~~The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate is 2,029 bottlenose dolphins. The minimum population estimate for bottlenose dolphins in the Four Island Region, based on photo-identification methods, is 68 dolphins (the number or of unique individuals identified between 1999 and 2003; Baird et al. 2003).~~

~~Current Population Trend~~

~~No data are available on current population trend.~~

~~CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES~~

~~No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.~~

~~POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL~~

~~The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (2,029) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a stock of unknown status with a Hawaiian Islands EEZ fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV > 0.80; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 16 bottlenose dolphins per year. If bottlenose dolphins in the 4-Island Region comprise a separate stock, the PBR would be the minimum population estimate (141) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no reported fishery mortality during the last five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 1.4 bottlenose dolphins per year.~~

~~HUMAN CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY~~

~~Fishery Information~~

~~Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle whales (Perrin et al. 1994). In Hawaii, some mortality of bottlenose dolphins has been observed in inshore gillnets, but no estimate of annual human-caused mortality and serious injury is available, because these fisheries are not observed or monitored.~~

~~Figure 2.~~ ~~Locations of observed bottlenose dolphin takes (filled diamonds) and possible takes of this species (open diamonds) in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, 1994-2004. Solid lines represent the U. S. EEZ. Set locations in this fishery are summarized in Appendix 1.~~

~~Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries, and some of these interactions involved bottlenose dolphins (Nitta and Henderson 1993). Between 1994 and 2002 three bottlenose dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, with approximately 4-26% of all effort observed (Table 1; Forney and Kobayashi 2005). During 18,353 observed sets, the average interaction rate of bottlenose dolphins was 0.16 animals per 1,000 sets. One of the bottlenose dolphins was killed, and the other two were considered seriously injured (Forney and Kobayashi 2005), based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following established guidelines for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Angliss and Demaster 1998). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for 2000-2004 are 0.8 (CV = 1.00) bottlenose dolphins within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, and none outside of U.S. EEZs. Six additional unidentified~~

~~cetaceans, which may have been bottlenose dolphins, were also taken in this fishery (Figure 2, Forney and Kobayashi 2005). Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of bottlenose dolphin takes are unknown.~~

~~Bottlenose dolphins are one of the species commonly reported to take bait and catch from several Hawaiian sport and commercial fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993; Schlais 1984). Observations of bottlenose dolphins taking bait or catch have also been made in the day handline fishery (palu-ahi) for tuna, the handline fishery for mackerel scad, the troll fishery for billfish and tuna, and the inshore set gillnet fishery (Nitta and Henderson 1993). Nitta and Henderson (1993) indicated that bottlenose dolphins remove bait and catch from handlines used to catch bottomfish off the island of Hawaii and Kaula Island and on several banks of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins that steal bait and catch are increasing. Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins. Beginning in the early 1970s the National Marine Fisheries Service received reports of fishermen shooting at bottlenose dolphins to deter them from taking fish catches (Nitta and Henderson 1993). Nitta and Henderson (1993) also reported that one bottlenose dolphin calf was removed from small-mesh set gillnet off Maui in 1991 and expressed surprise that bottlenose dolphins are "rarely reported entangled or raiding set gill nets in Hawaii," considering that they so often remove fish from fishing lines. One bottlenose dolphin entangled in a gillnet was reported stranded on Maui in 1998 (NMFS/PIR, unpublished data; Maldini 2003).~~

~~**Table 1.** Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of bottlenose dolphins (Hawaii stock) in commercial and gillnet fisheries, within and outside of the U.S. EEZs (Forney and Kobayashi 2005; NMFS/PIR unpublished data). Mean annual takes are based on 2000-2004 data unless otherwise indicated; n/a = not available.~~

~~Fishery Name~~	~~Year~~	~~Data Type~~	~~Percent Observer Coverage~~	~~Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZs~~			~~Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ~~		
				~~Observed~~	~~Estimated (CV)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV)~~	~~Observed~~	~~Estimated (CV)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV)~~
~~**Hawaii-based longline fishery**~~	~~2000~~	~~observer data~~	~~11.0%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0.8 (1.0)~~
	~~2001~~		~~23.0%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	
	~~2002~~		~~24.8%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	
	~~2003~~		~~21.9%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~1~~	~~4 (1.0)~~	
	~~2004~~		~~25.7%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	
~~**Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters**~~									~~0.8 (1.0)~~

~~STATUS OF STOCK~~

~~The status of bottlenose dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Hawaiian stock of bottlenose dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because the estimated rate of fisheries-related mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (0.8 animals per year) is less than the PBR (16). However, there is no systematic monitoring of gillnet fisheries that may take this species, and the potential effects of interactions with the Hawaii-based longline fishery in international waters or the bottomfish fishery in the NWHI are not known. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for bottlenose dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~

~~REFERENCES~~

~~Angliss, R. P. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Differentiating Serious and Non-Serious Injury of Marine Mammals Taken Incidental to Commercial Fishing Operations: Report of the Serious Injury Workshop 1-2 April 1997, Silver Spring, Maryland. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-13. 48 pp.~~

~~Baird, R. W., A. M. Gorgone, and D. L. Webster. 2002. An examination of movements of bottlenose dolphins between islands in the Hawaiian Island Chain. Report prepared under contract # 40JGNF110270 to the Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La~~

~~Jolla, CA 92037, USA. 10p.~~

~~Baird, R.W., McSweeney D.J., Webster, D.L., Gorgone, A.M., and Ligon, A.D. 2003. Studies of odontocete population structure in Hawaiian waters: Results of a survey through the main Hawaiian Islands in May and June 2003. Report prepared under contract #AB133F-02-CN-0106 to the Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA. 25 pp.~~

~~Baird, R.W., G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, S.D. Mahaffy, A.B. Douglas, A.M. Gorgone, and D.J. McSweeney. 2006. A survey for odontocete cetaceans off Kaua'i and Ni'ihau, Hawai'i, during October and November 2005: evidence for population structure and site fidelity. Report prepared under contract #AB133F05SE519 to Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole Street, Honolulu, HI 96822, USA. 16p.~~

~~Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.~~

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

~~Forney, K.A. and D. Kobayashi. 2005. Updated estimates of mortality and injury of cetaceans in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, 1994-2004. Draft report. Document PSRG-07 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 16-17, 2005. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

~~Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.~~

~~Maldini, D. 2003. Abundance and distribution patterns of Hawaiian odontocetes: focus on O'ahu. Doctoral dissertation, University of Hawai'i at Manoa. 122 pp.~~

~~Martien, K., R.W. Baird, and K. Robertson. 2005. Population structure of bottlenose dolphins around the main Hawaiian Islands. Document PSRG-08 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, January 3-5, 2005. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

~~Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.~~

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

~~Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.~~

~~Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.~~

~~NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, Observer Program, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.~~

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

~~Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.~~

~~Ross, G.J.B. and V. G. Cockcroft. 1990. Comments on Australian bottlenose dolphins and the taxonomic status of *Tursiops aduncus* (Ehrenberg, 1832). *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. Reeves). pp. 101-128. Academic Press, 653pp.~~

~~Schlais, J.F. 1984. Thieving dolphins: A growing problem in Hawaii's fisheries. Sea Front. 30(5):293-298.~~

~~Scott, M. D. and S. J. Chivers. 1990. Distribution and herd structure of bottlenose dolphins in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean. *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. Reeves). pp. 387-402. Academic Press, 653pp.~~

~~Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.~~

~~Van Waerebeek, K., J. C. Reyes, A. J. Read, and J. S. McKinnon. 1990. Preliminary observations of bottlenose dolphins from the Pacific coast of South America. *In*: The Bottlenose Dolphin (eds. S. Leatherwood and R. Reeves). pp. 143-154. Academic Press, 653 pp.~~

~~Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS~~

~~Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.~~

~~Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.~~

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

PANTROPICAL SPOTTED DOLPHIN (*Stenella attenuata attenuata*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Pantropical spotted dolphins are primarily found in tropical and subtropical waters worldwide (~~Perrin and Hohn 1994~~ Perrin et al. 2009). Much of what is known about the species in the North Pacific has been learned from specimens obtained in the large directed fishery in Japan and in the eastern tropical Pacific (ETP) tuna purse-seine fishery (~~Perrin and Hohn 1994~~ Perrin et al. 2009). These dolphins are common and abundant throughout the Hawaiian archipelago, particularly in channels between islands, over offshore banks (e.g. Penguin Banks), and off the lee shores of the islands (see Shallenberger 1981). Recent sighting locations from a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands are shown in Figure 1 (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). Twelve strandings of this species have been documented in Hawaii (Nitta 1991, Maldini et al. 2005). Morphological differences and distribution patterns have been used to establish that the spotted dolphins around Hawaii belong to a stock that is distinct from those in the ETP (Perrin 1975; Dizon et al. 1994; Perrin et al. 1994b). Their possible affinities with other stocks elsewhere in the Pacific have not been investigated.

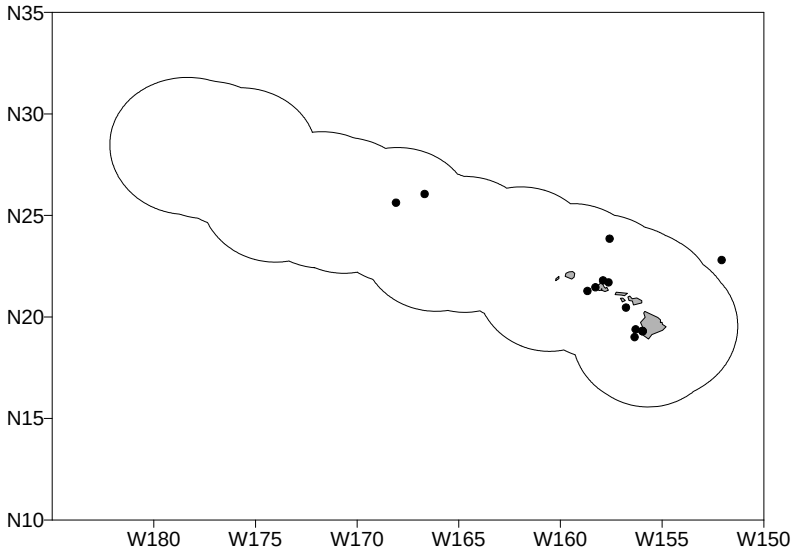


Figure 1. Pantropical spotted dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

Fishery interactions with pantropical spotted dolphins demonstrate that this species also occurs in U.S. EEZ waters around Palmyra Island (Figure 2), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the Hawaiian stock or a separate stock of pantropical spotted dolphins. Based on patterns of movement and population structure observed in other island-associated cetaceans (Norris and Dohl 1980; Norris et al.1994; Baird et al. 2001, 2003; S. Chivers, pers. comm.), the animals around Palmyra Island may represent a separate stock. Efforts are currently underway to obtain additional tissue samples of pantropical spotted dolphins for further studies of population structure in the North Pacific Ocean. Analysis of 177 genetic samples collected throughout the main Hawaiian Islands suggests that spotted dolphins are not mating randomly across the main Hawaiian Islands, and there is clustering of genotypes, into Hawaii, Oahu, and 4-islands area regions, suggesting that individual island-associated stocks may exist (Courbis et al., in prep.). Hawaiian spotted dolphins may be split into separate island-associated stocks pending the outcome of on-going genetic analysis of these samples. ~~There are at least 113 genetic samples available from Hawaiian waters for stock structure analyses (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.).~~ For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there is a single Pacific management stock including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).~~including only animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands.~~ Spotted dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna purse-seine fisheries are managed separately under the MMPA. Information on pantropical spotted dolphins around Palmyra Island will provisionally be included with this stock assessment report, recognizing that separate stock status may be warranted for these animals in the future. Estimates of abundance, potential biological removals, and status determinations will be presented separately for U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands and Palmyra Island.

POPULATION SIZE

Population estimates are available for Japanese waters (Miyashita 1993) and the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993). ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 2,928 (CV=0.45) pantropical spotted dolphins was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This abundance underestimates the total number of pantropical spotted dolphins within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~10,260 (CV=0.41)~~ 8,978 (CV=0.48) pantropical spotted dolphins (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for pantropical spotted dolphins within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

No abundance estimates are currently available for pantropical spotted dolphins in U.S. EEZ waters of Palmyra Island; however, density estimates for pantropical spotted dolphins in other Pacific regions can provide a range of likely abundance estimates in this unsurveyed region. Published estimates of pantropical spotted dolphins (animals per km^2) in the Pacific are: ~~0.0046 (CV=0.41)~~ 0.0040 (CV=0.48) for the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006); 0.0407 (CV=0.45) for nearshore waters surrounding the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000), 0.0678 (CV=0.15) and 0.1064 (CV=0.09) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Ferguson and Barlow 2003), and 0.0731 (CV=0.33) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean west of 120°W and north of 5°N (Ferguson and Barlow 2003). Applying the lowest and highest of these density estimates to U.S. EEZ waters surrounding Palmyra Island (area size = ~~347,216~~ 352,821 km^2) yields a range of plausible abundance estimates of ~~1,590 - 36,928~~ 1,414 - 37,525 pantropical spotted dolphins.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate for the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006) is ~~7,362~~ 6,701 pantropical spotted dolphins. No minimum population estimate is currently available for waters surrounding Palmyra Island, but the pantropical spotted dolphin density estimates from other Pacific regions (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006, Mobley et al. 2000, Wade and Gerrodette 1993, Ferguson and Barlow 2003; see above) can provide a range of likely values. The lognormal 20th percentiles of plausible abundance estimates for the Palmyra Island EEZ, based on the densities observed elsewhere, range from ~~1,141 - 34,238~~ 964 - 34,792 pantropical spotted dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the Hawaiian pantropical spotted dolphin stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~7,362~~ 6,701) <u>times</u> one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) <u>times</u> a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~74~~ 61 pantropical spotted dolphins per year. No separate PBR can presently be calculated for pantropical spotted dolphins within the Palmyra Island EEZ, but based on the range of plausible minimum abundance estimates (~~1,141 - 34,238~~ 964 - 34,792), a recovery factor of ~~0.40~~ 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with ~~a fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV > 0.80~~ no documented mortality and serious injury within the Palmyra Islands EEZ during the past five years; Wade and Angliss 1997), and the default growth rate (½ of 4%), the PBR would likely fall between ~~9.1 and 274~~ 9.6 and 347 pantropical spotted dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994a). Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993). ~~Between 1994 and 2002 one pantropical spotted dolphin was observed entangled and killed in the Hawaii-based longline fishery within U.S. EEZ waters, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Table 1; Forney 2004). During the 905 observed trips with 11,014 sets, the average take rate of pantropical spotted dolphins was one animal per 905 fishing trips, or one animal per 11,014 sets. Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for pantropical spotted dolphins during 1998-2002 are zero outside of the U.S. EEZs, and 0.8 (CV=1.0) within the U.S. EEZ of Palmyra Island. No pantropical spotted dolphins were observed taken within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ during 1998-2002. One unidentified cetacean, which may have been a pantropical spotted dolphin, was also taken in this fishery within the EEZ of Palmyra Island (Figure 2, Forney 2004). Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of pantropical spotted dolphin takes are unknown.~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no pantropical spotted dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage), and one pantropical spotted dolphin was observed incidentally killed in international waters in the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (Forney 2009, McCracken 2009). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for 2004-2008 are 0.5 (CV=0.7) spotted dolphins outside of U.S. EEZs, and none within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Table 1, McCracken & Forney 2010).

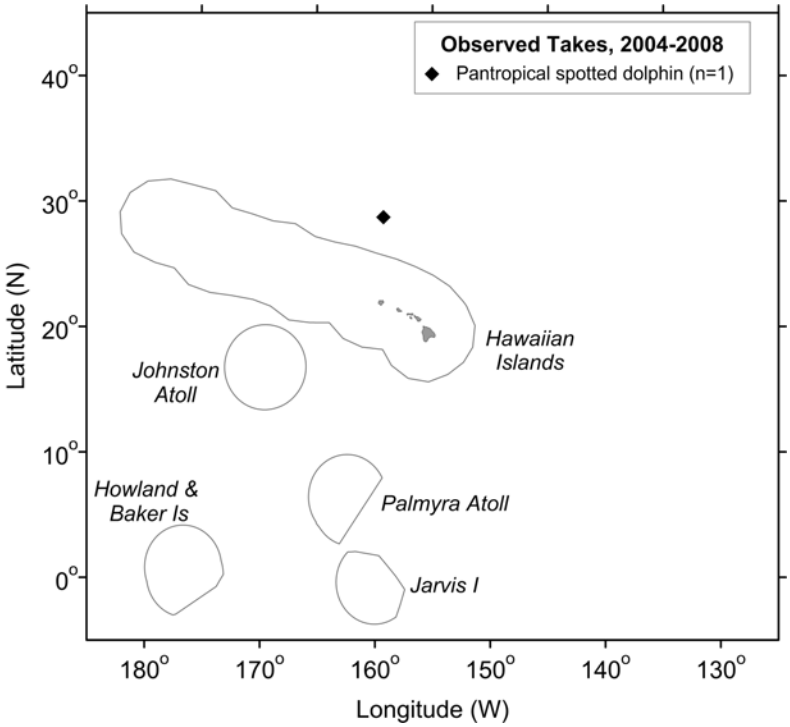


Figure 2. Location~~s~~ of observed pantropical spotted dolphin take (filled diamond) in Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008 ~~and a possible take (open diamond) in the Hawaiian longline fishery, 1994-2002~~. Solid gray lines represent the U.S. EEZ. ~~Set locations in this fishery are summarized~~ Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether pantropical spotted dolphins are involved.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of pantropical spotted dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient

data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of pantropical spotted dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA because the estimated rate of fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the Palmyra Island EEZ (0.8 animals per year) is less than the range of likely PBRs (9.1 – 274) for this region. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for pantropical spotted dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries within U.S. EEZs, the Hawaiian stock of spotted dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. However, the potential effect of injuries sustained by pantropical spotted dolphins in U.S. pelagic longline fisheries in international waters is not known, because no abundance estimates or international bycatch estimates are available.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of pantropical spotted dolphins (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the U.S. EEZs (~~Forney 2004~~ McCracken & Forney 2010). Mean annual takes are based on ~~1998-2002~~ 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed and estimated mortality and serious injury of pantropical spotted dolphins, by EEZ region								
				Outside of U.S. EEZs			Hawaiian Islands EEZ			~~Palmyra Island EEZ~~		
				Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	~~Obs.~~	~~Estimated (CV)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV)~~
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 0 0 0 1	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 2 (0.3)	0.5 (0.7)	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)			
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 0 0 0 0	Same as observed	0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0	Same as observed	0			
~~**Hawaii-based longline fishery**~~	~~1998~~ ~~1999~~ ~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ ~~2002~~	~~observer data~~	~~4.6%~~ ~~3.5%~~ ~~11.8%~~ ~~22.7%~~ ~~24.9%~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~0 ( )~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~4 (1.0)~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~0.8 (1.0)~~
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters							~~0.8 (1.0)~~ 0 (-)					

REFERENCES

Baird, R. W., Ligon, A. D., Hooker, S. K., and A. M. Gorgone. 2001. Subsurface and nighttime behaviour of pantropical spotted dolphins in Hawai'i. Can. J. Zool. 79:988-996.

Baird, R.W., McSweeney D.J., Webster, D.L., Gorgone, A.M., and Ligon, A.D. 2003. Studies of odontocete population structure in Hawaiian waters: Results of a survey through the main Hawaiian Islands in May and June 2003. Report prepared under contract #AB133F-02-CN-0106 to the Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA. 25 pp.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Courbis, S, R.W. Baird, F. Cipriano, D. Duffield. In prep. Population Structure of Pantropical Spotted Dolphins Near the Main Hawaiian Islands: Evidence of Multiple Genetic Stocks for Management.

Chivers, S. NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Dizon, A. E., W. F. Perrin, and P. A. Akin. 1994. Stocks of dolphins (*Stenella* spp. and *Delphinus delphis*) in the eastern tropical Pacific: a phylogeographic classification. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 119, 20 pp.

Ferguson, M. C. and J. Barlow. 2003. Addendum: Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-96. Administrative Report LJ-01-04 (addendum), Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994_2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M. and K.A. Forney 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

Norris, K. S., B. Würsig, R. S. Wells, and M. Würsig. 1994. The Hawaiian Spinner Dolphin. University of California Press, 408 pp.

Norris, K. S. and T. P. Dohl. 1980. Behavior of the Hawaiian spinner dolphin, *Stenella longirostris*. Fish. Bull. 77:821-849.

Perrin, W. F. 1975. Variation of spotted and spinner porpoise (genus *Stenella*) in the eastern tropical Pacific and Hawaii. Bull. Scripps Inst. Oceanogr. 21, 206 pp.

~~Perrin, W. F. and A. A. Hohn. 1994. Pantropical spotted dolphin *Stenella attenuata*. *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol.5: The First Book of Dolphins, pp 71-98. Academic Press, 416 pp.~~

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994a. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perrin, W. F., G. D. Schnell, D. J. Hough, J. W. Gilpatrick, Jr., and J. V. Kashiwada. 1994b. Re-examination of geographical variation in cranial morphology of the pantropical spotted dolphin, *Stenella attenuata*, in the eastern Pacific. Fish. Bull. 92:324-346.

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

SPINNER DOLPHIN (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*): Hawaiian Islands Stock Complex- Hawaii Island, Oahu/4-islands, Kauai/Niihau, Pearl & Hermes Reef, Midway Atoll/Kure, Hawaii Pelagic

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Six morphotypes within four subspecies of spinner dolphins have been described worldwide in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Perrin et al. 2009). The Gray's (or pantropical) spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris longirostris*) is the most widely distributed subspecies and is found in the Atlantic, Indian, central and western Pacific Oceans (Perrin *et al.* 1991). Within the central and western Pacific, spinner dolphins are island-associated and use shallow protected bays to rest and socialize during the day then move offshore at night to feed (Norris and Dohl 1980; Norris *et al.* 1994). ~~Spinner dolphins are found throughout the world in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Perrin and Gilpatrick 1994).~~ They are common and abundant throughout the entire Hawaiian archipelago (Shallenberger 1981; Norris and Dohl 1980; Norris et al. 1994), and 26 strandings have been reported (Maldini 2005). Recent sighting locations from a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the main Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006) are shown in Figure 1. ~~There is some suggestion from an intensive study of spinner dolphins off the Kona Coast of Hawaii that the waters surrounding this island may have a large, relatively stable "resident" population (Norris et al. 1994). Currently, it is not known whether spinner dolphins regularly move between islands or island groups, or whether separate populations may exist~~.

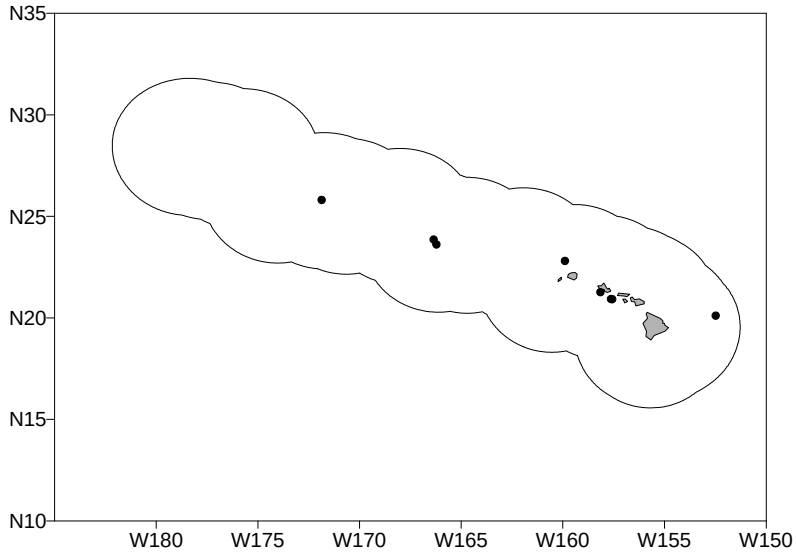


Figure 1. Spinner dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

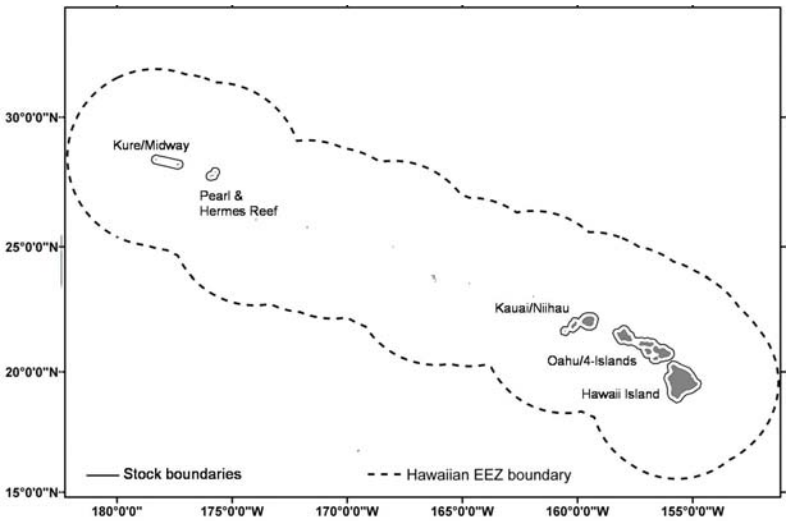


Figure 2. Spinner dolphin stock boundaries. Animals outside of the defined island areas represent the pelagic stock range

Hawaiian spinner dolphins belong to a stock that is separate from those involved in the tuna purse-seine fishery in the eastern tropical Pacific (Perrin 1975; Dizon et al. 1994). The Hawaiian form is referable to the subspecies *S. longirostris longirostris*, which occurs pantropically (Perrin 1990). Recent studies on the genetic structure of spinner dolphins in the Hawaiian archipelago found significant genetic distinctions between spinner dolphins sampled at five different islands/atolls- Hawaii, Oahu/4-islands, Kauai/Niihau, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Midway Atoll/Kure (Andrews 2009, Andrews et al. 2010)

and these distinctions are supported by available photo-ID and animal movement data (Karczmarski 2005). In particular, mitochondrial and microsatellite DNA data from individuals sampled along the Kona Coast of the Island of Hawaii show marked distinctions from individuals sampled at all other Hawaiian Islands including Maui (Andrews 2009, Andrews et al. 2010). Hill et al. (2009) suggest an offshore boundary for each island-associated stock at 10nmi from shore based on anectodal accounts of spinner dolphin distribution. This offshore boundary is likely to be revised as new information on the movements of island-associated spinner dolphins becomes available. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there are six stocks found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands 1) Hawaii Island, 2) Oahu/4-islands, 3) Kauai/Niihau, 4) Pearl & Hermes Reef, 5) Kure/Midway, and 6) Hawaii Pelagic, including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of all stocks combined is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

~~there is a single Pacific management stock including only animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands.~~ Spinner dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna purse-seine fisheries are managed separately under the MMPA.

POPULATION SIZE

No data on current population sizes for any of the Hawaiian Island stocks are available. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 2,805 (CV=0.66) spinner dolphins (Barlow 2006); however, this estimated assumed a single Hawaiian Islands stock. ~~Although spinner dolphins are clearly among the most abundant cetaceans in Hawaiian waters, previously available population estimates apply only to the west coast of Hawaii~~. Over the past few decades abundance estimates have been produced from several studies along the Kona coast of the Island of Hawaii. Norris et al. (1994) photo-identified 192 individuals along the west coast of Hawaii and estimated 960 animals for this area in 1979-1980. Östman (1994) photo-identified 677 individual spinner dolphins in the same area from 1989 to 1992. Using the same estimation procedures as Norris et al. (1994), Östman (1994) estimated a population size of 2,334 for his study area along the Kona coast of Hawaii. In the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, a multi-year photo-identification study at Midway Atoll resulted in a population estimate of 260 spinner dolphins based on 139 identified individuals (Karczmarski et al 1998). As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 3,184 (CV=0.37) spinner dolphins was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). These data may be used to produce abundance estimates for each new stock area; however, the data are now more than 8 years old and abundance estimates from these data would be out of date. ~~This study underestimated the total number of spinner dolphins within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 2,805 (CV=0.66) spinner dolphins (Barlow 2003). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock, but it may be negatively biased because relatively little survey effort occurred in nearshore areas where these dolphins are abundant. Nearshore aerial surveys are currently being conducted for this species~~.

Minimum Population Estimate

Abundance data for each new stock is not yet available, though will be incorporated into this report as estimates based on photo-identification data become available. The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate for all stocks combined (Barlow 2006) is 1,690 spinner dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data on current population trend are available.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No information on current or maximum net productivity rate is currently available for any stock in the Hawaiian Islands stock complex.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the combined Hawaiian Islands stock complex ~~is stock~~ is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (1,690) times one half the

default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no estimated fishery mortality or serious injury within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a total PBR of 17 spinner dolphins from all stocks per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). In Hawaii, some entanglements of spinner dolphins have been observed (Nitta and Henderson 1993; NMFS/PIR, unpublished data), but no estimate of annual human-caused mortality and serious injury is available, because the nearshore gillnet fisheries are not observed or monitored.

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993). There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no spinner dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (Forney 2009, McCracken & Forney 2010). ~~Between 1994 and 2002, two spinner dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004). During the 905 observed trips with 11,014 sets, the average interaction rate of spinner dolphins was one animal per 453 fishing trips, or one animal per 5,507 sets. Neither of the animals caught was considered seriously injured (Forney 2004), based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following established guidelines for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Angliss and Demaster 1998). The average 5-yr estimate of annual mortality and serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ during 1998-2002 is zero spinner dolphins. One additional unidentified cetacean, which may have been a spinner dolphin, was taken in this fishery within the U.S. EEZ surrounding Palmyra Island (Figure 2, Forney 2004). Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of spinner dolphin takes are unknown.~~

~~**Figure 2.** Locations of observed spinner dolphin takes (filled diamonds) and possible takes of this species (open diamond) in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, 1994-2002. Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZ. Set locations in this fishery are summarized in Appendix 1.~~

Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether spinner dolphins are involved.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of spinner dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance for any stock. A habitat issue of increasing concern is the potential effect of swim-with-dolphin programs and other tourism activities on spinner dolphins around the main Hawaiian Islands. Spinner dolphins are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Hawaiian stocks of spinner dolphins are ~~is~~ not considered a strategic stock under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because the estimated rate of mortality and serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ is zero. However, there is no systematic monitoring of nearshore ~~gillnet~~ fisheries that may take animals from both island-assocated and pelagic regions of the stock complex.. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for any Hawaiian spinner dolphin stock is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Andrews, K.R. 2009. Barriers to gene flow in the spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). PhD dissertation, University of Hawaii, Manoa. 99 pp.

Andrews, K.R., Karczmarski, L., Au, W.W.L., Rickards, S.H., Vanderlip, C.A., Bowen, B.W., Grau, E.G., and Toonen, R.J. 2010. Rolling stones and stable homes: social structure, habitat diversity and population genetics of the Hawaiian spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). Molecular Ecology 19:732-748.

~~Angliss, R. P. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Differentiating Serious and Non_Serious Injury of Marine Mammals Taken Incidental to Commercial Fishing Operations: Report of the Serious Injury Workshop 1_2 April 1997, Silver Spring, Maryland. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-13. 48 pp.~~

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92038.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Dizon, A. E., W. F. Perrin, and P. A. Akin. 1994. Stocks of dolphins *(Stenella* spp. and *Delphinus delphis*) in the eastern tropical Pacific: a phylogeographic classification. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 119, 20 pp.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994_2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Hill, M.C., E.M. Oleson, K.R. Andrews. 2009. A proposal to introduce new stock boundaries for Hawaiian spinner dolphins. PSRG-2009-12.

Karczmarski, L., B. Würsig and B. Winning. 1998. Socio-ecology and population biology of spinner dolphins *Stenella longirostris* in Midway Atoll, Northwest Hawaiian Chain, Central Pacific. Unpublished report to U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service. 41 pp.

Karczmarski, L., B. Wursig, G. Gailey, K.W. Larson, and C. Vanderlip. 2005. Spinner dolphins in a remote Hawaiian atoll: Social grouping and population structure. Behavioral Ecology 16(4):675-685.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Norris, K. S., B. Würsig, R. S. Wells, and M. Würsig. 1994. The Hawaiian Spinner Dolphin. University of California Press, 408 pp.

Norris, K. S. and T. P. Dohl. 1980. Behavior of the Hawaiian spinner dolphin, *Stenella longirostris*. Fish. Bull. 77:821-849.

NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, Observer Program, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

Östman, J. S. O. 1994. Social organization and social behavior of Hawaiian spinner dolphins *(Stenella longirostris)*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of California, Santa Cruz, 114 pp.

Perrin, W. F. 1975. Variation of spotted and spinner porpoise (genus *Stenella*) in the eastern tropical Pacific and Hawaii. Bull. Scripps Inst. Oceanogr. 21, 206 pp.

Perrin, W. F. 1990. Subspecies of *Stenella longirostris* (Mammalia: Cetacea: Delphinidae). Proc. Biol. Soc. Wash. 103:453-463.

Perrin, W.F., P.A. Akin, and J.V. Kashiwada. 1991. Geographic variation in external morphology of the spinner dolphin *Stenella longirostris* in the Eastern Pacific and implications for conservation. Fishery Bulletin 89:411-428

~~Perrin, W. F. and J. W. Gilpatrick, Jr. 1994. Spinner dolphin *Stenella longirostris* (Gray, 1828). *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol.5: The First Book of Dolphins, pp. 99-128. Academic Press, 416 pp.~~

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Created 10/08/2009

SPINNER DOLPHIN (S*tenella longirostris longirostris*): American Samoa Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Gray's spinner dolphins (Stenella longirostris longirostris) are the most widely distributed subspecies of spinner dolphins and are found in tropical and subtropical waters of the Atlantic, Indian, central and western Pacific Oceans (Perrin et al. 1991, Norris et al. 1994, Oremus *et al.* 2007, Johnston et al. 2008). Spinner dolphins are considered common in American Samoa (Reeves et al. 1999). During small-boat surveys from 2003 to 2006 in the waters surrounding the island of Tutuila, the spinner dolphin was the most frequently encountered species (i.e., 34 of 52 sightings) and was found in waters with a mean depth of 44m (Johnston et al. 2008). Photo-identification data collected during the surveys indicate the presence of a resident population of spinner dolphins in the waters surrounding Tutuila (Johnston et al. 2008). Approximately 1/3 of the individuals within the photo-id catalog were sighted in multiple years (Johnston et al. 2008). In addition, some of these individuals demonstrated strong site fidelity and were encountered within only a few kilometers from one year to the next (Johnston et al. 2008). During a shipboard survey in 2006 spinner dolphins were also encountered just south of the island of Ta'u, American Samoa (Johnston et al. 2008).

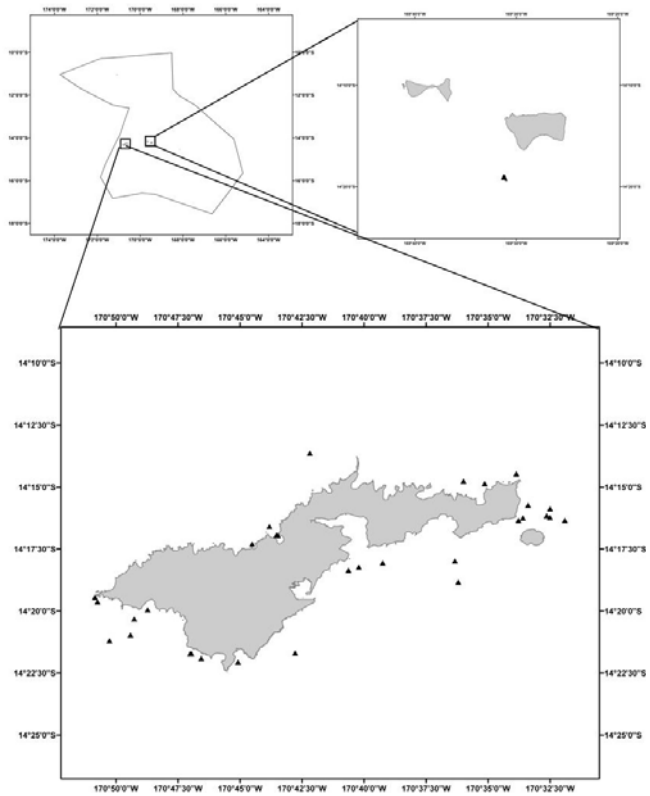


Figure 1. Spinner dolphin sightings from visual sighting surveys, 2003-2006 (Johnston et al 2008).

Genetic analyses of biopsy samples collected during the 2003-2006 small boat surveys around Tutuila indicate that spinner dolphins in American Samoa are distinct from those of the Hawaiian Archipelago. Pairwise F-statistical analyses revealed significant ($p<0.001$) genetic distinction, at both mtDNA and microsatellite loci, between spinner dolphins sampled in American Samoa and those sampled in the Hawaiian Islands (Johnston et al. 2008, Andrews 2009). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there are eight Pacific management stocks, six of these stock extend from the Hawaiian archipelago to 10 nmi offshore: 1) Kure/Midway, 2) Pearl and Hermes Reef, 3) French Frigate Shoals, 4) Kauai/Niihau, 5) Oahu/4-Islands, and 6) Big Island, The Hawaii Pelagic Stock, which includes animals within the of the Hawaiian Islands, but more than 10 nmi from the shore where insular populations exist, and 8) the American Samoa Stock, which include animals inhabiting the EEZ waters around American Samoa (this report). Spinner dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna purse-seine fisheries are managed separately under the MMPA.

POPULATION SIZE

No abundance estimates are currently available for spinner dolphins in U.S. EEZ waters of American Samoa; however, density estimates for spinner dolphins in other tropical Pacific regions can provide a range of likely abundance estimates in this unsurveyed region. Published estimates of spinner dolphins (animals per km^2) in the Pacific are: 0.0014 (CV=0.74) for the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006); 0.0443 (CV=0.37) for nearshore waters surrounding the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000), 0.0532 (CV=0.19) and 0.0473 (CV=0.15) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Ferguson and Barlow 2003), and 0.1280 (CV=0.27) for eastern tropical Pacific waters west of 120^oW and north or south of 10°, a region with similar oceanographic conditions to those around American Samoa. Applying the lowest and highest of these density

estimates to U.S. EEZ waters surrounding American Samoa (area size = 404,578 km^2) yields a range of plausible abundance estimates of 553 – 51,773 spinner dolphins.

Minimum Population Estimate

No minimum population estimate is currently available for waters surrounding American Samoa, but the spinner dolphin density estimates from other tropical Pacific regions (Barlow 2003, Mobley et al. 2000, Wade and Gerrodette 1993, Ferguson and Barlow 2003, see above) can provide a range of likely values. The lognormal 20th percentiles of plausible abundance estimates for the American Samoa EEZ, based on the densities observed elsewhere, range from 317 – 41,483 spinner dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current and maximum net productivity rate in American Samoan waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

No PBR can presently be calculated for spinner dolphins within the American Samoa EEZ, but based on the range of plausible minimum abundance estimates (317 – 41,483), a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no fishery mortality and serious injury within the American Samoa EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), and the default growth rate (½ of 4%), the PBR would likely fall between 3.2 and 415 spinner dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in American Samoan waters is limited, but the gear types used in American Samoas fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle whales (Perrin et al. 1994). The primary fishery in American Samoa is the commercial pelagic longline fishery that targets tunas, which was introduced in 1995 (Levine and Allen 2009). In 2008, there were 28 federally permitted vessels within the longline fishery in American Samoa (Levine and Allen 2009). The fishery has been monitored since March 2006 under a mandatory observer program, which records all interactions with protected species (Pacific Islands Regional Office 2009). No interactions with spinner dolphins have been recorded. Prior to 1995, bottomfishing and trolling were the primary fisheries in American Samoa but became less prominent after longlining was introduced (Levine and Allen 2009). Nearshore subsistence fisheries include spear fishing, rod and reel, collecting, gill netting, and throw netting (Craig 1993, Levine and Allen 2009). Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in the nearshore fisheries is unknown, but the gear types used in American Samoan fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used. Although boat-based nearshore fisheries have been randomly monitored since 1991, by the American Samoa Department of Marine and Wildlife Sources (DMWR), no estimates of annual human-caused mortality and serious injury of cetaceans are available.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of spinner dolphins in American Samoan waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known for spinner dolphins in American Samoa. Spinner dolphins are not listed as “threatened” or “endangered” under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as “depleted” under the MMPA. The American Samoan stock of spinner dolphins is not considered a strategic stock under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA because the estimated rate of mortality and serious injury within the American Samoa EEZ is zero. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for spinner dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.

REFERENCES

Andrews, K.R. 2009. Barriers to gene flow in the spinner dolphin (*Stenella longirostris*). PhD dissertation, University of Hawaii, Manoa. 99 pp.

Craig, P., B. Ponwith, F. Aitaoto, and D. Hamm. 1993. The commercial, subsistence, and recreational fisheries of American Samoa –Fisheries of Hawaii and U.S. – associated pacific Islands. Marine Fisheries Review, Spring.

Fisheries Monitoring and Socioeconomics Division, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center. 2008. PIFSC Report on the American Samoa Longline Fishery, January-March 2008. Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, PIFSC Data Report, DR-08-005, 12 p.

Johnston, D.W., J. Robbins, M.E. Chapla, D.K. Mattila, and K.R. Andrews. 2008. Diversity, habitat associations, and stock structure of odontocete cetaceans in the waters of American Samoa, 2003-2006. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 10(1):59-66.

Levine, A., and S. Allen. 2009. American Samoa as a fishing community. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo., NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-19, 74 p.

Norris, K.S., B. Wursig, R.S. Wells, and M. Wursig. 1994. The Hawaiian Spinner Dolphin. University of California Press, Berkley. 408pp.

Oremus, M., M.M. Poole, D. Steel, and C.S. Baker. 2007. Isolation and interchange among insular spinner dolphin communities in the South Pacific revealed by individual identification and genetic diversity. Marine Ecological Progress Series 336: 275-89.

Pacific Islands Regional Office. 2009. Pacific Islands Regional Observer Program American Samoa longline annual status report, January 1, 2008 – December 31, 2008. http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/Library/PUBDOCs/ObserverQtrAnnRpts/obs_as_ll_rprts/2008/obs_as_ll_annual_2008.pdf

Perrin, W.F. and J.W. Gilpatrick. 1994. Spinner dolphin *Stenella longirostris*. Pages 99-128 *in* S. H. Ridgeway and R. Harrison, editors. Handbook of Marine Mammals. Academic Press, London.

Reeves, R., S. Leatherwood, G.S. Stone, and L.G. Eldredge. 1999. Marine mammals in the area served by the South Pacific Regional Environment Programme (SPREP). South Pacific Regional Environment Programme, Apia, Samoa. 48pp.

Revised ~~03/15//2005~~ 04/15/2010

STRIPED DOLPHIN (*Stenella coeruleoalba*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Striped dolphins are found in tropical to warm-temperate waters throughout the world (~~Perrin et al. 1994b~~ Perrin et al. 2009). They have been documented in the Hawaiian Islands from 20 strandings (Nitta 1991, Maldini et al. 2005), although sightings have historically been infrequent (Shallenberger 1981, Mobley et al. 2000). A comprehensive shipboard survey of the Hawaiian Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), resulted in 15 sightings of striped dolphins (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006).

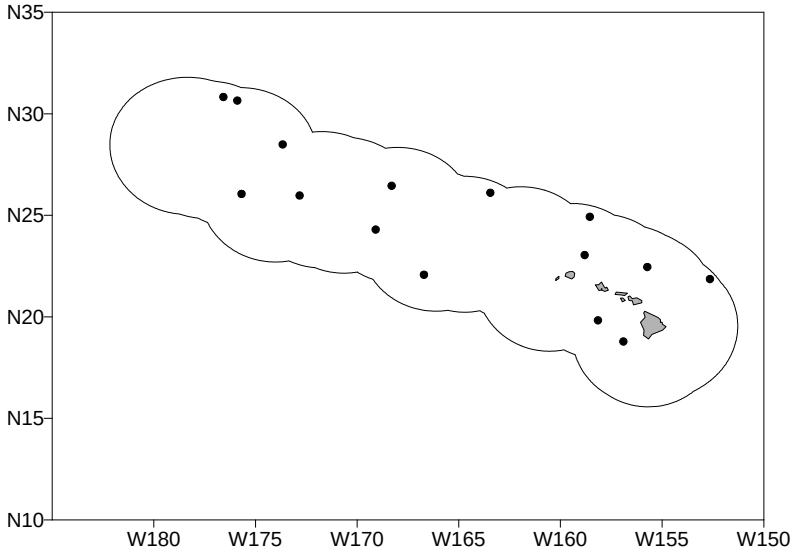


Figure 1. Striped dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006 ~~2003~~; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

Striped dolphins have been intensively exploited in the western North Pacific, where three migratory stocks are provisionally recognized (Kishiro and Kasuya 1993). In the eastern Pacific all striped dolphins are provisionally considered to belong to a single stock (Dizon et al. 1994). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, striped dolphins within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters off California, Oregon and Washington, and 2) waters around Hawaii (this report), including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005). Striped dolphins involved in eastern tropical Pacific tuna purse-seine fisheries are managed separately under the MMPA.

POPULATION SIZE

Population estimates are available for Japanese waters (Miyashita 1993) and the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether any of these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 114 (CV=1.19) striped dolphins was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This study underestimated the total number of striped dolphins within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~10,385 (CV=0.48)~~ 13,143 (CV=0.46) striped dolphins (Barlow 2006 ~~2003~~). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~7,078~~ 9,088 striped dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~7,078~~ 9,088) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.50~~ 0.45 (for a stock of unknown status with ~~no known fishery mortality~~ a Hawaiian Islands EEZ fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV between 0.60 and 0.80; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~71~~ 82 striped dolphins per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994~~a~~).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993).~~, but no interactions with striped dolphins have been documented. None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, one striped dolphin was seriously injured on the high seas in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage), and one striped dolphin was killed within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ in the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (Figure 2, Forney 2009, McCracken & Forney 2010). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for 2004-2008 are zero dolphins outside of U.S. EEZs, and 0.9 (CV=0.6) within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Table 1).

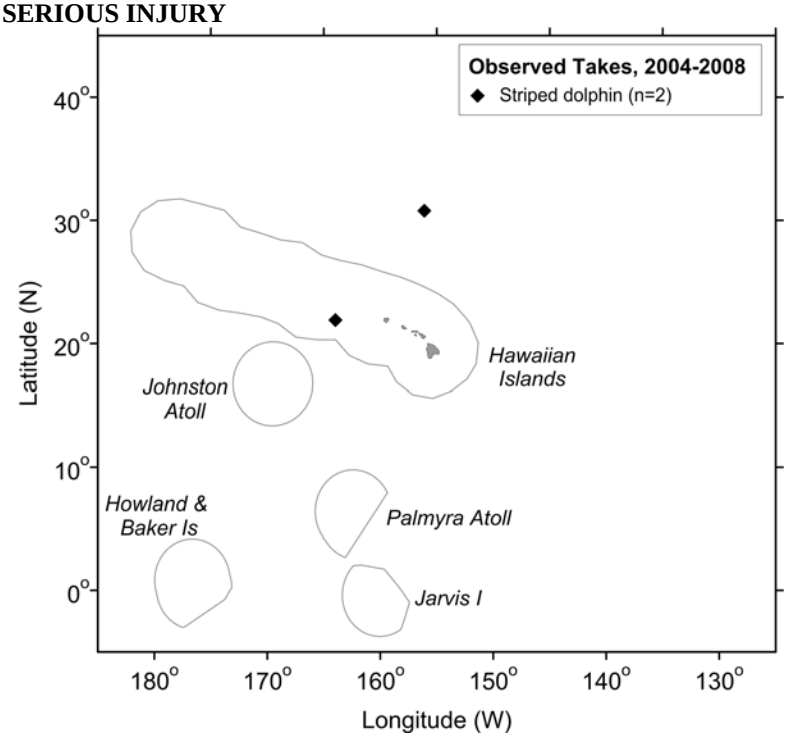


Figure 2. Locations of striped dolphin takes (filled diamonds) in Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008 Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZs. Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether striped dolphins are involved.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of striped dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Hawaiian stock of striped dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because

the estimated rate of fisheries related mortality and serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (0.9 animals per year) is less than the PBR (82). ~~given the absence of reported fisheries related mortality.~~ ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total~~ Total fishery mortality and serious injury for striped dolphins ~~is~~ can be considered insignificant and approaching zero ~~mortality and serious injury rate~~, because the average annual takes are less than 10% of the PBR.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of striped dolphin (Hawaii stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of U.S. EEZs (McCracken & Forney 2010). Mean annual takes are based on 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)	0 0 1 0 0	0 (-) 0 ((-) 5 (0.3) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0.9 (0.6)
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 0 0 0 1	Same as observed	0.2	0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0	0
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									0.9 (0.6)

REFERENCES

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Dizon, A. E., W. F. Perrin, and P. A. Akin. 1994. Stocks of dolphins *(Stenella* spp. and *Delphinus delphis*) in the eastern tropical Pacific: a phylogeographic classification. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 119, 20 pp.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994_2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Kishiro, T. and T. Kasuya. 1993. Review of Japanese dolphin drive fisheries and their status. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:439-452.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

McCracken M. and K.A. Forney 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell

(eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994~~a~~. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

~~Perrin, W. F., C. E. Wilson, and F. I. Archer, II. 1994b. Striped dolphin *Stenella coeruleoalba* (Meyen, 1833). *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol.5: The First Book of Dolphins, pp 129-159. Academic Press, 416 pp.~~

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

FRASER'S DOLPHIN (*Lagenodelphis hosei*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Fraser's dolphins are distributed worldwide in tropical waters (~~Perrin et al. 1994b~~ Perrin et al. 2009). They have only recently been documented within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands, during a 2002 cetacean survey (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006, Figure 1). No strandings of Fraser's dolphins have been documented in the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there is a single Pacific management stock including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).~~only animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands.~~

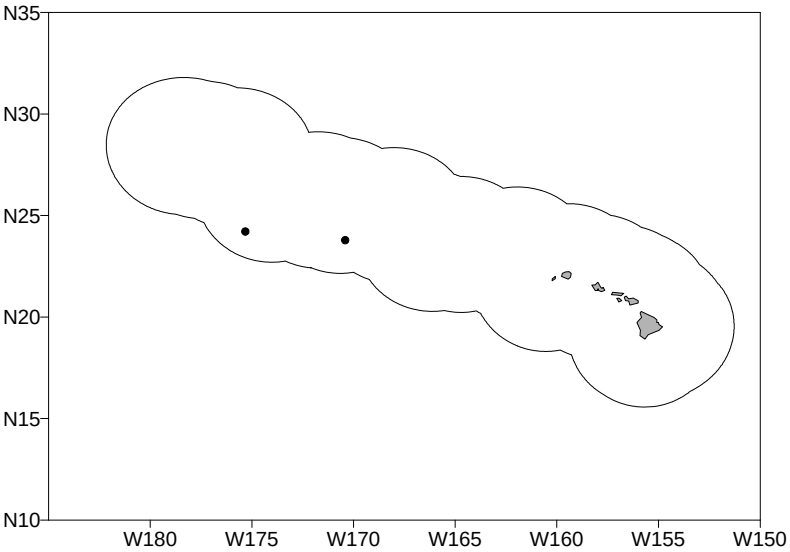


Figure 1. Fraser's dolphin sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

Population estimates for Fraser's dolphins have been made in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands and in the central North Pacific. ~~No sightings of this species were made during twelve aerial surveys, conducted as part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998 (Mobley et al. 2000).~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~16,836 (CV=1.11)~~ 10,226 (CV=1.16) Fraser's dolphins (Barlow ~~2003~~2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~7,917~~ 4,700 Fraser's dolphins.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for the Hawaiian stock of Fraser's dolphin.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock of Fraser's dolphin is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~7,917~~ 4,700) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status

with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~79~~ 47 Fraser's dolphins per year.

HUMAN CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994~~a~~). Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993), but none of these interactions are known to have involved Fraser's dolphins. ~~None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no Fraser's dolphins were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010).

Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether Fraser's dolphins are involved.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Fraser's dolphins in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of Fraser's dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for Fraser's dolphins is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries, the Hawaiian stock of Fraser's dolphins is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero.

REFERENCES

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994–2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and~~

~~abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994~~a~~. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

~~Perrin, W.F., S. Leatherwood and A. Collet. 1994b. Fraser's dolphin *Lagenodelphis hosei* (Fraser 1956). Pages 225-240 *In:* S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds) Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 5: The first book of dolphins. Academic Press, London. 416 pp.~~

Perrin, W.F., B. Wursig and J.G.M. Thewissen. 2009. Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals. Second Edition. Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

MELON-HEADED WHALE (*Peponocephala electra*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Melon-headed whales are found in tropical and warm-temperate waters throughout the world. The distribution of reported sightings suggests that the oceanic habitat of this species is primarily equatorial waters (Perryman et al. 1994). Small numbers have been taken in the eastern tropical Pacific, and they are occasionally killed in direct fisheries in Japan and elsewhere in the western Pacific. Large herds are seen regularly in Hawaiian waters, especially off the Waianae coast of Oahu, the north Kohala coast of Hawaii, and the leeward coast of Lanai (Shallenberger 1981). A comprehensive shipboard survey of the Hawaiian Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), resulted in only one sighting of melon-headed whales (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). Inter-island movements from Kauai to Hawaii have been documented and genetic samples from at least 82 animals are available for future stock structure analyses (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.). Little is known about this species elsewhere in its range, and most knowledge about its biology comes from mass strandings (Perryman et al. 1994). Fourteen strandings are known from Hawaii (Nishiwaki and Norris 1966; Shallenberger 1981; Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there is a single Pacific management stock including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005). ~~only animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands.~~

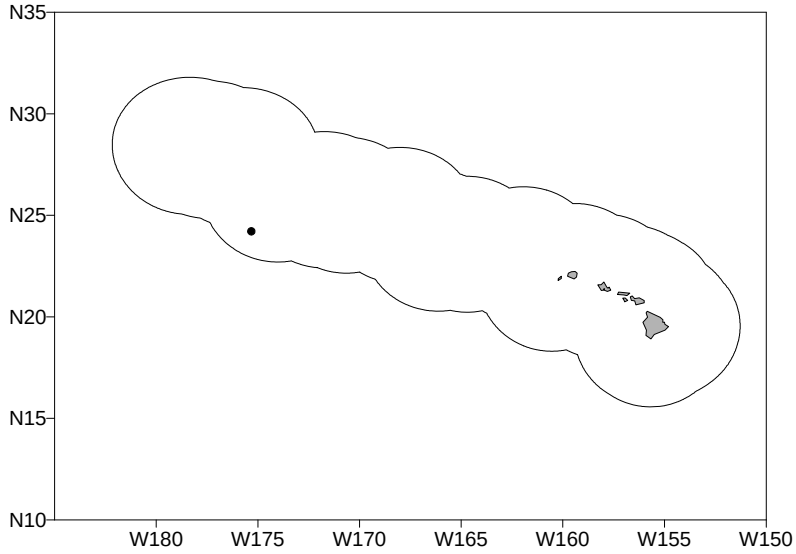


Figure 1. Melon-headed whale sighting location during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

An abundance estimate of melon-headed whales is available for the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether any of these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 154 (CV=0.88) melon-headed whales was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This study underestimated the total number of melon-headed whales within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~2,947 (CV=1.11)~~ 2,950 (CV=1.17) melon-headed whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~1,386~~ 1,350 melon-headed whales in the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~1,386~~ 1,350) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 14 melon-headed whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993), but no interactions with melon-headed whales have been documented. ~~None were observed hooked in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no melon-headed whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010). Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether melon-headed whales are involved.

Other Mortality

In recent years, there has been increasing concern that loud underwater sounds, such as active sonar and seismic operations, may be harmful to beaked whales (Cox et al. 2006) and other cetaceans, including melon-headed whales (Southall et al. 2006) and pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuata*) (Wang and Yang 2006). The use of active sonar from military vessels has been implicated in mass strandings of beaked whales and recent mass-stranding reports suggest some delphinids may be impacted as well. A 2004 mass-stranding of melon-headed whales in Hanalei Bay, Kauai occurred during a multi-national sonar training event around Hawaii (Southall et al. 2006). Although data limitations preclude a conclusive finding regarding the role of Navy sonar in triggering this event, sonar transmissions were considered a plausible, if not likely cause of the mass stranding based on the spatiotemporal link between the sonar exercises and the stranding, the direction of movement of the transmitting vessels near Hanalei Bay, and propagation modeling suggesting the sonar transmissions would have been audible at the mouth of Hanalei Bay (Southall et al 2006; Brownell et al. 2009). Additional research on the behavioral response of delphinids in the presence of sonar transmissions is needed in order to understand the level of impact. No estimates of potential mortality or serious injury are available for U.S. waters.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of melon-headed whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries, the Hawaiian stock of melon-headed whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~The Hawaiian stock of melon-headed whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA given the absence of reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery~~

~~mortality and serious injury for melon-headed whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~

REFERENCES

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Brownell, R.L, Jr., K. Ralls, S. Baumann-Pickering, and M.M. Poole. 2009. Behavior of melon-headed whales, *Peponocephala electra*, near oceanic islands. Marine Mammal Science 25(3):639-658.

Cox, T.M., T.J. Ragen, A.J. Read, E. Vos, R.W. Baird, K. Balcomb, J. Barlow, J. Caldwell, T. Cranford, L. Crum, A. D'Amico, G. D'Spain, A. Fernandez, J. Finneran, R. Gentry, W. Gerth, F. Gulland, J.A. Hildebrand, D. Houser, T. Hullar, P.D. Jepson, D. Ketten, C.D. Macleod, P. Miller, S. Moore, D. Mountain, D. Palka, P. Ponganis, S. Rommel, T. Rowles, B. Taylor, P. Tyack, D. Wartzok, R. Gisiner, J. Mead, and L. Brenner. 2006. Understanding the impacts of anthropogenic sound on beaked whales. J.Cetacean Res. Manag. 7: 177-187.

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23:11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nishiwaki, M. and K. S. Norris. 1966. A new genus, *Peponocephala*, for the odontocete cetacean species *Electra electra*. Sci. Rep. Whales Res. Inst. 20:95-100.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Perryman, W. L., D. W. K. Au, S. Leatherwood, and T. A. Jefferson. 1994. Melon-headed whale *Peponocephala electra* Gray, 1846. *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol.5: The First Book of Dolphins, pp. 363-386. Academic Press, 416 pp.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Southall, B. R. Braun, F.M.D. Gulland, A.D. Heard, R.W. Baird, S.M. Wilkin, T.K. Rowles. 2006. Hawaiian melon-headed whale (*Peponocephala electra*) mass stranding event of July 3-4, 2004. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-31. 73 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Wang, J.Y., and S.-C. Yang. 2006. Unusual cetacean stranding events in Chinese waters in early 2004 and 2005. J. Cetacean Res. and Manag. 8:283-292.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

PYGMY KILLER WHALE (*Feresa attenuata*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Pygmy killer whales are found in tropical and subtropical waters throughout the world (Ross and Leatherwood 1994). They are poorly known in most parts of their range. Small numbers have been taken directly and incidentally in both the western and eastern Pacific. Most knowledge of this species is from stranded or live-captured specimens. Pryor et al. (1965) stated that pygmy killer whales have been observed several times off the lee shore of Oahu, and that "they seem to be regular residents of the Hawaiian area." Although all sightings up to that time had been off Oahu and the Big Island, Shallenberger (1981) stated that this species might be found elsewhere in Hawaii, as well. ~~No pygmy killer whales were seen during 1993-98 aerial surveys within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000).~~ Three sightings of pygmy killer whales were made during a 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). Six strandings have been documented from Maui and the island of Hawaii (Nitta 1991, Maldini et al. 2005). A 22-year study off the island of Hawaii suggested this species is relatively rare (1.2% of all sightings), yet occurs year-round and in stable groups. High resighting rates suggest a small-island associated population off the island of Hawaii (McSweeney *et al*. 2008), which may warrant division of this population into a separate island-assocaited stock in the future. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there is a single Pacific management stock including animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters. Because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005). ~~only animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands.~~

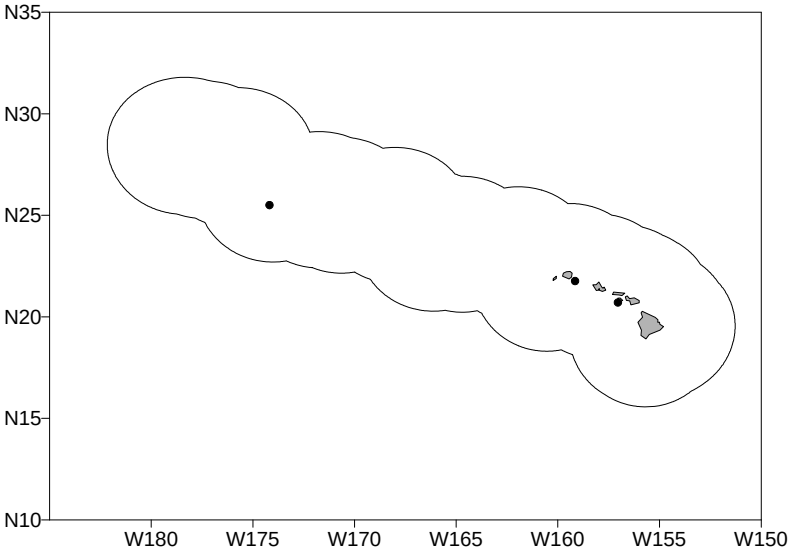


Figure 1. Pygmy killer whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

A population estimate has been made for this species in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether any of these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998 (Mobley et al. 2000), but there were no sightings of pygmy killer whales.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~817 (CV=1.12)~~ 956 (CV=0.83)pygmy killer whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~382~~ 520 pygmy killer whales within the Hawaiian EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~382~~ 520) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~3.8~~ 5.2 pygmy killer whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993), but no interactions with pygmy killer whales have been documented. ~~None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no pygmy killer whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010). Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins ~~who~~ that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether pygmy killer whales are involved.

Other Mortality

In recent years, there has been increasing concern that loud underwater sounds, such as active sonar and seismic operations, may be harmful to beaked whales (Cox et al. 2006) and other cetaceans, including melon-headed whales (Southall et al. 2006, Brownell et al. 2009) and pygmy killer whales (Wang and Yang 2006). The use of active sonar from military vessels has been implicated in mass strandings of beaked whales, and recent mass-stranding reports suggest some delphinids may be impacted as well. Two mass-strandings of pygmy killer whales occurred in the coastal areas of southwest Taiwan in February 2005, possibly associated with offshore naval training exercises (Wang and Yang 2006). A necropsy of one of the pygmy killer whales revealed hemorrhaging in the cranial tissues of the animal. Additional research on the behavioral response of delphinids in the presence of sonar transmissions is needed in order to understand the level of impact. No estimates of potential mortality or serious injury are available for U.S. waters.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of pygmy killer whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. This species is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries, the Hawaiian stock of pygmy killer whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~The Hawaiian stock of pygmy killer whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA given the absence of reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for pygmy killer whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~

REFERENCES

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Brownell, R.L, Jr., K. Ralls, S. Baumann-Pickering, and M.M. Poole. 2009. Behavior of melon-headed whales, *Peponocephala electra*, near oceanic islands. Marine Mammal Science 25(3):639-658.

Cox, T.M., T.J. Ragen, A.J. Read, E. Vos, R.W. Baird, K. Balcomb, J. Barlow, J. Caldwell, T. Cranford, L. Crum, A. D'Amico, G. D'Spain, A. Fernandez, J. Finneran, R. Gentry, W. Gerth, F. Gulland, J.A. Hildebrand, D. Houser, T. Hullar, P.D. Jepson, D. Ketten, C.D. Macleod, P. Miller, S. Moore, D. Mountain, D. Palka, P. Ponganis, S. Rommel, T. Rowles, B. Taylor, P. Tyack, D. Wartzok, R. Gisiner, J. Mead, and L. Brenner. 2006. Understanding the impacts of anthropogenic sound on beaked whales. J.Cetacean Res. Manag. 7: 177-187.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

McSweeney, D.J., R.W. Baird, S.D.Mahaffy, D.L. Webster, and G.S. Schorr. 2008. Site fidelity and association patterns of a rare species: Pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuate*) in the main Hawaiian Islands. Marine Mammal Science 25(4): 557-572.

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Pryor, T., K. Pryor and K. S. Norris. 1965. Observations on a pygmy killer whale (*Feresa attenuata* Gray) from Hawaii. J. Mamm. 46:450-461.

Ross, G. J. B. and S. Leatherwood. 1994. Pygmy killer whale *Feresa attenuata* Gray, 1874. *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol.5: The First Book of Dolphins, pp.387-404. Academic Press, 416 pp.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Southall, B. R. Braun, F.M.D. Gulland, A.D. Heard, R.W. Baird, S.M. Wilkin, T.K. Rowles. 2006. Hawaiian melon-headed whale (*Peponocephala electra*) mass stranding event of July 3-4, 2004. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-31. 73 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical

Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.
Wang, J.Y., and S.-C. Yang. 2006. Unusual cetacean stranding events in Chinese waters in early 2004 and 2005. J. Cetacean Res. and Manag. 8:283-292.

Revised ~~10/10/2009~~ 05/17/2010

FALSE KILLER WHALE (*Pseudorca crassidens*): Pacific Islands Region Stock Complex - Hawaii Insular, Hawaii Pelagic, and Palmyra Atoll Stocks

STOCK DEFINITIONS AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGES

False killer whales are found worldwide mainly in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Stacey et al. 1994). In the North Pacific, this species is well known from southern Japan, Hawaii, and the eastern tropical Pacific. There are six stranding records from Hawaiian waters (Nitta 1991; Maldini 2005). One on-effort sighting of false killer whales was made during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow 2006). Smaller-scale surveys conducted around the main Hawaiian Islands (Figure 2) show that false killer whales are also encountered in nearshore waters (Baird et al. 2005, Mobley et al. 2000, Mobley 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004). This species also occurs in U.S. EEZ waters around Palmyra Atoll (Figure 1), ~~and sightings of false killer whales have been recently confirmed within the~~ Johnston Atoll ~~EEZ~~ (NMFS/PIR/PSD unpublished data), and ~~the U.S. EEZ waters of~~ American Samoa (Johnston et al. 2008, Oleson 2009).

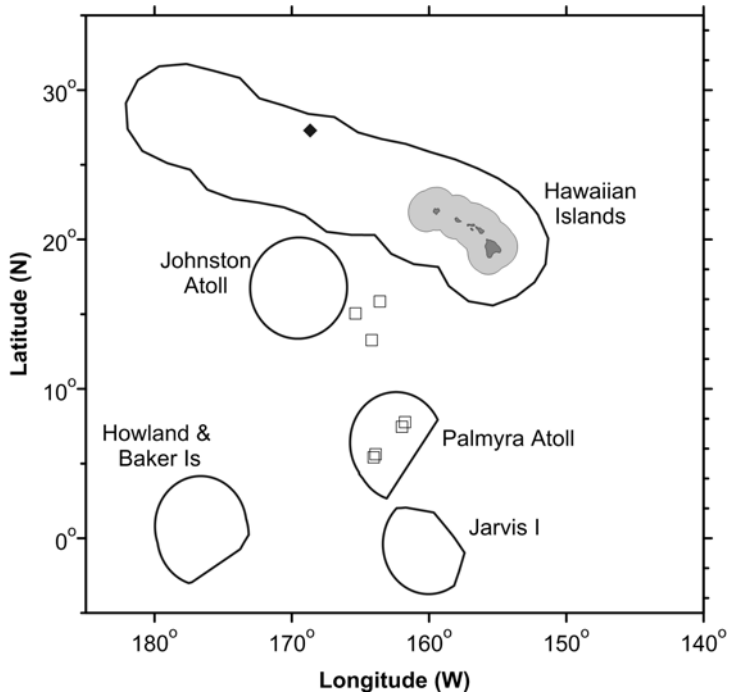


Figure 1. False killer whale sighting locations during standardized shipboard surveys of the Hawaiian U.S. EEZ (2002, black diamond, Barlow 2006), the Palmyra U.S. EEZ and pelagic waters of the central Pacific south of the Hawaiian Islands (2005, open squares, Barlow and Rankin 2007). Outer lines represent approximate boundary of U.S. EEZs; shaded gray area is the insular false killer whale stock area, including overlap zone between insular and pelagic false killer whale stocks ~~the February - September longline exclusion zone around the main Hawaiian Islands, proposed as a false killer whale stock boundary~~.

Genetic analyses of tissue samples collected within the Eastern North Pacific (ENP) indicate restricted gene flow between false killer whales sampled near the main Hawaiian Islands and false killer whales sampled in all other regions of the ENP (Chivers et al. 2007). Since 2003, observers of the Hawaii-based longline fishery have also been collecting tissue samples of caught cetaceans for genetic analysis whenever possible. ~~Four~~ Between 2003 and 2008, five false killer whale samples, ~~two~~ three collected outside the Hawaiian EEZ and two collected within the EEZ but more than 100 nautical miles (185km) from the main Hawaiian Islands (see Figure 3), were determined to have ENP-like haplotypes. ~~The latter two samples indicate that false killer whales within the Hawaiian EEZ belong to two different genetic populations, with a boundary somewhere within the Hawaiian EEZ.~~ Based on sighting locations and results of the genetic analyses ~~of tissue samples~~, Chivers et al. (2008) suggested implementing a stock boundary coincident with the longline exclusion zone, which is at about 75 nmi (139 km) ~~distance~~ from the main Hawaiian Islands, until more information is available about the ecology of false killer whales, and especially the movement patterns of the insular stock animals.

For the 2008-2009 stock assessment reports, a provisional stock boundary for insular and pelagic stocks of false killer whales was recognized as the February-September longline exclusion boundary (at roughly 75 miles from the islands), with the expectation that this boundary would be refined as additional studies of false killer whale movements became available. Recent satellite telemetry studies, boat-based surveys, and photo-identification analyses of false killer whales around Hawaii have demonstrated that these two stocks have overlapping ranges, rather than a clear separation in distribution. Insular false killer whales have been documented as far as 100 km from the main Hawaiian islands, and pelagic stock animals have been documented as close as 42 km to the islands

(Baird et al. 2008, Baird 2009, Baird et al. 2010). Based on a review of new information (Forney et al. 2010), this stock assessment report recognizes a new, overlapping stock structure for insular and pelagic stocks of false killer whales around Hawaii: animals within 40 km of the main Hawaiian Islands are considered to belong to the insular stock; animals beyond 140 km of the main Hawaiian Islands are considered to belong to the pelagic stock, and the two stocks overlap between 40 km and 140 km from shore (Figure 1).

This report also clarifies that the pelagic stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on false killer whale abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005). The Palmyra Atoll stock of false killer whales remains a separate stock, because comparisons amongst false killer whales sampled at Palmyra Atoll and those sampled from the insular stock of Hawaii and the pelagic ENP revealed restricted gene flow, although the sample size remains low for robust comparisons (Chivers et al. 2007). NMFS will continue to obtain and analyze additional tissue samples for genetic studies of stock structure, and will evaluate new information on stock ranges as it becomes available. ~~This corresponds roughly to the February-September longline exclusion area (Figure 1), which is provisionally applied as a stock boundary in this report, to recognize insular and pelagic false killer whales as separate stocks for management (NMFS 2005). This boundary may be revised in the future as additional information becomes available. For example, recent satellite telemetry studies, boat-based surveys, and photo-identification analyses of false killer whales around the island of Hawaii (Baird et al. 2008a,b) yielded a maximum offshore extent of about 96km (52 nmi) for insular false killer whales. Animals belonging to the pelagic stock of false killer whales have been documented 42-70km (23-38 nmi) offshore (Baird et al. 2008b, c).These studies provide the first movement data for animals from both stocks, but sample sizes are small and the results are not yet sufficient for revising stock boundaries. NMFS will continue to evaluate new information on stock ranges as it becomes available. Comparisons amongst false killer whales sampled at Palmyra Atoll and those sampled in the waters of the pelagic ENP, Panama and Mexico also reveal some level of restricted gene flow, although the sample size remains low for robust comparisons (Chivers et al. 2007). Efforts are currently underway to obtain and analyze additional tissue samples of false killer whales for further studies of population structure in the North Pacific Ocean.~~

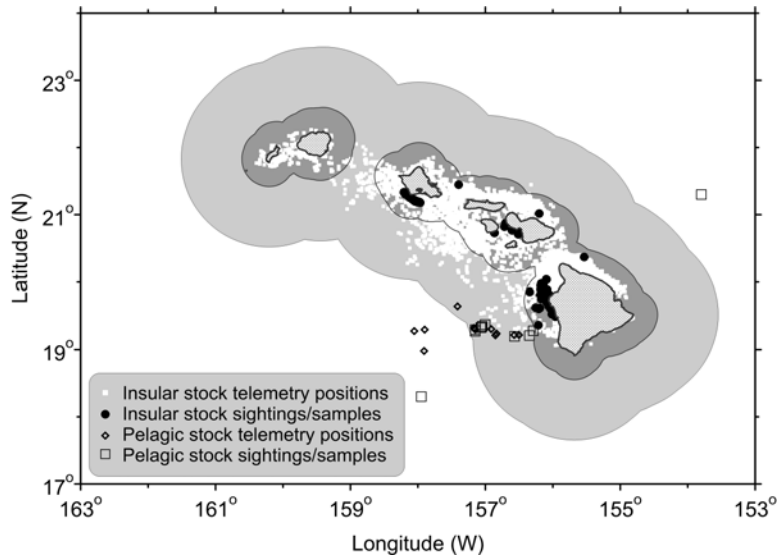


Figure 2. ~~False killer whale sighting locations during 2000-2004 boat-based surveys (+) (Baird et al. 2005) and 1993-2003 aerial surveys (•) (Mobley et al. 2000, Mobley 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004) around the main Hawaiian Islands. See Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort.~~ Sighting, biopsy, and telemetry records of false killer whales identified as being from insular (closed symbols) vs. pelagic (open symbols) stocks. The dark gray area is the 40-km insular stock core area; light gray area is the 40-km to 140-km overlap zone (Baird et al. 2010; Baird, unpublished data; reproduced from Forney et al. 2010).

For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there are currently ~~three~~ four Pacific Islands Region management stocks (Chivers et al. 2008): 1) the Hawaii insular stock, which includes animals inhabiting waters within ~~the February-September longline exclusion zone around~~ 140 km (approx. 75 nmi) of the main Hawaiian Islands, and 2) the Hawaii pelagic stock, which includes false killer whales inhabiting waters greater than 40 km (22 nmi) from the main Hawaiian Islands, ~~the waters of the U.S. EEZ of Hawaii outside of the February-September longline exclusion zone around the main Hawaiian Islands, and~~ 3) the Palmyra Atoll stock, which includes false killer whales found within the U.S. EEZ of Palmyra Atoll, and 4) the American Samoa stock, which includes false killer whales found within the U.S. EEZ of American Samoa. Estimates of abundance, potential biological removal, and status determinations for ~~these~~ the first three stocks are presented ~~separately~~ below; the American Samoa Stock is covered in a separate report.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for Hawaiian pelagic fisheries, and false killer whales have

been identified in fishermen's logs and NMFS observer records as taking catches from pelagic longlines (Nitta and Henderson 1993, NMFS/PIR unpublished data). False killer whales ~~They~~ have also been observed feeding on mahi mahi, *Coryphaena hippurus*, and yellowfin tuna, *Thunnus albacares*, and they have been reported to take large fish (up to 70 pounds) from the trolling lines of both commercial and recreational fishermen (Shallenberger 1981). There are anecdotal reports of interactions with marine mammals in the commercial Hawaii shortline fishery, which was developed to target bigeye tuna, *Thunnus obesus,* and lustrous pomfret, *Eumegistus illustris,* at Cross Seamount and may also set gear around the main Hawaiian Islands. Fishing is permitted through the State of Hawaii Commercial Marine License program, and until recently there were no reporting systems in place to document marine mammal interactions. This fishery was added to the 2010 List of Fisheries as a Category II fishery (Federal Register Vol. 74, No. 219, p. 58859-58901, November 16, 2009), and efforts are underway to obtain further information on the extent of interactions between shortlines and marine mammals and to document the species involved. Baird and Gorgone (2005) documented a high rate of dorsal fin disfigurements that were consistent with injuries from unidentified fishing line for false killer whales belonging to the insular stock. At the present time, however, it is unknown whether these injuries might have been caused by longline gear, shortline gear, or other hook-and-line gear used around the main Hawaiian Islands.

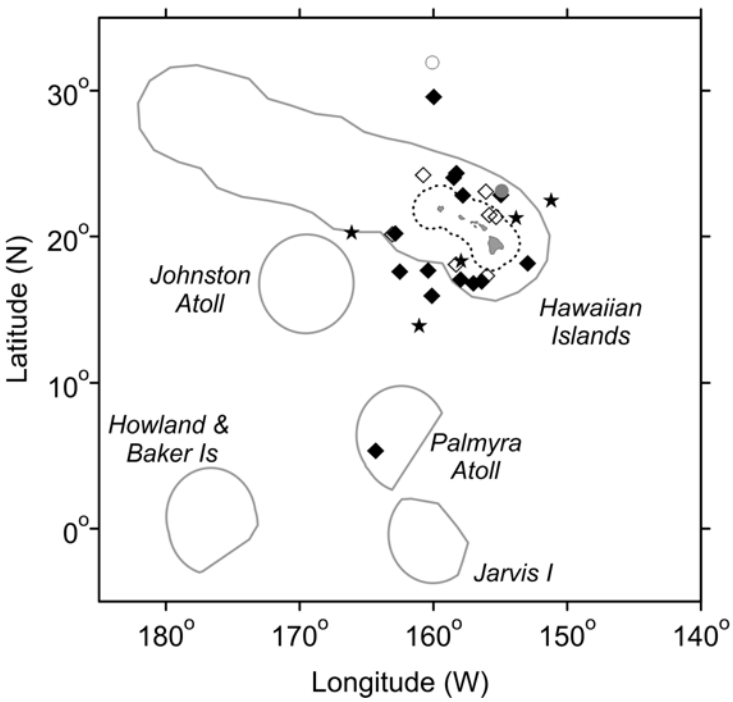


Figure 3. Locations of observed false killer whale takes (filled symbols) and possible takes of this species (open symbols) in the Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008 ~~fishery, 2002-2006~~. Deep-set fishery takes are shown in black; shallow-set fishery takes are shown in gray. Stars are locations of genetic samples from fishery-caught false killer whales. Solid gray lines represent the U.S. EEZ; the dotted line is the outer (140-km) boundary of the overlap zone between insular and pelagic false killer whale stocks. ~~shaded gray area is the February-September longline exclusion boundary around the main Hawaiian Islands. Set locations in this fishery are summarized~~ Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

There are two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas, within the ranges of both insular and pelagic stocks. Between 2004 and 2008, one false killer whale was observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands, and 19 false killer whales were observed taken in the DSLL fishery (≥20% observer coverage) (Forney 2009). Two of the false killer whale takes in the DSLL fishery in Hawaiian EEZ waters resulted in the death of the animal. Based on an evaluation of the observer's description of each interaction and following the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Andersen et al. 2008), the single animal taken in the SSLL fishery was considered not seriously injured. In the DSLL fishery, one false killer whale taken within the range of the insular stock, one taken in Hawaiian waters within the range of the pelagic stock, and one taken in international waters were considered not seriously injured. The remaining 15 false killer whales (six in international waters, seven in the Hawaiian Islands EEZ pelagic stock range, and one in the EEZ of Palmyra Atoll) were considered seriously injured (Forney 2009). Eight additional unidentified cetaceans that may have been false killer whales were also seriously injured during 2004-2008 (Forney 2009). Seven of these were taken in the DSLL fishery within U.S. EEZ waters, including two animals within the insular stock range, and one was taken in the SSLL fishery in international waters (Figure 3).

~~Following implementation of regulations to protect sea turtles and seabirds in the SSLL fishery in 2004, no false killer whales have been observed hooked or entangled through the end of 2007, with 100% observer coverage (Forney and Kobayashi, 2007, Forney and McCracken 2008, McCracken and Forney 2008). Between 1994 and~~

~~2007, 24 false killer whales and fifteen unidentified cetaceans that may have been false killer whales (based on the observer's descriptions), have been documented hooked or entangled in the DSLL fishery. In the most recent five years (2003-2007), with 20-28% observer coverage in the DSLL fishery, 14 false killer whale mortalities and serious injuries were documented in 18,848 observed sets (a rate of 0.74 per 1000 sets). Estimates of overall mortality and serious injury for false killer whales, by EEZ, are shown in Table 1.~~

The total observed mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in the SSLL fishery (with 100% coverage), and the estimated annual and 5-yr average mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in the DSLL fishery are reported by McCracken and Forney (2010). Their methodology includes prorating all estimated takes of false killer whales based on the proportions of observed interactions that resulted in death or serious injury (89%), or non-serious injury (11%). Further, takes of false killer whales of unknown stock origin within the insular/pelagic stock overlap zone are prorated based on the density of each stock in that area. No genetic samples are available to establish stock identity for these takes, but both stocks are considered at risk of interacting with longline gear within this region. The pelagic stock is known to interact with longline fisheries in waters offshore of the overlap zone based on two genetic samples obtained by fishery observers (Chivers et al. 2008). Insular false killer whales have been documented via telemetry to move sufficiently far offshore (112 km) to reach longline fishing areas, and animals from this stock have a high rate of dorsal fin disfigurements consistent with injuries from unidentified fishing line (Baird and Gorgone 2005). Based on these considerations, and as outlined in the NMFS Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks (NMFS 2005), bycatch within the overlap zone has been prorated based on the estimated densities of each stock (McCracken and Forney 2010). This introduces an additional element of uncertainty into the bycatch estimates, but until methods of determining stock identity for animals observed taken within the overlap zone are available (e.g., photos, tissue samples), this approach ensures that potential impacts to both stocks are assessed.

Based on these bycatch analyses, estimates of annual and 5-yr average annual mortality and serious injury of false killer whales, by stock and EEZ area, are shown in Table 1. Estimates of mortality and serious injury do not include any of the unidentified animals that may have been false killer whales and are therefore minimum estimates. Efforts are currently underway to develop methods of prorating the unidentified animals by species and stock, taking into account geographic differences in their ranges and observed rates of documented interactions with each species.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of false killer whales (Pacific Islands Stock Complex) in commercial fisheries, by stock and EEZ area, as applicable (McCracken and Forney 2010). Mean annual takes are based on 2004-2008 estimates unless otherwise indicated. Information on all observed mortalities (M), serious injuries (SI) and non-serious injuries (NSI) is included, because total takes were prorated to mortalities, serious injuries, and non-serious injuries based on the observed proportions of each outcome (see McCracken and Forney 2010 for details).

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed mortalities (M), serious injuries (SI) and non-serious injuries (NSI), and total estimated mortality and serious injury (M&SI) of false killer whales by stock / EEZ region							
				Hawaii Pelagic Stock				**Hawaii Insular Stock**		**Palmyra Atoll Stock**	
				Outside of U.S. EEZs		Hawaiian Islands EEZ					
				Obs. M/SI/NSI	Estimated M&SI (CV)	Obs. M/SI/NSI	Estimated M&SI (CV)	Obs. M/SI/NSI	Estimated M&SI (CV)	Obs. M/SI/NSI	Estimated M&SI (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004	Observer data	25%	0/3/0	13 (0.4)	1/2/0	12 (0.3)	0/0/0	0 (-)	0/0/0	0 (-)
	2005		28%	0/1/0	3 (1.6)	1/0/0	3 (1.9)	0/0/0	0 (-)	0/0/0	0 (-)
	2006		22%	0/2/0	8 (0.7)	0/1/1*	3 (1.7)	0/0/1*	3 (0.7)	0/0/0	0 (-)
	2007		20%	0/0/1	2 (3.7)	0/1/1	8 (0.8)	0/0/0	0 (-)	0/1/0	2 (0.7)
	2008		22%	0/0/0	0 (-)	0/3/1	11 (0.4)	0/0/0	0 (-)	0/0/0	0 (-)
Mean Estimated Annual Takes (CV)					**5.3 (0.5)**		**7.3 (0.3)**		**0.6 (1.3)**		**0.3 (1.3)**
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004	Observer data	100%	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0	No fishing effort	
	2005		100%	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0		
	2006		100%	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0		
	2007		100%	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0	0/0/0	0		
	2008		100%	0/0/0	0	0/0/1	0	0/0/0	0		
Mean Annual Takes (100% coverage)					**0**		**0**		**0**		
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZs				**7.3 (0.3)**				**0.6 (1.3)**		**0.3 (1.3)**	

* The single NSI take within insular/pelagic stock overlap zone is shown once for each stock, but total estimates derived from this take are prorated by stock based on insular/pelagic false killer whale densities within the overlap zone (see text above, and McCracken and Forney 2010).

~~Information on stock identity of false killer whales that interact with the DSLL fishery in EEZ waters of Hawaii is limited. Six of the eight 2003-2007 false killer whales taken within Hawaiian Islands EEZ waters were within the range of the Hawaii Pelagic Stock, and the remaining two occurred at an unspecified location during sets that straddled the Insular/Pelagic Stock boundary at about 75nmi from shore. Two genetic samples obtained from~~

~~animals hooked or entangled in the longline fishery within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ were determined to be from the Pelagic Stock (S. Chivers, NMFS unpublished data; Figure 3). Based on these results, the estimated takes of false killer whales are provisionally considered to have come from the Hawaii Pelagic Stock. However, from October to January, a small subset of longline fishing effort takes place within the current stock range of the Hawaiian Insular Stock, and Baird and Gorgone (2005) documented a high rate of dorsal fin disfigurements, which were consistent with injuries from unidentified fishing line. At the present time, it is unknown whether these injuries might have been caused by longline gear or other hook and line gear used around the main Hawaiian Islands. Additional research is needed to evaluate potential overlap between the insular false killer whale stock and line fisheries and to determine whether any of the estimated false killer whale takes in the longline fishery might have involved the Hawaiian Insular Stock.~~

~~**Table 1.** Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of false killer whales (Pacific Islands Stock Complex) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of selected U.S. EEZs (Forney and McCracken 2008, McCracken and Forney 2008). Mean annual takes are based on 2003-2007 data unless otherwise indicated.~~

~~Fishery Name~~	~~Year~~	~~Data Type~~	~~Percent Observer Coverage~~	~~Observed and estimated mortality and serious injury of false killer whales, by EEZ region~~								
				~~Outside of U.S. EEZs~~			~~Hawaiian Islands EEZ~~ [1]			~~Palmyra Atoll EEZ~~		
				~~Obs.~~	~~Estimated (CV)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV)~~	~~Obs.~~	~~Estimated (CV)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV)~~	~~Obs.~~	~~Estimated (CV)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV)~~
~~**Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery**~~	~~2003~~	~~observer data~~	~~22%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~5.4 (0.45)~~	~~2~~	~~7 (0.83)~~	~~7.4 (0.19)~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0.3 (1.01)~~
	~~2004~~		~~25%~~	~~3~~	~~14 (0.43)~~		~~3~~	~~12 (0.46)~~		~~0~~	~~0~~	
	~~2005~~		~~28%~~	~~1~~	~~3 (2.76)~~		~~1~~	~~3 (3.16)~~		~~0~~	~~0~~	
	~~2006~~		~~22%~~	~~1~~	~~7 (1.42)~~		~~1~~	~~7 (1.84)~~		~~0~~	~~0~~	
	~~2007~~		~~20%~~	~~0~~	~~3 (6.50)~~		~~1~~	~~8 (1.98)~~		~~1~~	~~2 (5.50)~~	
~~**Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery**~~	~~2003~~	~~observer data~~	~~no fishing~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~0~~
	~~2004~~		~~100%~~	~~0~~								
	~~2005~~		~~100%~~	~~0~~								
	~~2006~~		~~100%~~	~~0~~								
	~~2007~~		~~100%~~	~~0~~								
~~**Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters**~~							~~**7.7 (0.19)**~~					

~~[1] All false killer whales taken by the Hawaii longline fisheries within the Hawaiian EEZ were within the stock range of the Hawaii Pelagic Stock or straddling the insular/pelagic stock boundary, and genetic analyses for the two available samples indicated these animals were part of the Hawaii Pelagic Stock. All Hawaiian Islands EEZ takes of false killer whales are, therefore, provisionally considered to be from the Hawaii Pelagic Stock; however, there is potential for overlap between insular false killer whales and the longline fishery and further study is needed (see text above).~~

HAWAII INSULAR STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

A mark-recapture study of photo-identification data obtained during 2000-2004 around the main Hawaiian Islands produced an estimate of 123 (CV=0.72) insular false killer whales (Baird et al. 2005). ~~This updates an estimate of 121 (CV=0.47) made by Mobley et al. (2000) based on 1994-1998 aerial surveys. Both estimates apply only to Hawaii insular stock because surveys were conducted within 75 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands.~~

Minimum Population Estimate

The minimum population estimate for the ~~Hawaii~~ insular stock false killer whales is the number of distinct individuals identified in this population during the 2002-2004 photo-identification studies, 76 individuals (Baird et al. 2005). This is similar to the log-normal 20th percentile of the mark-recapture abundance estimate, 71 false killer whales.

Current Population Trend

A recent study (Reeves et al. 2009) summarized information on false killer whale sightings near Hawaii between 1989 and 2007, based on various survey methods, and suggested that the insular stock of false killer whales may have declined during the last two decades. ~~However, because of differences in survey methods, no quantitative analysis of the sightings data and population trend has been made.~~ More recently, Baird (2009) reviewed trends in sighting rates of false killer whales from aerial surveys conducted using consistent methodology around the main Hawaiian Islands between 1994 and 2003 (Mobley et al. 2000, Mobley 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004). Sighting rates during these surveys exhibited a statistically significant decline that could not be attributed to any weather or methodological changes.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the insular ~~Hawaii~~ false killer whale stock is calculated as the minimum population size (76) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.50~~ 0.40 (for a stock of unknown status with ~~no documented human-caused mortality and serious injury;~~ a human-caused mortality and serious injury rate CV>0.80 ~~CV>0.30~~; see Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~0.8~~ 0.61 false killer whales per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status relative to OSP of false killer whales belonging to the ~~Hawaii~~ insular stock ~~insular Hawaiian waters (within 75 nmi)~~ ~~relative to OSP~~ is unknown, although this stock appears to have declined during the past two decades (Reeves et al. 2009; Baird 2009; Chivers et al. 2010). ~~Reeves et al. (2009) suggested that this population may have declined since the late 1980s; however, there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance quantitatively.~~ A recent study (Ylitalo et al. 2008) documented elevated levels of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) in three of nine insular false killer whales sampled, and biomass of some false killer whale prey species ~~has~~ may have declined around the main Hawaiian Islands (Boggs & Ito 1993, Reeves et al. 2009). False killer whales are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. In September 2009, a petition was submitted to NMFS to list the Hawaiian insular false killer whale stock as an endangered species under the ESA, and NMFS has initiated a status review to determine if such a listing is warranted. The estimated average annual human-caused mortality and serious injury for this stock (0.60 animals per year) is slightly less than the PBR (0.61); therefore, the insular false killer whale ~~. This~~ stock is not considered "strategic" under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA. ~~because there has been no documented human-caused mortality or serious injury of false killer whales belonging to the Hawaii Insular Stock. However, a high incidence of fin disfigurements in this stock (Baird and Gorgone 2005) indicates that interactions with unidentified line fisheries may be of concern, and the stock range includes an area where some longline fishing operations take place seasonally.~~ However, the current estimate of mortality and serious injury does not include additional unidentified animals that may have been false killer whales and were taken within the insular stock range, and the status of this stock is likely to change once methods have been developed to prorate these additional takes.

<u>HAWAII PELAGIC STOCK</u>

POPULATION SIZE

Analyses of a 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (HICEAS survey) resulted in an abundance estimate of 236 (CV=1.13) false killer whales (Barlow 2006) outside of 75 nm of the main Hawaiian Islands. A recent re-analysis of the HICEAS data using improved methods and incorporating additional sighting information obtained on line-transect surveys south of the Hawaiian EEZ during 2005, resulted in a revised estimate of 484 (CV = 0.93) false killer whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ outside of about 75 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands (Barlow & Rankin 2007). This is the best available abundance estimate for the ~~Hawaii~~ pelagic stock of false killer whales. The 2005 survey (Barlow and Rankin 2007) also resulted in a separate abundance estimate of 906 (CV=0.68) false killer whales in international waters south of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and within the EEZ of Johnston Atoll, but it is unknown how many of these animals might belong to the Hawaii pelagic stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate for the Hawaiian Islands EEZ outside of 75 nmi from the main Hawaiian Islands (Barlow & Rankin 2007) is 249 false killer whales.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

Following the NMFS Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks (NMFS 2005), the PBR is calculated only within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands, because estimates of human-caused mortality and

serious injury are not available from all U.S. and non-U.S. sources in international waters where this stock may occur. The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the Hawaii pelagic stock of false killer whale is thus calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (249) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with a Hawaiian Islands EEZ mortality and serious injury rate CV≤0.30; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 2.5 false killer whales per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of the Hawaii pelagic stock of false killer whale relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this stock. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Following the NMFS Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks (NMFS 2005), the status of this transboundary stock of false killer whales is assessed based on the estimated abundance and estimates of mortality and serious injury within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands, because estimates of human-caused mortality and serious injury from all U.S. and non-U.S. sources in international waters are not available, and because the geographic range of this stock beyond the Hawaiian Islands EEZ is poorly known. Because the rate of mortality and serious injury to false killer whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ ~~and outside of 75 nmi in the Hawaii based longline fishery~~ (~~7.4~~ 7.3 animals per year) exceeds the PBR (2.5), this stock is considered a "strategic stock" under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA. Furthermore, additional injury or mortality of unidentified cetaceans that may have been false killer whales is known to occur in the U.S. longline fisheries, but these animals have not yet been included in the Hawaii pelagic stock status assessment. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for ~~Hawaiian~~ the Hawaii pelagic stock of false killer whales cannot be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero, because it exceeds the PBR. ~~Furthermore, additional injury and mortality of false killer whales is known to occur in U.S and international longline fishing operations in international waters, and the potential effect on the Hawaii Pelagic Stock is unknown~~.

The National Marine Fisheries Service recognizes that the assessment of this transboundary stock based only on abundance and human-caused mortality and serious injury within the U.S. EEZ of Hawaii introduces uncertainty and has considered whether the status assessment would change if animals outside the Hawaiian Islands EEZ are considered. Using all available peer-reviewed information on the abundance of false killer whales on the high-seas and within the EEZ of Johnston Atoll , a PBR can be calculated as the lower 20th percentile of the Barlow and Rankin (2007) abundance estimate (530), times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.5 (for a stock of unknown status with a mortality and serious injury rate CV≤0.30; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in 5.3 false killer whales per year. The abundance estimate may be based on a smaller geographic area than the (unknown) full range of the pelagic stock, because areas to the north of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ are not included; however, the estimate meets the definition of a 'minimum population estimate' under the MMPA. Bycatch information for the high seas is incomplete, because the levels of false killer whale takes in non-U.S. fisheries are not known. The average annual estimated mortality and serious injury by U.S. longline vessels operating on the high seas and within the EEZ of Johnston Atoll is 5.4 (CV=0.3; McCracken and Forney 2010). This value is greater than the PBR of 5.3, and the combined U.S. and international mortality and serious injury is likely substantially higher, because fishing effort by foreign vessels may be up to six times greater than that of the US fleet (NMFS, unpublished data). Better information on the full geographic range of this stock and quantitative estimates of bycatch in international fisheries are needed to reduce the uncertainties regarding impacts of false killer whale takes on the high seas, but these uncertainties do not change the current assessment that the pelagic false killer whale stock is strategic.

PALMYRA STOCK

POPULATION SIZE

Recent line transect surveys in the U.S. EEZ waters of Palmyra Atoll produced an estimate of 1,329 (CV = 0.65) false killer whales (Barlow & Rankin 2007). This is the best available abundance estimate for false killer whales within the Palmyra Atoll EEZ.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate for the Palmyra Atoll EEZ (Barlow & Rankin 2007) is 806 false killer whales.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for this species in Palmyra Atoll waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the Palmyra Atoll false killer whale stock is calculated as the minimum population size (806) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a stock of unknown status with a mortality and serious injury rate CV >0.80; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 6.4 false killer whales per year.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of false killer whales in Palmyra Atoll EEZ waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this stock. They are not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The rate of mortality and serious injury to false killer whales within the Palmyra Atoll EEZ in the Hawaii-based longline fishery (0.3 animals per year) does not exceed the PBR (6.4) for this stock and thus, this stock is not considered "strategic" under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA. The total fishery mortality and serious injury for Palmyra Atoll false killer whales is less than 10% of the PBR and, therefore, can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. Additional injury and mortality of false killer whales is known to occur in U.S and international longline fishing operations in international waters, and the potential effect on the Palmyra stock is unknown.

REFERENCES

Baird, R.W. 2009. A review of false killer whales in Hawaiian waters: biology, status, and risk factors. Report prepared for the U.S. Marine Mammal Commission under Order No. E40475499, December 23, 2009. 40p.

Baird, R.W., A.M. Gorgone, D.J. McSweeney, D.L. Webster, D.R. Salden, M.H. Deakos, A.D. Ligon, G.S. Schorr, J. Barlow and S.D. Mahaffy. 2008~~e~~. False killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) around the main Hawaiian Islands: long-term site fidelity, inter-island movements, and association patterns. Marine Mammal Science 24:591-612

Baird, R.W., A.M. Gorgone, D.L. Webster, D.J. McSweeney, J.W. Durban, A.D. Ligon, D.R. Salden, and M.H. Deakos. 2005. False killer whales around the main Hawaiian Islands: An assessment of inter-island movements and population size using individual photo-identification. Contract Report JJ133F04SE0120 prepared for the Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole Street, Honolulu, Hawaii, 96822. 24pp.

Baird, R.W., and A.M. Gorgone. 2005. False killer whale dorsal fin disfigurements as a possible indicator of long-line fishery interactions in Hawaiian waters. Pacific Science 59:593-601.

Baird, R.W, G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, D.J. McSweeney, M.B. Hanson, and R.D. Andrews. 2010. Movements and habitat use of satellite-tagged false killer whales around the main Hawaiian Islands. Endangered Species Research 10:107-121.

~~Baird, R.W., G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, D.J. McSweeney, A.M. Gorgone and S.J. Chivers. 2008a. A survey to assess overlap of insular and offshore false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) off the island of Hawai'i. Report prepared under Order No. AB133F07SE4484 for the Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole Street, Honolulu, HI, 96822. 10p.~~

~~Baird, R.W, G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, D.J. McSweeney, M.B. Hanson, and R.D. Andrews. 2008b. Movements of satellite tagged false killer whales around the main Hawaiian Islands. Draft document PSRG 2008-13 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 19-21, 2008, Kihei, Maui, Hawaii. 15p.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Barlow, J. and S. Rankin. 2007. False killer whale abundance and density: Preliminary estimates for the PICEAS study area south of Hawaii and new estimates for the US EEZ around Hawaii. Administrative Report LJ-07-02. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Boggs, C.H. and R.Y. Ito. 1993. Hawaii's pelagic fisheries. In: Boehlert GW (ed.). The fisheries of Hawaii and U.S.-associated Pacific Islands. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2): 61-68.

Chivers, S. J., R. W. Baird, D. J. McSweeney, D. L. Webster, N. M. Hedrick, and J. C. Salinas. 2007. Genetic variation and evidence for population structure in eastern North Pacific false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*). Can. J. Zool. 85: 783-794.

Chivers S. J., K. A. Forney, and D. Johnston. 2008. Rationale for the 2008 revision to Hawaiian stock boundaries for false killer whales, Pseudorca crassidens. SWFSC Administrative Report LJ-08-04. Available from SWFSC, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92038. 5p.

Chivers, S. J., R. W. Baird, K. M. Martien, B. L. Taylor, E. Archer, A. M. Gorgone, B. L. Hancock, N. M. Hedrick, D. Matilla, D. J. McSweeney, E. M. Oleson, C. L. Palmer, V. Pease, K. M. Robertson, J. Robbins, J. C. Salinas, G. S. Schorr, M. Schultz, J. L. Theileking, and D. L. Webster.. 2010. Evidence of genetic differentiation for Hawai'i insular false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*). U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SWFSC-458, 46p.

~~Forney, K.A. and D. R. Kobayashi. 2007. Updated estimates of mortality and injury of cetaceans in the Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 1994-2005. NOAA Tech Memo NMFS-SWFSC-412. 30p.~~

~~Forney, K. A. and McCracken, M. 2008. Preliminary estimates of cetacean injury and mortality in Hawaii based longline fisheries during 2006. Draft document PSRG-2008-16 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, January 8-10, 2008, Monterey, CA.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA. 18p.

Forney, K. A., R. W. Baird and E. M. Oleson. 2010. Rationale for the 2010 revision of stock boundaries for the Hawaii insular and pelagic stocks of false killer whales, *Pseudorca crassidens*. Unpublished draft report, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, NMFS.

Johnston, D. W., J. Robbins, M. E. Chapla, D. K. Mattila & K. R. Andrews. 2008. Diversity, habitat associations and stock structure of odontocete cetaceans in the waters of American Samoa, 2003-2006. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 10: 59-66.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

~~McCracken, M. and K.A. Forney. Preliminary estimates of cetacean injury and mortality in Hawaii based longline fisheries during 2007. Draft document PSRG-2008-11 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 19-21, 2008, Kihei, Maui, Hawaii. 9p.~~

McCracken, M. L. and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.

Mobley, J.R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Mobley, J.R. 2001. Results of 2001 aerial surveys north of Kauai. Report to North Pacific Acoustic Laboratory program. 20 pp. Available as downloadable pdf file at: http://socrates.uhwo.hawaii.edu/SocialSci/jmobley/2001NPAL.pdf

Mobley, J.R. 2002. Results of 2002 aerial surveys north of Kauai. Report to North Pacific Acoustics Laboratory program. 20 pp. Available as downloadable pdf file at: http://socrates.uhwo.hawaii.edu/SocialSci/jmobley/2002NPAL.pdf

Mobley, J.R. 2003. Results of 2003 aerial surveys north of Kauai. Report to North Pacific Acoustics Laboratory program. 20 pp. Available as downloadable pdf file at: http://socrates.uhwo.hawaii.edu/SocialSci/jmobley/2003NPAL.pdf

Mobley, J.R. 2004. Results of 2004 aerial surveys north of Kauai. Report to North Pacific Acoustics Laboratory program. 25 pp. Available as downloadable pdf file at: http://socrates.uhwo.hawaii.edu/SocialSci/jmobley/2004NPAL.pdf

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

NMFS. 2005. Revisions to Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks. 24 pp. Available at: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/sars/gamms2005.pdf

NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, Observer Program, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.

NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92027.

Oleson, E.M. 2009. Assessment of American Samoa longline fishery and estimates of cetacean bycatch, 2006-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-14 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, Nov 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA. 14p

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Reeves, R.R., S. Leatherwood, and R.W. Baird. 2009. Evidence of a possible decline since 1989 in false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) around the main Hawaiian Islands. Pacific Science 63(2): 253–261.~~in press.~~

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Stacey, P. J., S. Leatherwood, and R. W. Baird. 1994. *Pseudorca crassidens*. Mamm. Spec. 456:1-6.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Ylitalo, G.M, R.W. Baird, G.K. Yanagida, D.L. Webster, J.L. Bolton, G.S. Schorr, and D.J. McSweeney. 2008. Persistent organic pollutant levels in biopsy blubber samples of insular false killer whales (*Pseudorca crassidens*) from the main Hawaiian Islands. Draft document PSRG-2008-14 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 19-21, 2008, Kihei, Maui, Hawaii. 9p.

Created 10/19/2009

FALSE KILLER WHALE *(Pseudorca crassidens)*: American Samoa Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

False killer whales are found worldwide mainly in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Stacey et al. 1994). The species is well-documented throughout the tropical and sub-tropical south Pacific, from Papua New Guinea and Australia to the line islands (Reeves et al. 1999). The species has been taken in the drive hunt in the Solomon Islands (Reeves et al 1999).). During small-boat surveys from 2003 to 2006 in the waters surrounding the island of Tutuila, American Samoa, false killer whales were observed during summer surveys on five occasions (Johnston et al 2008). During a shipboard survey in 2006 false killer whales were also encountered just north of the island of Ta‘u, in the Manu’a Group within American Samoa (Johnston et al. 2008). Two false killer whales were entangled near 40-Fathom Bank south of the islands by the American Samoa-based longline fishery in 2008 (Oleson 2009), indicating some false killer whale maintain a more pelagic distribution. Five genetic samples collected near Tutuila are available for comparison to other false killer whale populations throughout the Pacific (Johnston et al 2008). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there are four Pacific management stocks: 1) The Hawaii Insular Stock, which includes animals found within the 25-75 nmi longline exclusion boundary surrounding the main Hawaiian Islands, 2) The Hawaii Pelagic Stock, which includes animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands but outside the 25-75 nmi longline exclusion zone, 3) The Palmyra Stock, which includes animals found within the U.S. EEZ of the Palmyra Atoll, and 4) The American Samoa Stock, which includes animals found within the U.S. EEZ American Samoa (this report).

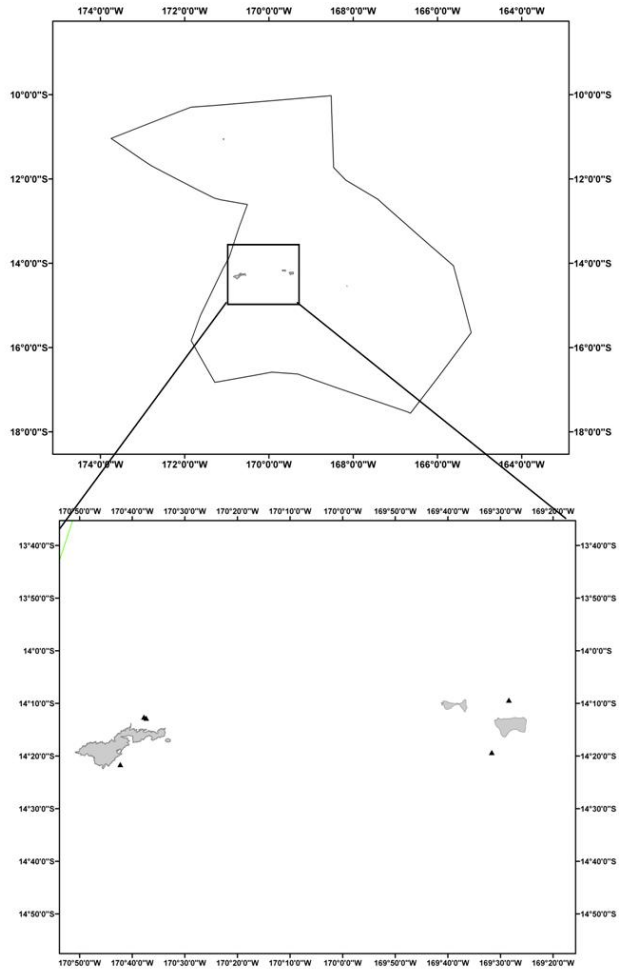


Figure 1. False killer whale sightings during visual surveys from 2003-2006 (Johnston et al 2008).

POPULATION SIZE

No abundance estimates are currently available for false killer whales in U.S. EEZ waters of American Samoa; however, density estimates for false killer whales in other tropical Pacific regions can provide a range of likely abundance estimates in this unsurveyed region. Published estimates of false killer whales (animals per km^2) in the Pacific are: 0.0002 (CV= 0.93) for the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow and Rankin 2007); 0.0038 (CV=0.65) for the U.S. EEZ around Palmyra, (Barlow and Rankin 2007), 0.0021 (CV=0.64) and 0.0016 (CV=0.31) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Ferguson and Barlow 2003). Applying the lowest and highest of these density estimates to U.S. EEZ waters surrounding American Samoa (area size = 404,578 km^2) yields a range of plausible abundance estimates of 87 – 1,538 false killer whales.

Minimum Population Estimate

No minimum population estimate is currently available for waters surrounding American Samoa, but the false killer whale density estimates from other tropical Pacific regions (Barlow and Rankin 2007, Wade and Gerrodette 1993, Ferguson and Barlow 2003, see above) can provide a range of likely values. The lognormal 20th percentiles of

plausible abundance estimates for the American Samoa EEZ, based on the densities observed elsewhere, range from 45 – 936 false killer whales.

Current Population Trend
No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES
No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL
No PBR can presently be calculated for false killer whales within the American Samoa EEZ, but based on the range of plausible minimum abundance estimates (45 - 936), a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with a fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV > 0.80 within the American Samoa EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), and the default growth rate (½ of 4%), the PBR would likely fall between 0.4 and 7.5 false killer whales per year.

ANNUAL HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in American Samoan waters is limited, but the gear types used in American Samoas fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). The primary fishery in American Samoa is the commercial pelagic longline fishery that targets tunas, which was introduced in 1995 (Levine and Allen 2009). In 2008, there were 28 federally permitted vessels within the longline fishery in American Samoa. The fishery has been monitored since March 2006 under a mandatory observer program, which records all interactions with protected species (Pacific Islands Regional Office 2009). Two false killer whales were killed or seriously injured by the fishery in 2008 (Oleson 2009). The average annual serious injury and mortality in commercial fisheries for false killer whales in American Samoa waters is 7.8 (CV=1.7) animals per year (Table 1).

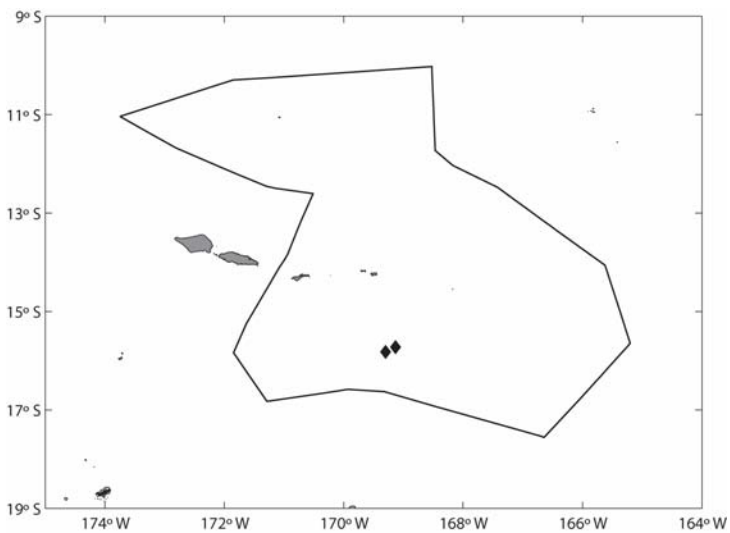


Figure 2. Locations of observed false killer whale takes (filled diamonds) in the American Samoa longline fishery, 2006-2008. Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZ. Set locations in this fishery are summarized in Appendix 1.

Prior to 1995, bottomfishing and trolling were the primary fisheries in American Samoa but became less prominent after longlining was introduced (Levine and Allen 2009). Nearshore subsistence fisheries include spear fishing, rod and reel, collecting, gill netting, and throw netting (Craig 1993, Levine and Allen 2009). Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in the nearshore fisheries is unknown, but the gear types used in American Samoan fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used. Although boat-based nearshore fisheries have been randomly monitored since 1991, by the American Samoa Department of Marine and Wildlife Sources (DMWR), no estimates of annual human-caused mortality and serious injury of cetaceans are available.

STATUS OF STOCK
The status of false killer whales in American Samoan waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this stock. False killer whales are not listed as “threatened” or “endangered” under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as “depleted” under the

MMPA. The status of the American Samoa stock of false killer whales under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA cannot be determined at this time because no abundance estimates are available and PBR cannot be calculated. However, the estimated rate of fisheries related mortality and serious injury within the American Samoa EEZ (7.8 animals per year) exceeds the range of likely PBRs (0.4 – 7.5) for this region, suggesting that this stock would probably be strategic if abundance estimates were available. Additional research on the abundance of false killer whales in American Samoa is required to resolve this stock's status. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for false killer whales is insignificant and approaching zero, but this appears unlikely given the estimated takes and likely PBR range.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of false killer whales (American Samoa stock) in commercial fisheries operating within the U.S. EEZs (Oleson 2009). Longline fishery take estimates represent only those trips with at least 10 sets/trip (Oleson 2009). Mean annual takes are based on 2006-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed and estimated mortality and serious injury of false killer whales in the American Samoa EEZ		
				American Samoa EEZ		
				Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
American Samoa-based longline fishery	2006 2007 2008	observer data	9.0% 7.7% 8.5%	0 0 2	0 (-) 0 (-) 23.5 (1.9)	7.8 (1.7)
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters						7.8 (1.7)

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. and S. Rankin. False killer whale abundance and density: Preliminary estimates for PICEAS study area south of Hawaii and new estimates for the U.S. EEZ around Hawaii. Administrative Report LJ-07-02, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Craig, P., B. Ponwith, F. Aitaoto, and D. Hamm. 1993. The commercial, subsistence, and recreational fisheries of American Samoa –Fisheries of Hawaii and U.S. – associated pacific Islands. Marine Fisheries Review, Spring.

Ferguson, M. C. and J. Barlow. 2003. Addendum: Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-96. Administrative Report LJ-01-04 (addendum), Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Johnston, D.W., J. Robbins, M.E. Chapla, D.K. Mattila, and K.R. Andrews. 2008. Diversity, habitat associations, and stock structure of odontocete cetaceans in the waters of American Samoa, 2003-2006. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 10(1):59-66.

Levine, A., and S. Allen. 2009. American Samoa as a fishing community. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo., NOAA-TM-NMFS-PIFSC-19, 74 p.

Oleson, E.M. 2009. Characteristics of the American Samoa Longline Fishery and Estimates of Cetacean Take, 2006-2008. PSRG-2009-14.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Reeves, R., S. Leatherwood, G.S. Stone, and L.G. Eldredge. 1999. Marine mammals in the area served by the South Pacific Regional Environment Programme (SPREP). South Pacific Regional Environment Programme, Apia, Samoa. 48pp.

Stacey, P. J., S. Leatherwood, and R. W. Baird. 1994. *Pseudorca crassidens*. Mamm. Spec. 456:l-6.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

KILLER WHALE (*Orcinus orca*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Killer whales have been observed in all oceans and seas of the world (Leatherwood and Dahlheim 1978). Although reported from tropical and offshore waters (Heyning and Dahlheim 1988), killer whales prefer the colder waters of both hemispheres, with greatest abundances found within 800 km of major continents (Mitchell 1975). They are considered rare in Hawaiian waters. No killer whales were seen during 1993-98 aerial surveys within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands, but one sighting was reported during subsequent surveys (Mobley et al. 2000, 2001). Two sightings of killer whales were made during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). One stranding from the island of Hawaii was reported in 1950 (Richards 1952) and 21 additional sightings or strandings were reported around the main Hawaiian Islands, French Frigate Shoals, and offshore of the Hawaiian islands (Baird *et al.* 2006). ~~another in 2004 (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.)~~. Except in the northeastern Pacific where "resident", "transient", and "offshore" stocks have been described for coastal waters of Alaska, British Columbia, and Washington to California (Bigg 1982; Leatherwood et al. 1990, Bigg et al. 1990, Ford et al. 1994), little is known about stock structure of killer whales in the North Pacific. Baird et al. (~~2003~~ 2006) report a sighting of this species off the island of Hawaii in 2003, and also note analyses of genetic results from ~~one sample~~ two samples collected, indicating a haplotype similar to the Gulf of Alaska "transient" killer whales and one similar to that of mammal eating killer whales in coastal Alaska. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, ~~five~~ eight killer whale stocks are recognized within the Pacific U.S. EEZ: 1) the Eastern North Pacific Alaska Resident stock - occurring from southeastern Alaska to the Aleutian Islands and Bering Sea, 2) the Eastern North Pacific Northern Resident stock - occurring from British Columbia through part of southeastern Alaska, 3) the Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident stock – occurring mainly within the inland waters of Washington State and southern British Columbia, but also in coastal waters from British Columbia through California, 4) the Eastern North Pacific Gulf of Alaska, Aleutian Islands, and Bering Sea Transient stock - occurring mainly from Prince William Sound through the Aleutian Islands and Bering Sea, 5) the AT1 Transient stock - occurring in Alaska from Prince William Sound through the Kenai Fjords, 6) the West Coast Transient stock - occurring from California through southeastern Alaska, 7) the Eastern North Pacific Offshore stock - occurring from California through Alaska, and 8) the Hawaiian stock (this report). The Hawaii stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005). ~~–~~Stock assessment reports for the Southern Resident, Eastern North Pacific Offshore, and Hawaiian stocks can be found in the Pacific Region stock assessment reports; all other killer whale stock assessments are included in the Alaska Region stock assessments. ~~1) the Eastern North Pacific Northern Resident stock - occurring from British Columbia through Alaska, 2) the Eastern North Pacific Southern Alaska Resident stock - occurring within the inland waters of Washington State and southern British Columbia, 3) the~~

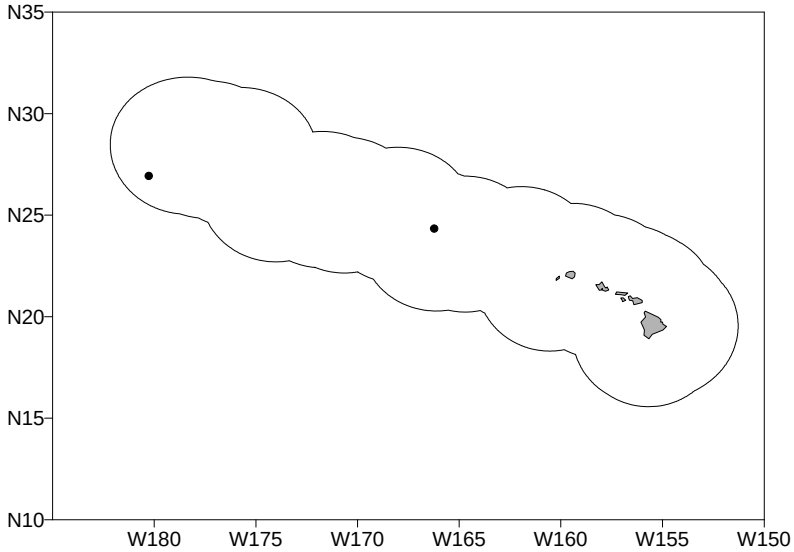


Figure 1. Killer whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

~~Eastern North Pacific Transient stock – occurring from Alaska through California, the Eastern North Pacific Offshore stock – occurring from Southeast Alaska through California, and 5) the Hawaiian stock (this report). Stock Assessment Reports for the Eastern North Pacific Northern Resident stock and 4) the Eastern North Pacific Transient stocks can be found in the Alaska Region stock assessment reports; all other killer whale stock assessments are included in the Pacific Region stock assessments.~~

POPULATION SIZE

Population sizes for killer whales in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington are known from photo-identification studies (Bigg et al. 1990). The population of killer whales in the eastern tropical Pacific has been estimated from shipboard sightings surveys (Wade and Gerrodette 1993). ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998 (Mobley et al. 2000), but no sightings of killer whales were made.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~430 (CV=0.72)~~ 349 (CV=0.98) killer whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~250~~ 175 killer whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current and maximum net productivity rate in Hawaiian waters.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~250~~ 175) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~2.5~~ 1.8 killer whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993), but killer whale interactions appear to be rare. In 1990, a solitary killer whale was reported to have removed the catch from a longline in Hawaii (Dollar 1991). ~~None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no killer whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010). Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995). Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether killer whales are involved.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of killer whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this stock ~~species~~. This species is not

listed as “threatened” or “endangered” under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as “depleted” under the MMPA. Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries, the Hawaiian stock of killer whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~The Hawaiian stock of killer whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA given the absence of reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the, total fishery mortality and serious injury for killer whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate~~.

REFERENCES

~~Baird, R.W., D.J. McSweeney, D.L. Webster, A.M. Gorgone and A.D. Ligon. 2003. Studies of odontocete population structure in Hawaiian waters: results of a survey through the main Hawaiian Islands in May and June 2003. Report prepared under Contract No. AB133F-02-CN-0106 from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Western Administrative Support Center, 7600 Sand Point Way N.E., Seattle, WA 98115 USA.~~

Baird, R.W., D.J. McSweeney, C. Bane, J. Barlow, D.R. Salden, L.K. Antoine, R.G. DeLuc, and D.L. Webster. 2006. Killer whales in Hawaiian waters: Information on population identity and feeding habits. Pacific Science 60(4): 523-530.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22(2): 446-464.

Bigg, M. A. 1982. An assessment of killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) stocks off Vancouver Island, British Columbia. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 32:655-666.

Bigg, M. A., P. F. Olesiuk, G. M. Ellis, J. K. B. Ford, and K. C. Balcomb, III. 1990. Social organization and genealogy of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington State. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. (Spec. Iss. 12):383-405.

Dollar, R. A. 1991. Summary of swordfish longline observations in Hawaii, July 1990-March 1991. Southwest Fish. Cent. Admin. Rep. H-91-09, 13 pp.

Ford, J. K. B., G. M. Ellis, and K.C. Balcomb. 1994. Killer whales. The natural history and genealogy of *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia and Washington State. UBC Press, Vancouver, Canada.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Heyning, J. E. and M. E. Dahlheim. 1988. *Orcinus orca*. Mamm. Spec.304:1-9.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Leatherwood, J. S., and M. E. Dahlheim. 1978. Worldwide distribution of pilot whales and killer whales. Naval Ocean Systems Center, Tech. Rep. 443:1-39.

Leatherwood, S., C. O. Matkin, J. D. Hall, and G. M. Ellis. 1990. Killer whales, *Orcinus orca*, photo-identified in Prince William Sound, Alaska, 1976 through 1987. Can Field-Nat. 104:362-371.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

Mitchell, E. D. 1975. Report on the meeting on small cetaceans, Montreal, April 1-11, 1974. J. Fish. Res. Board Canada, 32:914-916.

Mobley, J. R., Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Mobley, J. R. , L. Mazzuca, A. S. Craig, M. W. Newcomer, and S. S. Spitz. 2001. Killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) sighted West of Ni'ihau, Hawai'i. Pacific Science 55:301_303.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species.

Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.
Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.
Richards, L. P. 1952. Cuvier's beaked whale from Hawaii. J. Mamm. 33:255.
Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.
Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~12/15/2006~~ 04/15/2010

SHORT-FINNED PILOT WHALE (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Short-finned pilot whales are found in all oceans, primarily in tropical and warm-temperate waters. They are commonly observed around the main Hawaiian Islands and are also present around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (Shallenberger 1981; Barlow 2006). During a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands, 25 sightings of short-finned pilot whales were made (Figure 1; Barlow 2006). Fourteen strandings of short-finned pilot whales have been documented from the main Hawaiian Islands, including five mass strandings (Tomich 1986; Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005~~2003~~). Stock structure of short-finned pilot whales has not been adequately studied in the North Pacific, except in Japanese waters, where two stocks have been identified based on pigmentation patterns and differences in the shape of the heads of adult males (Kasuya et al. 1988). The pilot whales in Hawaiian waters are similar morphologically to the Japanese "southern form." Preliminary photo-identification work with pilot whales in Hawaii indicated a high degree of site fidelity around the main island of Hawaii (Shane and McSweeney 1990) and around Kauai and Niihau (Baird et al. 2006).

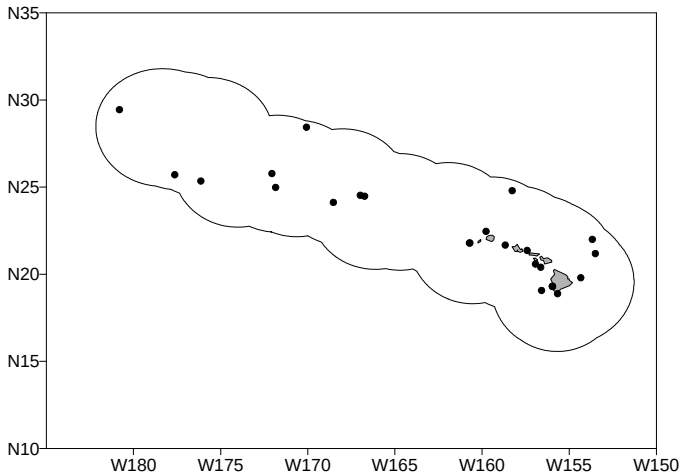


Figure 1. Short-finned pilot whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006); see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

Genetic analyses of tissue samples collected near the main Hawaiian Islands indicate that Hawaiian short-finned pilot whales are reproductively isolated from short-finned pilot whales found in the eastern Pacific Ocean (S. Chivers, NMFS/SWFSC, unpublished data); however, the offshore range of this Hawaiian population is unknown. Fishery interactions with short-finned pilot whales demonstrate that this species also occurs in U.S. EEZ waters of Palmyra Atoll and Johnston Atoll (Figure 2), but it is not known whether these animals are part of the Hawaiian stock or whether they represent separate stocks of short-finned pilot whales. Based on patterns of movement and population structure observed in other island-associated cetaceans (Norris and Dohl 1980; Norris et al.1994; Baird et al. 2001, 2003; S. Chivers, pers. comm.), it is possible that the animals around Palmyra Atoll and Johnston Atoll are one or more separate stocks. Efforts are currently underway to obtain additional samples of short-finned pilot whales for further studies of population structure in the North Pacific Ocean. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, short-finned pilot whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) Hawaiian waters (this report), and 2) waters off California, Oregon and Washington. Information on short-finned pilot whales around Palmyra Atoll and Johnston Atoll will provisionally be included with this stock assessment report, recognizing that separate stock status may be warranted for these animals in the future. Estimates of abundance, potential biological removals, and status determinations will be presented separately for U.S. waters of the Hawaiian Islands, Palmyra Atoll, and Johnston Atoll. The Hawaii, Johnston, and Palmyra stocks each include animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of each stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters (NMFS 2005).

POPULATION SIZE

Estimates of short-finned pilot whale populations have been made off Japan (Miyashita 1993) and in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993), but it is not known whether any of these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within~~

~~about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An abundance estimate of 1,708 (CV=0.32) short-finned pilot whales was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This study underestimated the total number of short-finned pilot whales within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, the data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 8,846 (CV=0.49) short-finned pilot whales (Barlow 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for short-finned pilot whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

No abundance estimates are currently available for short-finned pilot whales in U.S. EEZ waters of Palmyra Atoll; however, density estimates for short-finned pilot whales in other Pacific regions can provide a range of likely abundance estimates in this unsurveyed region. Published estimates of short-finned pilot whale density (animals per km^2) in the Pacific are: 0.0040 (CV=0.38) for the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2006); 0.0237 (CV=0.32) for nearshore waters surrounding the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000), 0.0084 (CV=0.14) and 0.0040 (CV=0.23) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean (Wade and Gerrodette 1993; Ferguson and Barlow 2003), and 0.0025 (CV=0.29) for the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean west of 120°W and north of 5°N (Ferguson and Barlow 2003). Applying the lowest and highest of these density estimates to U.S. EEZ waters surrounding Palmyra Atoll (area size = 352,821 km^2) yields a range of plausible abundance estimates of 891-8,362 short-finned pilot whales. Similarly, there are no abundance estimates for short-finned pilot whales in U.S. EEZ waters of Johnston Atoll. Applying the lowest and highest of the above density estimates to U.S. EEZ waters surrounding Johnston Atoll (area size = 443,586 km^2) yields a range of plausible abundance estimates of 1,121-10,513 short-finned pilot whales.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate for the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Barlow 2006) is 6,511 short-finned pilot whales. No minimum population estimate is currently available for waters surrounding Palmyra Atoll or Johnston Atoll, but the short-finned pilot whale density estimates from other Pacific regions (Barlow 2006, Mobley et al. 2000, Wade and Gerrodette 1993, Ferguson and Barlow 2003; see above) can provide a range of likely values. The lognormal 20th percentiles of plausible abundance estimates for the Palmyra Atoll EEZ, based on the densities observed elsewhere, range from 701 to 6,429 short-finned pilot whales. The lognormal 20th percentiles of plausible abundance estimates for the Johnston Atoll EEZ, based on the densities observed elsewhere, range from 882 to 8,083 short-finned pilot whales.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for the Hawaiian short-finned pilot whale stock is calculated as the minimum population size (6,511) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.50~~ 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with a Hawaiian Islands EEZ fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV>0.80 ~~no known fishery mortality and serious injury within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands~~; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~65~~ 52 short-finned pilot whales per year. No separate PBR can presently be calculated for Palmyra Atoll waters, but based on the range of plausible minimum abundance estimates (701-6,429), a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality and serious injury within the Palmyra Atoll EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), and the default growth rate (½ of 4%), the PBR would likely fall between 7.0 and 64 short-finned pilot whales per year. Similarly, based on the range of plausible minimum abundance estimates for Johnston Atoll (882-8,083), a recovery factor of 0.40 (for a species of unknown status with a fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV>0.80 within the Johnston Atoll EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), and the default growth rate (½ of 4%), the PBR would likely fall between 7.1 and 65 short-finned pilot whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993). ~~Between 1994 and 2004, six short-finned pilot whales were observed hooked in the Hawaii-based longline fishery with approximately 4-26% of all effort observed (Table 1; Forney and Kobayashi 2005). During the observed 18,353 sets, the average interaction rate of short-finned pilot whales was 0.33 short-finned pilot whales per 1000 sets. Two of the animals caught were dead upon gear retrieval, two were considered seriously injured, and one taken near Palmyra Atoll was considered not seriously injured (Forney and Kobayashi 2005), based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following established guidelines for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Angliss and DeMaster 1998). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for 2000-2004 are 3.6 (CV = 0.69) short-finned pilot whales outside of the U.S. EEZs, and 0.6 (CV = 1.00) within the U.S. EEZ of Johnston Atoll (Table 1). No short-finned pilot whales were observed killed or seriously injured within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ or the Palmyra Atoll EEZ during 2000-2004. Ten additional unidentified cetaceans, which may have been short-finned pilot whales, were also taken in this fishery. Two of these unidentified cetaceans were within the EEZ of Palmyra Atoll, and three were in the EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 2, Forney and Kobayashi 2005). Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of short-finned pilot whale interactions are unknown.~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no short-finned pilot whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage), and eight short-finned pilot whales were observed taken in the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (Forney 2009, McCracken 2009). Based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Andersen et al. 2008), two short-finned pilot whales taken in international waters were considered not seriously injured, and the remaining six (four in international waters, one in the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, and one in the EEZ of Johnston Atoll) were considered seriously injured (Forney 2009). Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for 2004-2008 are 2.0 (CV = 0.5) short-finned pilot whales outside of U.S. EEZs, 0.7 (CV=1.4) within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, and 0.5 (CV=0.8) within the Johnston Atoll EEZ (McCracken & Forney 2010). Eight additional unidentified cetaceans, which may have been short-finned-pilot whales, were also taken during 2004-2008. Six of these were taken in the DSLL fishery in Hawaiian Islands EEZ waters, one was taken in the DSLL fishery in international waters, and one was taken in the SSLL fishery in international waters (Figure 2)

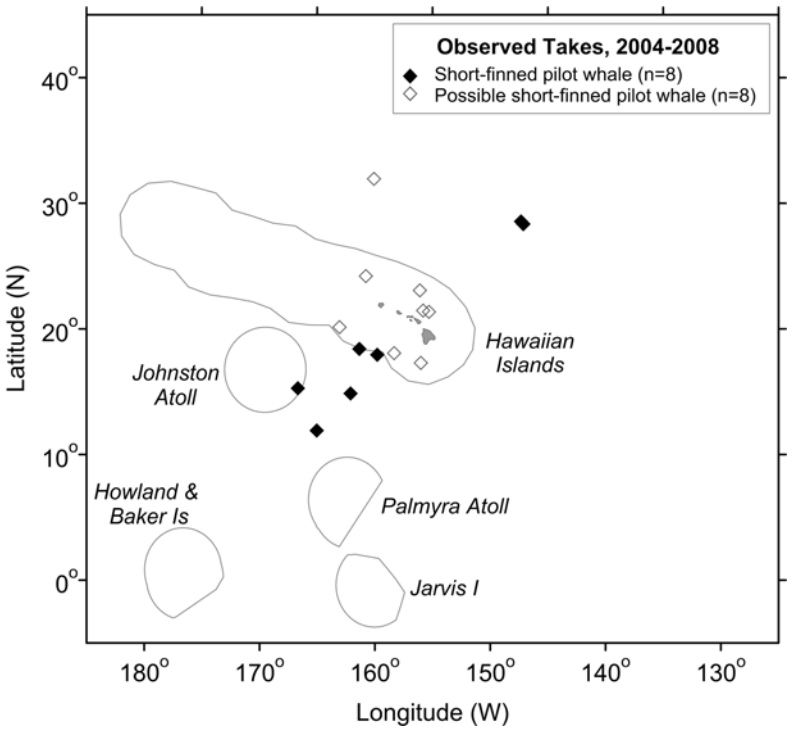


Figure 2. Locations of short-finned pilot whale takes (filled diamonds) and possible takes of this species (open diamonds) in ~~the~~ Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008 ~~fishery, 1994-2002~~. Solid lines represent the U. S. EEZ. ~~Set locations in this fishery are summarized~~ Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

Interaction rates between dolphins and the NWHI bottomfish fishery have been estimated based on studies conducted in 1990-1993, indicating that an average of 2.67 dolphin interactions, most likely involving bottlenose and rough-toothed dolphins, occurred for every 1000 fish brought on board (Kobayashi and Kawamoto 1995).

Fishermen claim interactions with dolphins that steal bait and catch are increasing. It is not known whether these interactions result in serious injury or mortality of dolphins, nor whether short-finned pilot whales are involved.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of short-finned pilot whales (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the U.S. EEZs (~~Forney and Kobayashi 2005~~McCracken & Forney 2010). Mean annual takes are based on ~~2000-2004~~ 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Observed and estimated mortality and serious injury of short-finned pilot whales, by EEZ region								
				Outside of U.S. EEZs			Hawaiian Islands EEZ			Johnston Atoll EEZ		
				Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Obs.	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004	observer data	25%	0	0 (-)	2.0 (0.5)	0	0 (-)	0.7 (1.4)	1	3 (0.2)	0.5 (0.8)
	2005		28%	1	4 (0.4)		0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
	2006		22%	1	1 (2.1)		1	4 (0.7)		0	0 (-)	
	2007		20%	1	2 (1.5)		0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
	2008		22%	1	3 (0.8)		0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004	observer data	100%	0	Same as observed	0 (n/a)	0	Same as observed	0	0	Same as observed	0
	2005		100%	0			0			0		
	2006		100%	0			0			0		
	2007		100%	0			0			0		
	2008		100%	0			0			0		
~~**Hawaii-based longline fishery**~~	~~2000~~	~~observer data~~	~~11.8%~~	~~2~~	~~13 (0.88)~~	~~3.6 (0.69)~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0.6 (1.00)~~
	~~2001~~		~~22.7%~~	~~1~~	~~5 (1.00)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	
	~~2002~~		~~24.9%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	
	~~2003~~		~~21.9%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~	
	~~2004~~		~~25.7%~~	~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~		~~1~~	~~3 (1.00)~~	
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters							~~0.6 (1.00)~~ 1.2 (1.02)					

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of short-finned pilot whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. No habitat issues are known to be of concern for this species. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. The Hawaiian stock of short-finned pilot whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because the estimated rate of mortality and serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ ~~is zero~~ (0.7 animals per year) is less than the PBR (52). ~~However, potential effect of mortality in the Hawaii-based fishery in international waters is not known.~~ Although no estimates of abundance or PBR are currently available for short-finned pilot whales around Johnston Atoll, the estimated average rate of mortality and serious injury of short-finned pilot whales within the EEZ of Johnston Atoll (~~0.6~~ 0.5 animals per year) is below the range of likely PBRs (7.1 to 65) for this region. There have been no serious injuries or mortality of short-finned pilot whales within the Palmyra Atoll EEZ. The potential effects of mortality and serious injuries of short-finned pilot whales in the Hawaii-based fishery in international waters is not known, because no abundance estimates or international bycatch estimates are available. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the~~ Based on the available data, which indicate total fishery-related takes are less than 10% of PBR, the total fishery mortality and serious injury for short-finned pilot whales ~~is~~ can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero ~~mortality and serious injury rate~~.

REFERENCES

Andersen, M. S., K. A. Forney, T. V. N. Cole, T. Eagle, R. Angliss, K. Long, L. Barre, L. Van Atta, D. Borggaard, T. Rowles, B. Norberg, J. Whaley, and L. Engleby. 2008. Differentiating Serious and Non-Serious Injury of Marine Mammals: Report of the Serious Injury Technical Workshop, 10-13 September 2007, Seattle, Washington. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-39. 94p.

~~Angliss, R. P. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Differentiating Serious and Non-Serious Injury of Marine Mammals Taken Incidental to Commercial Fishing Operations: Report of the Serious Injury Workshop 1-2 April 1997, Silver Spring, Maryland. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-13. 48 pp.~~

Baird, R. W., Ligon, A. D., Hooker, S. K., and A. M. Gorgone. 2001. Subsurface and nighttime behaviour of pantropical spotted dolphins in Hawai'i. Can. J. Zool. 79:988-996.

Baird, R.W., D.J. McSweeney, D.L. Webster, A.M. Gorgone, and A.D. Ligon. 2003. Studies of odontocete population structure in Hawaiian waters: Results of a survey through the main Hawaiian Islands in May

and June 2003. Report prepared under contract #AB133F-02-CN-0106 to the Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA. 10p.

Baird, R.W., G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, S.D. Mahaffy, A.B. Douglas, A.M. Gorgone, and D.J. McSweeney. 2006. A survey for odontocete cetaceans off Kaua'i and Ni'ihau, Hawai'i, during October and November 2005: evidence for population structure and site fidelity. Report prepared under contract #AB133F05SE519 to Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 2570 Dole Street, Honolulu, HI 96822, USA. 16p.

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Chivers, S. NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Ferguson, M. C. and J. Barlow. 2003. Addendum: Spatial distribution and density of cetaceans in the eastern tropical Pacific Ocean based on summer/fall research vessel surveys in 1986-96. Administrative Report LJ-01-04 (addendum), Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

~~Forney, K.A. and D. Kobayashi. 2005. Updated estimates of mortality and injury of cetaceans in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, 1994-2004. Draft report. Document PSRG-07 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 16-17, 2005. Available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA.

Kasuya, T., T. Miyashita, and F. Kasamatsu. 1988. Segregation of two forms of short-finned pilot whales off the Pacific coast of Japan. Sci. Rep. Whales Res. Inst. 39:77-90.

Kobayashi, D. R. and K. E. Kawamoto. 1995. Evaluation of shark, dolphin, and monk seal interactions with Northwestern Hawaiian Island bottomfishing activity: a comparison of two time periods and an estimate of economic impacts. Fisheries Research 23: 11-22.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

~~Maldini, D. 2003. Abundance and distribution patterns of Hawaiian odontocetes: focus on O'ahu. Doctoral dissertation, University of Hawai'i at Manoa. 122p.~~

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Miyashita, T. 1993. Abundance of dolphin stocks in the western North Pacific taken by the Japanese drive fishery. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:417-437.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

~~NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

Norris, K. S., B. Würsig, R. S. Wells, and M. Würsig. 1994. The Hawaiian Spinner Dolphin. University of California Press, 408 pp.

Norris, K. S. and T. P. Dohl. 1980. Behavior of the Hawaiian spinner dolphin, *Stenella longirostris*. Fish. Bull. 77:821-849.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Shane, S. H. and D. McSweeney. 1990. Using photo-identification to study pilot whales social organization. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. (Spec. Iss. 12):259-263.

Tomich, P. Q. 1986. Mammals in Hawaii: A Synopsis and Notational Bibliography. Bishop Museum Press, Hawaii, 375 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, WA. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

BLAINVILLE'S BEAKED WHALE (*Mesoplodon densirostris*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Blainville's beaked whale has a cosmopolitan distribution in tropical and temperate waters, apparently the most extensive known distribution of any *Mesoplodon* species (Mead 1989). Two strandings were reported in 1961 from Midway Island (Galbreath 1963) and another in 1983 from Laysan Island (Nitta 1991). Sixteen sightings were reported from the main islands by Shallenberger (1981), who suggested that Blainville's beaked whales were present off the Waianae Coast of Oahu for prolonged periods annually. Resightings of individual Blainville's beaked whales during a 21-yr study suggests long-term site fidelity and year round occurrence off the island of Hawaii (McSweeney et al. 2007). Three sightings were made during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). ~~While nothing is known about stock structure,~~ Recent analysis of Blainville's beaked whale movements off the Island of Hawaii suggest the existence of insular and offshore populations of this species in Hawaiian waters; however, further movement and genetic studies are needed to better understand individual movements and stock structure of Blainville's beaked whales in Hawaii (McSweeney et al. 2007, Baird et al. 2009, Schorr et al., 2009).. ~~s~~Some genetic samples have been collected recently from around the main Hawaiian islands, ~~and there have been re-sightings of individuals from the island of Hawaii~~ (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, three *Mesoplodon* stocks are defined within the Pacific U.S. EEZ : 1) *M. densirostris* in Hawaiian waters (this report), 2) *M. stejnegeri* in Alaskan waters, and 3) all *Mesoplodon* species off California, Oregon and Washington. The Hawaiian stock of Blainville's beaked whales includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

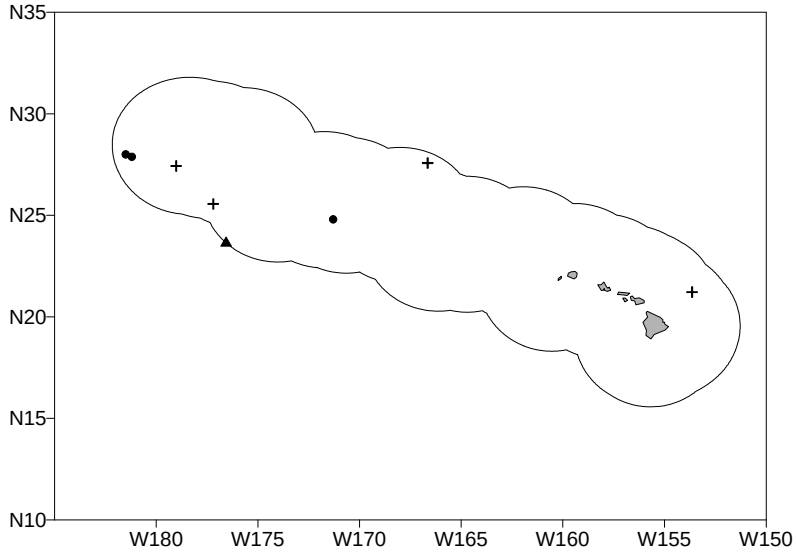


Figure 1. Sighting locations of *Mesoplodon densirostris* (filled circles), *Indopacetus pacificus* (triangle), and unidentified *Mesoplodon* beaked whales (cross) during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. Seven sightings of Blainville's beaked whales were made. An abundance estimate of 68 (CV=0.60) Blainville's beaked whales was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). The data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ Based on the photo-identification catalog for the island of Hawaii, a minimum of 55 individuals are known to occur there (McSweeney *et al.* 2007). ~~This study underestimated the total number of Blainville's beaked whales within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, this species is known to spend a large proportion of time diving, causing additional downward bias in the abundance estimate. The data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect

survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~2,138 (CV=0.77)~~ 2,872 (CV=1.17) Blainville's beaked whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006), including a correction factor for missed diving animals. This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~1,204~~ 1,314 Blainville's beaked whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~1,204~~ 1,314) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of ~~0.40~~ 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no recent fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ ~~a Hawaiian Islands EEZ fishery mortality and serious injury rate CV>0.80~~; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~9.6~~ 13 Blainville's beaked whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans are reported for all pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993). There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no Blainville's beaked whale was observed killed or seriously injured in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (F observed taken, but not seriously injured, in (McCracken & Forney 2010). ~~Between 1994 killed in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, w Three additional unidentified cetaceans, whi fishery (Figure 2, Forney 2004). During the Blainville's beaked whales was one animal per 905 fishing trips, or one animal per 11,014 sets.~~ Average 5-yr estimates of annual mortality and serious injury for ~~1998-2002~~ 2004-2008 are ~~zero~~ 0.7(CV=0.9) Blainville's beaked whales outside of the U.S. EEZs, and ~~0.8 (CV = 1.00)~~ zero within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Table 1). ~~Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of Blainville's beaked whale interactions~~

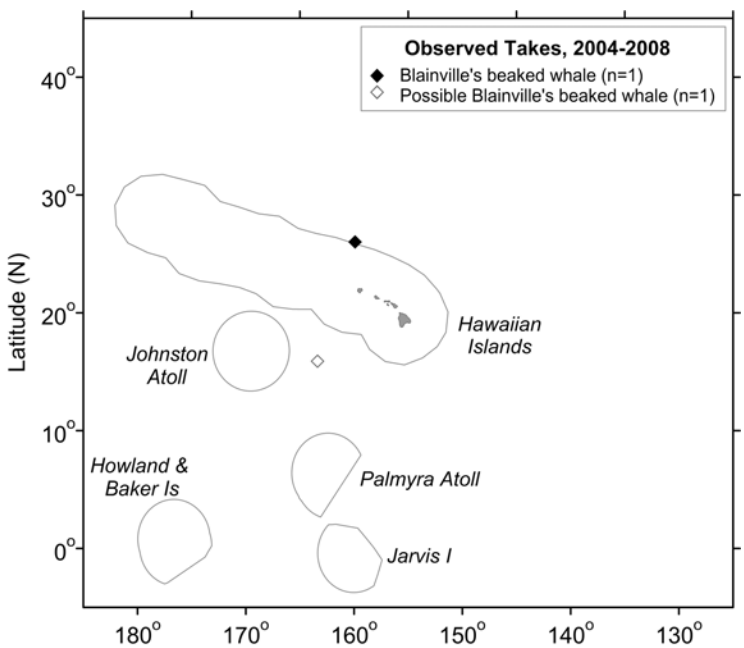


Figure 2. Location of the ~~single~~ Blainville's beaked whale take (filled diamond) and the possible take~~s~~ of this species (open diamonds) in ~~the~~ Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008. ~~fishery, 1994-2002.~~ Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZ. Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

~~are unknown.~~

Other Mortality

In recent years, there has been increasing concern that loud underwater sounds, such as active sonar and seismic operations, may be harmful to beaked whales (Malakoff 2002). The use of active sonar from military vessels has been implicated in mass strandings of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea during 1996 (Frantzis 1998), the Bahamas during 2000 (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001), and the Canary Islands 2002 (Martel 2002). Similar military active sonar operations occur around the Hawaiian islands. It has been suggested that quick ascent from deep dives in response to acoustic exposure could lead to death in beaked whales (Cox *et al.* 2006). A modeling exercise based on dive data from Blainville's, Cuvier's and northern bottlenose whales suggest that the dive habits of all three species produce tissue nitrogen saturation levels that would normally cause decompression sickness in terrestrial mammals (Hooker *et al.* 2009). The impact of sonar exercises on resident versus offshore beaked whales may be significantly different with offshore animals less frequently exposed, possibly subject to more extreme reactions (Baird *et al.* 2009). No estimates of potential mortality or serious injury are available for U.S. waters.

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of Blainville's beaked whales (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (McCracken & Forney 2010 ~~Forney 2004~~). Mean annual takes are based on ~~1998-2002~~ 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	Observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 3 (0.3) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0.7 (0.9)	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	Observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 0 0 0 0	Same as observed	0	0 0 0 0 0	Same as observed	0
~~**Hawaii based longline fishery**~~	~~1998~~ ~~1999~~ ~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ ~~2002~~	~~1998-2002 observer data~~	~~4.6%~~ ~~3.5%~~ ~~11.8%~~ ~~22.7%~~ ~~24.9%~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~	~~0 (-)~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~1~~	~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~ ~~0 (-)~~ ~~4 (1.00)~~	~~0.8 (1.00)~~
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									~~0.8 (1.00)~~ 0 (-)

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Blainville's beaked whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of Blainville's beaked whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because the estimated rate of fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (0.8 animals per year) is less than the PBR (9.6)~~. Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries within U.S. EEZs, the Hawaiian stock of Blainville's beaked whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. However, the effect of potential interactions of Blainville's beaked whales and unidentified beaked whales (some of which may have been Blainville's beaked whales) with the Hawaii-based longline fishery in ~~U.S. and~~ international waters is not known. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for Blainville's beaked whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995), particularly for deep-diving whales like Blainville's beaked whales that feed in the oceans' "sound channel".

REFERENCES

Baird, R.W., G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, S.D. Mahaffy, D.J. McSweeney, M.B. Hanson, and K.D. Andrews. 2009. Movements of satellite-tagged Cuvier's and Blainville's beaked whales in Hawaii: Evidence for an offshore population of Blainville's beaked whales. Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 15p.

~~Balcomb, K. C., III. 1987. The Whales of Hawaii. Marine Mammal Fund, 99 pp.~~

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Cox, T.M., T.J. Ragen, A.J. Read, E. Vos, R.W. Baird, K. Balcomb, J. Barlow, J. Caldwell, T. Cranford, L. Crum, A. D'Amico, G. D'Spain, A. Fernandez, J. Finneran, R. Gentry, W. Gerth, F. Gulland, J.A. Hildebrand, D. Houser, T. Hullar, P.D. Jepson, D. Ketten, C.D. Macleod, P. Miller, S. Moore, D. Mountain, D. Palka, P. Ponganis, S. Rommel, T. Rowles, B. Taylor, P. Tyack, D. Wartzok, R. Gisiner, J. Mead, and L. Brenner. 2006. Understanding the impacts of anthropogenic sound on beaked whales. J.Cetacean Res. Manag. 7: 177-187.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92038. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Frantzis, A. 1998. Does acoustic testing strand whales? Nature 392(5):29.

Galbreath, E. C. 1963. Three beaked whales stranded on the Midway Islands, central Pacific Ocean. J. Mamm. 44:422-423.

Hooker, S.K., R.W. Baird, F.A. Fahlman. 2009. Could beaked whales get the bends? Effect of diving behavior and physiology on modeled gas exchange for three species: *Ziphius cavirostris, Mesoplodon densirostris,* and *Hyperoodon ampulata*.. Respiration Physiology and Neurobiology 117(2009): 235-246.

Malakoff, D. 2002. Suit ties whale deaths to research cruise. Science 298:722-723.

Martel, V. M. 2002. Summary of the report on the atypical mass stranding of beaked whales in the Canary Islands in September 2002 during naval exercises. Society for the Study of the Cetaceans in the Canary Archipelago (SECAC). Unpublished report. 11p.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. Pacific Islands Science Center Working Paper WP-09-007. Draft document PSRG-2009-10 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA

McSweeney, D.J., R.W. Baird, and S.D. Mahaffy. 2007. Site fidelity, associations, and movements of Cuvier's (*Ziphius cavirostris*) and Blainville's (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) beaked whales off the island of Hawaii. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 23(3):666-687.

~~Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Mead, J. G. 1989. Beaked whales of the genus *Mesoplodon. In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4: The River Dolphins and Larger Toothed Whales, pp. 349-430. Academic Press, 442 pp.

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W. F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise.

Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.
Schorr, G.S., R.W. Baird, M.B. Hanson, D.L. Webster, D.J. McSweeney, and R.D. Andrews. 2009. Movements of satellite-tagged Blainville's beaked whales off the island of Hawaii. Endangered Species Res.10:203-213.
Shallenberger, E. W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.
U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.
Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

CUVIER'S BEAKED WHALE (*Ziphius cavirostris*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Cuvier's beaked whales occur in all oceans and major seas (Heyning 1989). In Hawaii, five strandings have been reported from Midway Islands, Pearl and Hermes Reef, Oahu, and Hawaii Islands (Shallenberger 1981; Galbreath 1963; Richards 1952; Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). Sightings have been reported off Lanai and Maui (Shallenberger 1981) and Hawaii, Ni'ihau, and Kauai (Mobley 2000, Baird et al. 2004, 2009). Four sightings were made during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). While nothing is known about stock structure, some genetic samples have been collected recently from around the island of Hawaii. ~~, and there have been re-sightings of individuals from the island of Hawaii (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.).~~ Resightings of individual Cuvier's beaked whales during a 21-yr study suggests long-term site fidelity and year round occurrence off the island of Hawaii (McSweeney *et al* 2007). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, Cuvier's beaked whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into three discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) Hawaiian waters (this report), 2) Alaskan waters, and 3) waters off California, Oregon and Washington. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

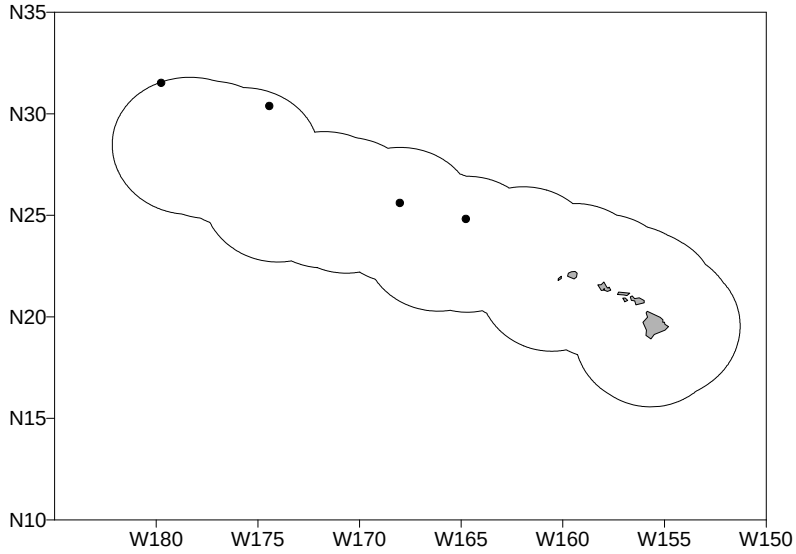


Figure 1. Cuvier's beaked whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

Wade and Gerrodette (1993) made an estimate for Cuvier's beaked whales in the eastern tropical Pacific, but it is not known whether any of these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. Seven sightings of Cuvier's beaked whales were made. An abundance estimate of 43 (CV=0.51) Cuvier's beaked whales was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000).~~ The data on which this estimate was based are now over 8 years old. Based on the photo-identification catalog for the island of Hawaii, a minimum of 35 individuals are known to occur there (McSweeney *et al.* 2007). ~~Both studies This study underestimated the total number of Cuvier's beaked whales within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, this species is known to spend a large proportion of time diving, causing additional downward bias in the abundance estimate. The data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old~~. A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~12,728 (CV=0.83)~~ 15,242 (CV=1.43) Cuvier's beaked whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006), including a correction factor for missed diving animals. This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~6,919~~ 6,269 Cuvier's beaked whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~6,919~~ 6,269) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a species of unknown status with no known fishery mortality within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~69~~ 63 Cuvier's beaked whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans are reported for all pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993~~), but no takes of Cuvier's beaked whales have been documented. None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004)~~. There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no Cuvier's beaked whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010) .However, ~~three~~ one unidentified cetacean~~s~~, which may have been a Cuvier's beaked whale~~s~~, was ~~were~~ taken in ~~this~~ the DSLL fishery in international waters (Forney 2009) ~~(Figure 2, Forney 2004)~~. ~~Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of Cuvier's beaked whale interactions are unknown~~.

Other Mortality

In recent years, there has been increasing concern that loud underwater sounds, such as active sonar and seismic operations, may be harmful to beaked whales (Malakoff 2002). The use of active sonar from military vessels has been implicated in mass strandings of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea during 1996 (Frantzis 1998), the Bahamas during 2000 (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001), and the Canary Islands 2002 (Martel 2002). Similar military active sonar operations occur around the Hawaiian islands. It has been suggested that quick ascent from deep dives in response to acoustic exposure could lead to death in beaked whales (Cox *et al.* 2006). A modeling exercise based on dive data from Blainville's, Cuvier's and northern bottlenose whales suggest that the dive habits of all three species produce tissue nitrogen saturation levels that would normally cause decompression sickness in terrestrial mammals (Hooker *et al.* 2009). The longer dives and shorter surface intervals of Cuvier's beaked whales may put them at higher risk for decompression sickness than other species, possibly increasing their susceptibility to high-intensity underwater noise (Hooker *et al.* 2009). No estimates of potential mortality or serious injury are available for U.S. waters.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Cuvier's beaked whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. Because there have been no reported fishery related mortality or injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the ~~The~~ Hawaiian stock of Cuvier's beaked whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality~~

~~within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ. However, the effect of potential interactions of unidentified beaked whales (which may have been Cuvier's beaked whales) with the Hawaii based longline fishery in U.S. and international waters is not known. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for Cuvier's beaked whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995), particularly for deep-diving whales like Cuvier's beaked whales that feed in the oceans' "sound channel".

REFERENCES

Baird, R.W., D.J. McSweeney, A.D. Ligon and D.L. Webster. 2004. Tagging feasibility and diving of Cuvier's beaked whales (*Ziphius cavirostris*) and Blainville's beaked whales (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) in Hawai'i**.** Report prepared under Order No. AB133F-03-SE-0986 to the Hawai'i Wildlife Fund, Volcano, HI, from the Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, La Jolla, CA, 92037 USA.

Baird, R.W., G.S. Schorr, D.L. Webster, S.D. Mahaffy, D.J. McSweeney, M.B. Hanson, and K.D. Andrews. 2009. Movements of satellite-tagged Cuvier's and Blainville's beaked whales in Hawaii: Evidence for an offshore population of Blainville's beaked whales. Report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 15p.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Cox, T.M., T.J. Ragen, A.J. Read, E. Vos, R.W. Baird, K. Balcomb, J. Barlow, J. Caldwell, T. Cranford, L. Crum, A. D'Amico, G. D'Spain, A. Fernandez, J. Finneran, R. Gentry, W. Gerth, F. Gulland, J.A. Hildebrand, D. Houser, T. Hullar, P.D. Jepson, D. Ketten, C.D. Macleod, P. Miller, S. Moore, D. Mountain, D. Palka, P. Ponganis, S. Rommel, T. Rowles, B. Taylor, P. Tyack, D. Wartzok, R. Gisiner, J. Mead, and L. Brenner. 2006. Understanding the impacts of anthropogenic sound on beaked whales. J.Cetacean Res. Manag. 7: 177-187.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92038. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Frantzis, A. 1998. Does acoustic testing strand whales? Nature 392(5):29.

Galbreath, E. C. 1963. Three beaked whales stranded on the Midway Islands, central Pacific Ocean. J. Mamm. 44:422-423.

Heyning, J. E. 1989. Cuvier's beaked whale *Ziphius cavirostris* G. Cuvier, 1823. *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4: The River Dolphins and Larger Toothed Whales, pp. 289-308. Academic Press, 442 pp.

Hooker, S.K., R.W. Baird, F.A. Fahlman. 2009. Could beaked whales get the bends? Effect of diving behavior and physiology on modeled gas exchange for three species: *Ziphius cavirostris*, *Mesoplodon densirostris*, and *Hyperoodon ampulata*.. Respiration Physiology and Neurobiology 117(2009): 235-246.

Malakoff, D. 2002. Suit ties whale deaths to research cruise. Science 298:722-723.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

McSweeney, D.J., R.W. Baird, and S.D. Mahaffy. 2007. Site fidelity, associations, and movements of Cuvier's (*Ziphius cavirostris*) and Blainville's (*Mesoplodon densirostris*) beaked whales off the island of Hawaii. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 23(3):666-687.

Martel, V. M. 2002. Summary of the report on the atypical mass stranding of beaked whales in the Canary Islands in September 2002 during naval exercises. Society for the Study of the Cetaceans in the Canary Archipelago (SECAC). Unpublished report. 11p.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin.

Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Richards, L. P. 1952. Cuvier's beaked whale from Hawaii. J. Mamm. 33:255.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Shallenberger, E. W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

LONGMAN'S BEAKED WHALE (*Indopacetus pacificus*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Longman's beaked whale is considered one of the rarest and least known cetacean species (Jefferson et al. 1993; Rice 1998; Dalebout et al 2003). Until recently, it was known only from two skulls found in Australia and Somalia (Longman 1926; Azzaroli 1968). Recent genetic studies (Dalebout et al. 2003) have revealed that sightings of 'tropical bottlenose whales' (*Hyperoodon* sp.; Pitman et al. 1999) in the Indopacific region were in fact Longman's beaked whales, providing the first description of the external appearance of this species. Although originally described as *Mesoplodon pacificus* (Longman 1926), it has been proposed that this species is sufficiently unique to be placed within its own genus, *Indopacetus* (Moore 1968; Dalebout et al. 2003). The distribution of Longman's beaked whale, as determined from stranded specimens and sighting records of 'tropical bottlenose whales', includes tropical waters from the eastern Pacific westward through the Indian Ocean to the eastern coast of Africa. No strandings of Longman's beaked whales have been documented in Hawaiian waters, although numerous strandings of unidentified beaked whales have been reported (Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). One sighting of Longman's beaked whale was made during a 2002 survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there is one Pacific stock of Longman's beaked whales, found within waters of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ. This stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

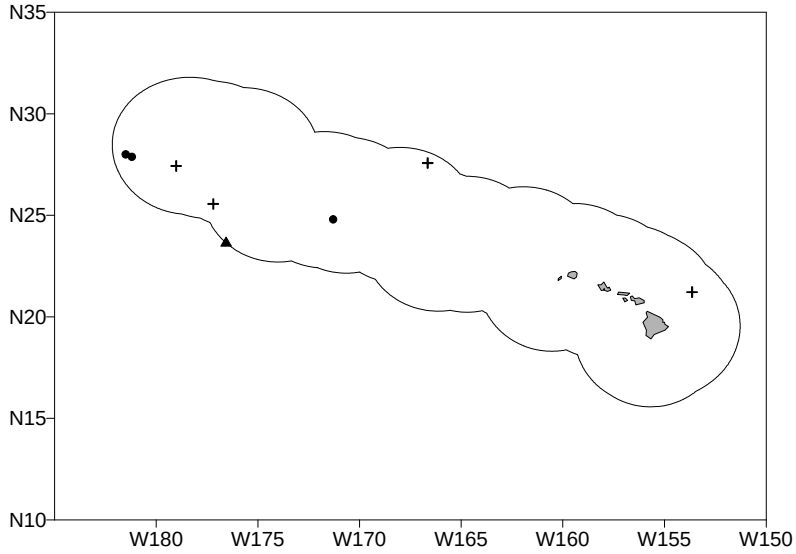


Figure 1. Sighting locations of Indopacetus pacificus (triangle), Mesoplodon densirostris (circle) and unidentified Mesoplodon beaked whales (crosses) during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~766 (CV=1.05)~~ 1,007 (CV=1.25) Longman's beaked whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~371~~ 443 Longman's beaked whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for Longman's beaked whales.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~371~~ 443) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~3.7~~ 4.4 Longman's beaked whales per year.

HUMAN CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993)~~, but none of these interactions are known to have involved Longman's beaked whales~~. ~~None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort (measured as the number of sets made) observed by on-board observers (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no Longman's beaked whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010). However, one unidentified cetacean, which may have been a Longman's beaked whale, was taken in the DSLL fishery. ~~However, there were two interactions with unidentified whales that may have been Longman's beaked whales (Figure 2).~~ ~~Since 2001, the Hawaii-based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of Longman's beaked whale interactions are unknown~~.

~~**Figure 2.** Locations of observed takes of possible Longman's beaked whales (open diamonds) in the Hawaii-based longline fishery 1994-2002. The solid lines represent the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ).~~

Other Mortality

In recent years, there has been increasing concern that loud underwater sounds, such as active sonar and seismic operations, may be harmful to beaked whales (Malakoff 2002). The use of active sonar from military vessels has been implicated in mass strandings of beaked whales in the Mediterranean Sea during 1996 (Frantzis 1998), the Bahamas during 2000 (U.S. Dept. of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy 2001), and the Canary Islands 2002 (Martel, 2002). Similar military active sonar operations occur around the Hawaiian Islands. It has been suggested that quick ascent from deep dives in response to acoustic exposure could lead to death in beaked whales (Cox *et al.*

2006). A modeling exercise based on dive data from Blainville's, Cuvier's and northern bottlenose whales suggest that the dive habits of all three species produce tissue nitrogen saturation levels that would normally cause decompression sickness in terrestrial mammals (Hooker *et al.* 2009). No estimates of potential mortality or serious injury are available for U.S. waters.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Longman's beaked whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of Longman's beaked whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.~~ Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries, the Hawaiian stock of Longman's beaked whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~However, the effect of potential interactions of unidentified beaked whales (which may have been Longman's beaked whales) with the Hawaii-based longline fishery in U.S. and international waters is not known. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for Longman's beaked whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995), particularly for deep-diving whales like Longman's beaked whales that feed in the oceans' "sound channel".

REFERENCES

Azzaroli, M. L. 1968. Second specimen of *Mesoplodon pacificus*, the rarest living beaked whale. Monitore Zoologico Italiano (N.S.) 2:67-79.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Cox, T.M., T.J. Ragen, A.J. Read, E. Vos, R.W. Baird, K. Balcomb, J. Barlow, J. Caldwell, T. Cranford, L. Crum, A. D'Amico, G. D'Spain, A. Fernandez, J. Finneran, R. Gentry, W. Gerth, F. Gulland, J.A. Hildebrand, D. Houser, T. Hullar, P.D. Jepson, D. Ketten, C.D. Macleod, P. Miller, S. Moore, D. Mountain, D. Palka, P. Ponganis, S. Rommel, T. Rowles, B. Taylor, P. Tyack, D. Wartzok, R. Gisiner, J. Mead, and L. Brenner. 2006. Understanding the impacts of anthropogenic sound on beaked whales. J.Cetacean Res. Manag. 7: 177-187.

Dalebout, M. L., G. J. B. Ross, C. S. Baker, R. C. Anderson, P. B. Best, V. G. Cockcroft, H. L. Hinsz, V. Peddemors and R. L. Pitman. 2003. Appearance, distribution and genetic distinctiveness of Longman's beaked whale, *Indopacetus pacificus*. Marine Mammal Science 19:421-461.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Frantzis, A. 1998. Does acoustic testing strand whales? Nature 392(5):29.

Hooker, S.K., R.W. Baird, F.A. Fahlman. 2009. Could beaked whales get the bends? Effect of diving behavior and physiology on modeled gas exchange for three species: *Ziphius cavirostris*, *Mesoplodon densirostris*, and *Hyperoodon ampulata*.. Respiration Physiology and Neurobiology 117(2009): 235-246.

Jefferson, T. A., S. Leatherwood, and M. A. Webber. 1993. FAO species identification guide: marine mammals of the world. United States Environment Programme; Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), Rome. 320p.

Longman, H.A. 1926. New records of Cetacea, with a list of Queensland species. Memoirs of the Queensland Museum 8:266-278.

Malakoff, D. 2002. Suit ties whale deaths to research cruise. Science 298:722-723

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

Martel, V. M. 2002. Summary of the report on the atypical mass stranding of beaked whales in the Canary Islands in September 2002 during naval exercises. Society for the Study of the Cetaceans in the Canary Archipelago (SECAC). Unpublished report. 11p.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Moore J. C. 1968. Relationships among the living genera of beaked whales. Fieldiana Zoology 53:209-298.

NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W. F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Pitman, R. L., D. M. Palacios, P. L Brennan, K.C. III. Balcomb, and T. Miyashita. 1999. Sightings and possible identity of a bottlenose whale in the tropical Indo-Pacific: *Indopacetus pacificus?* Marine Mammal Science 15:531-549.

Rice, D. W. 1998. Marine Mammals of the world: systematics and distribution. Special Publication 4. The Society for Marine Mammalogy, Lawrence, KS, USA.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

U.S. Department of Commerce and Secretary of the Navy. 2001. Joint Interim Report, Bahamas Marine Mammal Stranding Event of 15_16 March 2000. Available from NOAA, NMFS, Office of Protected Resources, Silver Spring, MD.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

PYGMY SPERM WHALE (*Kogia breviceps*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Pygmy sperm whales are found throughout the world in tropical and warm-temperate waters (Caldwell and Caldwell 1989). Between the years 1949 and ~~2002~~ 2008, at least ~~22~~35 strandings of this species were reported in the Hawaiian Islands (Shallenberger 1981, Tomich 1986; Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005, NMFS database). A stranded calf was held for several days at Sea Life Park (Pryor 1975~~:94~~). Shallenberger (1981) reported three sightings off Oahu and Maui. Two sightings of pygmy or dwarf (*Kogia sima*) sperm whales were made between Hawaii and Maui during 1993-98 aerial surveys within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000). Two sightings were made during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). Baird (2005) reported one sighting off Ni'ihau and another off the island off Hawaii (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.). Nothing is known about stock structure for this species. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, pygmy sperm whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) Hawaiian waters (this report), and 2) waters off California, Oregon and Washington. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

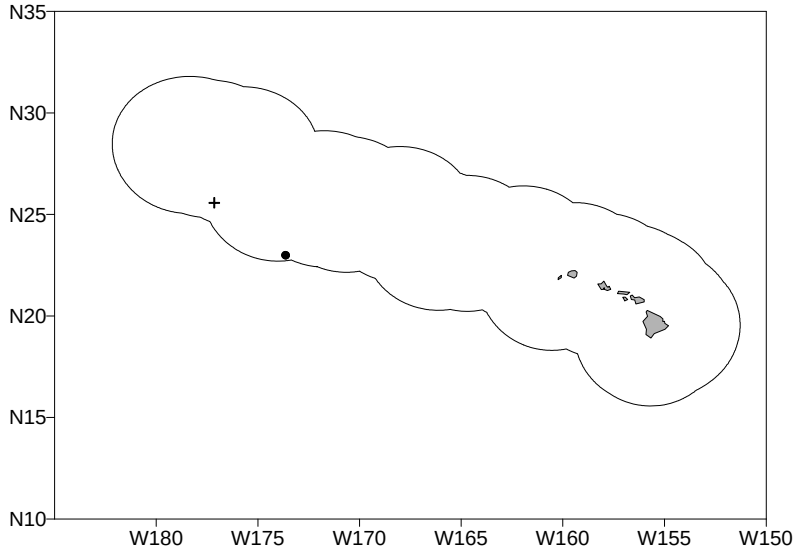


Figure 1. Sighting locations of pygmy sperm whales (filled circle) and unidentified Kogia (cross) during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. Two sightings of five pygmy or dwarf sperm whales were made; however, these sightings were excluded during abundance analyses (Mobley et al. 2000), because they were made during poor observation conditions.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~7,251 (CV=0.77)~~ 7,138 (CV=1.12) pygmy sperm whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006), including a correction factor for missed diving animals. This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~4,082~~ 3,341 pygmy sperm whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~4,082~~ 3,341) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~41~~ 33 pygmy sperm whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993)~~, but no interactions with pygmy sperm whales have been documented. None were observed hooked in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004)~~. There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, one pygmy or dwarf sperm whale was observed hooked in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) (Figure 2, McCracken & Forney 2010). Based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Andersen et al. 2008), this animal was considered not seriously injured (Forney 2009). No pygmy sperm whale s were observed hooked or entangled the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage).

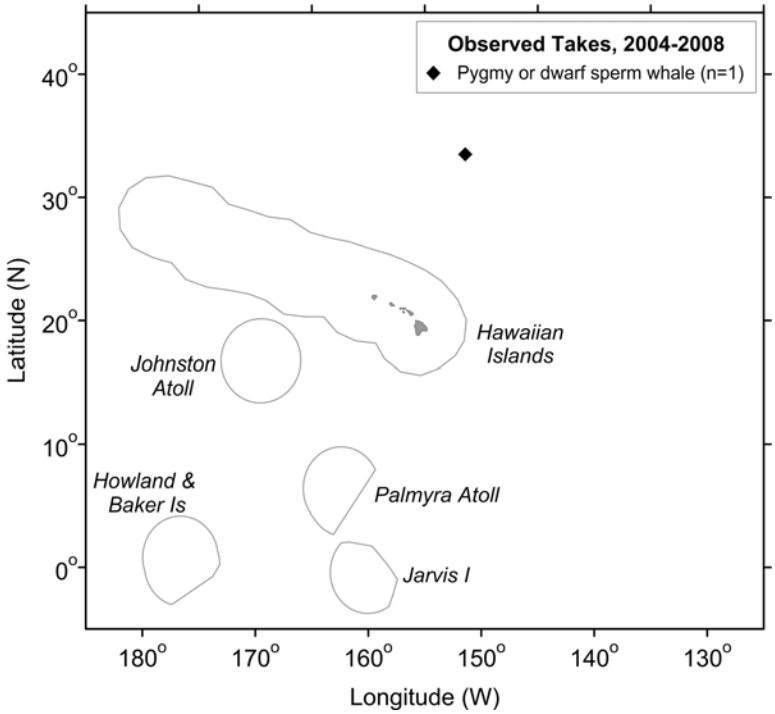


Figure 2. Location of pygmy or dwarf sperm whale take (filled diamond) in Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008. Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZs. Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of pygmy sperm whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of pygmy sperm whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for pygmy sperm whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the Hawaiian stock of pygmy sperm whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern

for whales (Richardson et al. 1995), particularly for deep-diving whales like pygmy sperm whales that feed in the oceans' "sound channel".

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of pygmy sperm whales (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (McCracken & Forney 2010). Mean annual takes are based on 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated; n/a = not available.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 0 0 0 1*	Same as observed	0.2	0 0 0 0 0	Same as observed	0
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									0

*One animal, which was either a pygmy sperm whale or dwarf sperm whales, observed not seriously injured.

REFERENCES

Baird, R.W. 2005. Sightings of dwarf (*Kogia sima*) and pygmy (*K. breviceps*) sperm whales from the main Hawaiian Islands. Pacific Science 59: 461-466. ~~in press~~.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92038. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Caldwell, D. K. and M. C. Caldwell. 1989. Pygmy sperm whale *Kogia breviceps* (de Blainville, 1838): Dwarf sperm whale *Kogia simus* Owen, 1866. *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4: The River Dolphins and Larger Toothed Whales, pp. 235-260. Academic Press, 442 pp.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Mobley, J. R., Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

NMFS Pacific Islands Regional Office Stranding Database. Available from NMFS-PIRO 1601 Kapiolani Blvd, Ste. 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Pryor, K. 1975. Lads Before the Wind: Adventures in Porpoise Training. Harper and Row, New York, 278 pp.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Tomich, P. Q. 1986. Mammals in Hawaii: A Synopsis and Notational Bibliography. Bishop Museum Press, Hawaii, 375 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

DWARF SPERM WHALE (*Kogia sima*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Dwarf sperm whales are found throughout the world in tropical to warm-temperate waters (Nagorsen 1985). Rice (1998) recently argued that the species name *simus*, was incorrect and should be replaced by *sima* to reflect rules of Latin usage. At least four strandings of dwarf sperm whales have been documented in Hawaii (Tomich 1986; Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). Two sightings of pygmy or dwarf sperms whales were made between Hawaii and Maui during 1993-98 aerial surveys within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000). Five sightings of dwarf sperm whales were made during a 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, dwarf sperm whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into two discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) Hawaiian waters (this report), and 2) waters off California, Oregon and Washington. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

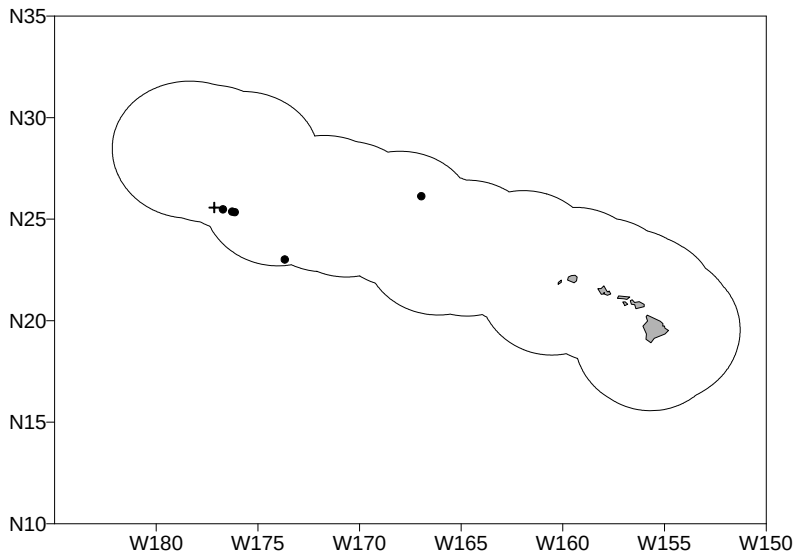


Figure 1. Sighting locations of dwarf sperm whales (filled circle) and unidentified Kogia (cross) during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

Wade and Gerrodette (1993) provided an estimate for the eastern tropical Pacific, but it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs in the central North Pacific. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. Two sightings of five pygmy or dwarf sperm whales were made; however these sightings were excluded during abundance analyses (Mobley et al. 2000), because they were made during poor observation conditions. Therefore, no abundance was estimated from these surveys for dwarf sperm whales within Hawaiian waters.~~ Baird (2005) reports that dwarf sperm whales are the sixth most commonly sighted odontocete around the Main Hawaiian Islands. This species' small size, tendency to avoid vessels, deep-diving habits, combined with the high proportion of Kogia sightings that are not identified to species, may result in negatively biased relative abundances in this region (R.W. Baird, pers. comm.). A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~19,172 (CV=0.66)~~ 17,519 (CV=0.74) dwarf sperm whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006), including a correction factor for missed diving animals. This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~11,555~~ 10,043 dwarf sperm whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~11,555~~ 10,043) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~116~~ 100 dwarf sperm whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993)~~, but no interactions with dwarf sperm whales have been documented. None were observed hooked in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004)~~. There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, one pygmy or dwarf sperm whale was observed hooked in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) (Figure 2, McCracken & Forney 2010). Based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Andersen et al. 2008), this animal was considered not seriously injured (Forney 2009). No dwarf sperm whales were observed hooked or entangled the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage).

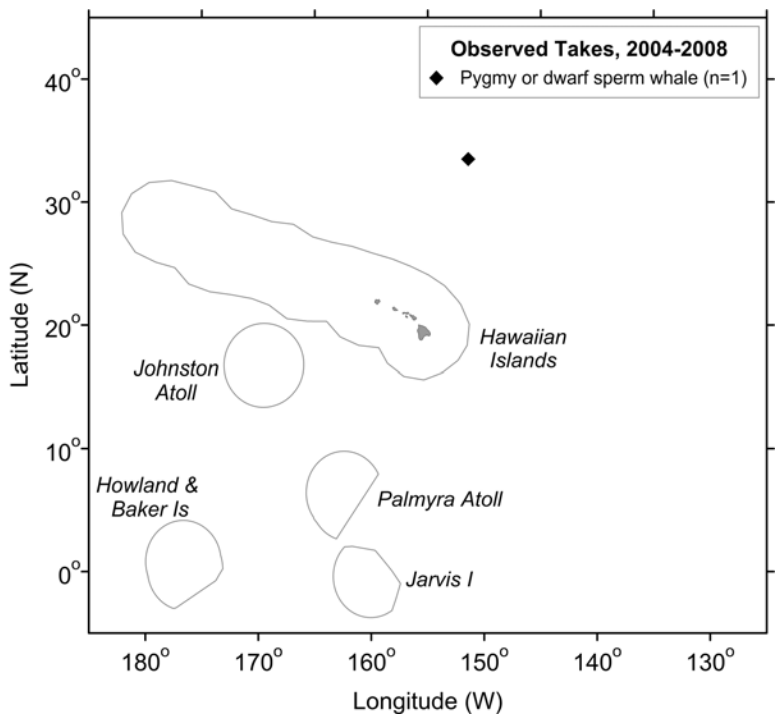


Figure 2. Location of pygmy or dwarf sperm whale take (filled diamond) in Hawaii-based longline fisheries, 2004-2008. Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZs. Fishery descriptions are provided in Appendix 1.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of dwarf sperm whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of dwarf sperm whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for dwarf sperm whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ Because there

have been no reported fishery related mortality or injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the Hawaiian stock of dwarf sperm whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. The increasing levels of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995), particularly for deep-diving whales like dwarf sperm whales that feed in the oceans' "sound channel".

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of pygmy sperm whales (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (McCracken & Forney 2010). Mean annual takes are based on 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated; n/a = not available.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury Outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	25% 28% 22% 20% 22%	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)	0 0 0 0 0	0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-) 0 (-)	0 (-)
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004 2005 2006 2007 2008	observer data	100% 100% 100% 100% 100%	0 0 0 0 1*	Same as observed	0.2	0 0 0 0 0	Same as observed	0
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									0 (-)

*One animal, which was either a pygmy sperm whale or dwarf sperm whales, observed not seriously injured.

REFERENCES

Baird, R.W. 2005. Sightings of dwarf (*Kogia sima*) and pygmy (*K. breviceps*) sperm whales from the main Hawaiian Islands. Pacific Science 59: ~~in press~~ 461-466.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92038. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nagorsen, D. 1985. Kogia simus. Mamm. Spec. 239:1-6.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Rice, D.W. 1998. Marine Mammals of the World Systematics and Distribution. Special Publication Number 4 The

Society of Marine Mammalogy. Douglas Wartzok (ed.). 231 pp.
Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.
Tomich, P. Q. 1986. Mammals in Hawaii: A Synopsis and Notational Bibliography. Bishop Museum Press, Hawaii, 375 pp.
Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.
Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

SPERM WHALE (*Physeter macrocephalus*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Sperm whales are widely distributed across the entire North Pacific and into the southern Bering Sea in summer but the majority are thought to be south of 40°N in winter (Rice 1974, 1989; Gosho et al. 1984; Miyashita et al. 1995). For management, the International Whaling Commission (IWC) had divided the North Pacific into two management regions (Donovan 1991) defined by a zig-zag line which starts at 150°W at the equator, is 160°W between 40-50°N, and ends up at 180°W north of 50°N; however, the IWC has not reviewed this stock boundary in many years (Donovan 1991). Summer/fall surveys in the eastern tropical Pacific (Wade and Gerrodette 1993) show that although sperm whales are widely distributed in the tropics, their relative abundance tapers off markedly westward towards the middle of the tropical Pacific (near the IWC stock boundary at 150°W) and tapers off northward towards the tip of Baja California. The Hawaiian Islands marked the center of a major nineteenth century whaling ground for sperm whales (Gilmore 1959; Townsend 1935). Since 1936, at least 18 strandings have been reported from Oahu, Kauai and Kure Atoll (Woodward 1972; Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). Sperm whales have also been sighted around several of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (Rice 1960; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006), off the main island of Hawaii (Lee 1993; Mobley et al. 2000) in the Kauai Channel and in the Alenuihaha Channel between Maui and the island of Hawaii (Shallenberger 1981). In addition, the sounds of sperm whales have been recorded throughout the year off Oahu (Thompson and Friedl 1982). A summer/fall 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands resulted in 43 sperm whale sightings throughout the study area (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006).

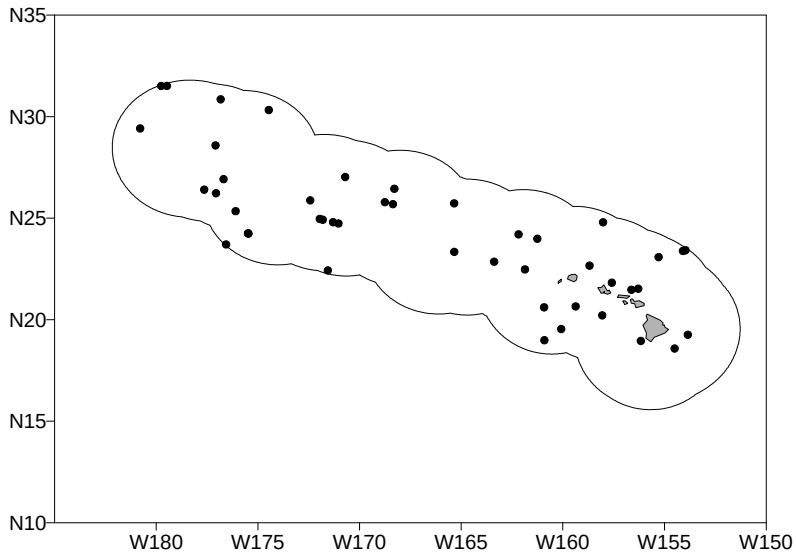


Figure 1. Sperm whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

The stock identity of sperm whales in the North Pacific has been inferred from historical catch records (Bannister and Mitchell 1980) and from trends in CPUE and tag-recapture data (Ohsumi and Masaki 1977), but much uncertainty remains. A 1997 survey designed specifically to investigate stock structure and abundance of sperm whales in the northeastern temperate Pacific revealed no apparent hiatus in distribution between the U.S. EEZ off California and areas farther west, out to Hawaii (Barlow and Taylor ~~1998~~ 2005). Very preliminary genetic analyses revealed significant differences between sperm whales off the coast of California, Oregon and Washington and those sampled offshore to Hawaii (Mesnick et al., unpubl. data); analyses of additional genetic samples are ongoing at the NMFS, Southwest Fisheries Science Center. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, sperm whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into three discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters around Hawaii (this report), 2) California, Oregon and Washington waters, and 3) Alaskan waters. This stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

POPULATION SIZE

A large 1982 abundance estimate for the entire eastern North Pacific (Gosho et al. 1984) was based on a

CPUE method which is no longer accepted as valid by the International Whaling Commission. A spring 1997 combined visual and acoustic line-transect survey conducted in the eastern temperate North Pacific resulted in estimates of ~~24,000 (CV=0.46)~~ 26,300 (CV=0.81) sperm whales based on visual sightings, and ~~39,200 (CV=0.60)~~ 32,100 (CV=0.36) based on acoustic detections and visual group size estimates (Barlow and Taylor ~~1998~~ 2005). Sperm whales appear to be a good candidate for acoustic surveys due to the increased range of detection; however, visual estimates of group size are still required (Barlow and Taylor 2005). In the eastern tropical Pacific, the abundance of sperm whales has been estimated as 22,700 (95% C.I.=14,800-34,600; Wade and Gerrodette 1993). However, it is not known whether any or all of these animals routinely enter the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998. An average abundance estimate of 66 (CV=0.56) sperm whales was calculated from the combined survey data (Mobley et al. 2000). This study underestimated the total number of sperm whales within the U.S. EEZ off Hawaii, because areas around the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) and beyond 25 nautical miles from the main islands were not surveyed. Furthermore, this species is known to spend a large proportion of time diving, causing additional downward bias in the abundance estimate. The data on which this estimate was based are now over 5 years old.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~7,082 (CV=0.30)~~ 6,919 (CV=0.81) sperm whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006), including a correction factor for missed diving animals. This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~5,531~~ 3,805 sperm whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data on current population trend are available.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data on current or maximum net productivity rate are available.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size (~~5,531~~ 3,805) within the U.S. EEX of the Hawaiian Islands times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.1 (the default value for an endangered species; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~11~~ 7.6 sperm whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).

Interactions with cetaceans are

~~**Figure 2.** Location of the observed sperm whale take in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, 1998-2002 (filled diamond), and the take observed during an experimental longline set in 2002 (open diamond). Solid lines represent the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ).~~

reported for all pelagic fisheries, and large whales have been entangled in longlines off the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta and Henderson 1993; Forney 2009~~NMFS/PIR, unpublished data~~). ~~Between 1994 and 2002, one sperm whale was observed entangled within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ in the Hawaii based longline fishery, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Table 1; Forney 2004). During the 905 observed trips with 11,014 sets, the average interaction rate of sperm whales was one animal per 905 fishing trips, or one animal per 11,014 sets. The caught animal was apparently able to free itself and was not considered seriously injured (Forney 2004), following established guidelines for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Angliss and DeMaster 1998). The average 5 yr estimate of annual mortality and serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ during 1998-2002 is zero sperm whales. One additional sperm whale was observed taken in an experimental set outside the U.S. EEZ, but the severity of its injuries could not be determined (Forney 2004). Since 2001, the Hawaii based longline fishery has undergone a series of regulatory changes, primarily to protect sea turtles (NMFS 2001). Potential impacts of these regulatory changes on the rate of sperm whale interactions are unknown.~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no sperm whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010).

~~**Table 1.** Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of sperm whales (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Forney 2004). Mean annual takes are based on 1998-2002 data unless otherwise indicated; n/a = not available.~~

~~Fishery Name~~	~~Year(s)~~	~~Data Type~~	~~Percent Observer Coverage~~	~~Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ~~			~~Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ~~		
				~~Observed~~	~~Estimated (CV in parentheses)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)~~	~~Observed~~	~~Estimated (CV in parentheses)~~	~~Mean Annual Takes (CV in parentheses)~~
~~**Hawaii based longline fishery**~~	~~1998~~ ~~1999~~ ~~2000~~ ~~2001~~ ~~2002~~	~~1998-2002 observer data~~	~~4.6%~~ ~~3.5%~~ ~~11.8%~~ ~~22.7%~~ ~~24.9%~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~0 ( )~~	~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~ ~~0~~	~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~ ~~0 ( )~~	~~0 ( )~~
~~**Experimental longline fishery**~~	~~2002~~	~~observed~~		~~1~~	~~n/a~~	~~0.2 (n/a)~~			
~~**Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters**~~									~~0 ( )~~

Historical Mortality

Between 1800 and 1909, about 60,842 sperm whales were estimated taken in the North Pacific (Best 1976). The reported take of North Pacific sperm whales by commercial whalers between 1947 and 1987 totaled 258,000 (C. Allison, pers. comm.). Factory ships operated as far south as 20°N (Ohsumi 1980). Ohsumi (1980) lists an additional 28,198 sperm whales taken mainly in coastal whaling operations from 1910 to 1946. Based on the massive under-reporting of Soviet catches, Brownell et al. (1998) estimate that about 89,000 whales were additionally taken by the Soviet pelagic whaling fleet between 1949 and 1979. The Japanese coastal operations apparently also under-reported catches by an unknown amount (Kasuya 1998). Thus a total of at least 436,000 sperm whales were taken between 1800 and the end of commercial whaling for this species in 1987. Of this grand total, an estimated 33,842 were taken by Soviet and Japanese pelagic whaling operations in the eastern North Pacific from the longitude of Hawaii to the U.S. West coast, between 1961 and 1976 (Allen 1980, IWC statistical Areas II and III), and 965 were reported taken in land-based U.S. West coast whaling operations between 1947 and 1971 (Ohsumi 1980). In addition, 13 sperm whales were taken by shore whaling stations in California between 1919 and 1926 (Clapham et al. 1997). There has been a prohibition on taking sperm whales in the North Pacific since 1988, but large-scale pelagic whaling stopped earlier, in 1980. Some of the whales taken during the whaling era were certainly from a population or populations that occur within Hawaiian waters.

STATUS OF STOCK

The only estimate of the status of North Pacific sperm whales in relation to carrying capacity (Gosho et al. 1984) is based on a CPUE method which is no longer accepted as valid. The status of sperm whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. Sperm whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the Hawaiian stock is

automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for sperm whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. Furthermore, the effect of interactions with the Hawaii based longline fishery in U.S. and international waters is not known.~~ Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the Hawaiian stock of sperm whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995), particularly for deep-diving whales like sperm whales that feed in the oceans' "sound channel".

REFERENCES

~~Angliss, R. P. and D. P. DeMaster. 1998. Differentiating Serious and Non_Serious Injury of Marine Mammals Taken Incidental to Commercial Fishing Operations: Report of the Serious Injury Workshop 1_2 April 1997, Silver Spring, Maryland. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-13. 48 pp.~~

Allen, K. R. 1980. Size distribution of male sperm whales in the pelagic catches. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue 2:51-56.

Allison, C. International Whaling Commission. The Red House, 135 Station Road, Impington, Cambridge, UK CB4 9NP.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

~~Barlow, J. and B. L. Taylor. 1998. Preliminary abundance of sperm whales in the northeastern temperate Pacific estimated from a combined visual and acoustic survey. Paper SC/50/CAWS20 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1998 (unpublished). xx pp.~~

Barlow, J and B. Taylor. 2005. Estimates of sperm whale abundance in the northeast temperate Pacific from a combined visual and acoustic survey. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 21(3):429-445.

Bannister, J. and E. Mitchell. 1980. North Pacific sperm whale stock identity: distributional evidence from Maury and Townsend charts. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. (Spec. Iss. 2):219-230.

Best, P. B. 1976. A review of world sperm whale stocks. Paper ACMRR/MM/SC/8 Rev. 1, FAO Scientific Consultation of Marine Mammals, Bergen, Norway.

Brownell, R. L., Jr., A. V. Yablokov and V. A. Zemmsky. 1998. USSR pelagic catches of North Pacific sperm whales, 1949-1979: Conservation implications. Paper SC/50/CAWS27 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1998 (unpublished).

Clapham, P. J., S. Leatherwood, I. Szczepaniak, and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1997. Catches of humpback and other whales from shore stations at Moss Landing and Trinidad, California, 1919-1926. Marine Mammal Science 13(3):368-394.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Gilmore, R. M. 1959. On the mass strandings of sperm whales. Pac. Nat. 1(9-10):3-15.

Gosho, M. E., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus*. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46(4):54-64.

Kasuya, T. 1998. Evidence of statistical manipulations in Japanese coastal sperm whale fishery. Paper SC/50/CAWS10 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1998 (unpublished).

Lee, T. 1993. Summary of cetacean survey data collected between the years of 1974 and 1985. NOAA Tech.Mem. NMFS 181, 184pp.

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center

Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p.
Mesnick, S. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, NMFS, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, California, 92037.
Miyashita, T., H. Kato, and T. Kasuya (Eds.). 1995. Worldwide map of cetacean distribution based on Japanese sighting data. Volume 1. National Research Institute of Far Seas Fisheries, Shizuoka, Japan. 140pp.
Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.
~~NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.~~
~~NMFS 2001. Western Pacific Pelagic Fisheries Biological Opinion. Available from Pacific Islands Region, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814 (http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/pir).~~
Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.
Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.
Ohsumi, S. 1980. Catches of sperm whales by modern whaling in the North Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. (Spec. Iss. 2):11-18.
Ohsumi, S. and Y. Masaki. 1977. Stocks and trends of abundance of the sperm whale in the North Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 27:167-175.
Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.
Rice, D. W. 1960. Distribution of the bottle-nosed dolphin in the leeward Hawaiian Islands. J. Mamm. 41:407-408.
Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.
Rice, D. W. 1989. Sperm whale *Physeter macrocephalus* Linneaus, 1758. *In*: S. H. Ridgway and R. Harrison (eds.), Handbook of Marine Mammals, Vol. 4: The River Dolphins and Larger Toothed Whales, pp. 177-233. Academic Press, 442 pp.
Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.
Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.
Thompson, P. O. and W. A. Friedl. 1982. A long term study of low frequency sound from several species of whales off Oahu, Hawaii. Cetology 45:1-19.
Townsend, C. H. 1935. The distribution of certain whales as shown by logbook records of American whaleships. Zoologica 19:1-50.
Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.
Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.
Woodward, P. W. 1972. The natural history of Kure Atoll, northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Atoll Res. Bull. 164:302.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

BLUE WHALE (*Balaenoptera musculus musculus*): ~~Western~~ Central North Pacific Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) has formally considered only one management stock for blue whales in the North Pacific (Donovan 1991), but up to five populations have been proposed (Reeves et al. 1998). Rice (1974) hypothesized that blue whales from Baja California migrated far offshore to fed in the eastern Aleutians or Gulf of Alaska and returned to feed in California waters; however, he has more recently concluded that the California population is separate from the Gulf of Alaska population (Rice 1992). Length frequency analyses (Gilpatrick et al. 1996) and photo-identification studies (Calambokidis et al. 1995) support separate population status for blue whales feeding off California and those feeding in Alaskan waters. Whaling catch data indicate that whales feeding along the Aleutian Islands are probably part of a central Pacific stock (Reeves et al. 1998), which may migrate to offshore waters north of Hawaii in winter (Berzin and Rovnin 1966). Blue whale feeding aggregations have not been found in Alaska despite several surveys (Leatherwood et al. 1982; Stewart et al. 1987; Forney and Brownell 1996); however, blue whale calls have been recorded there between 1995 and 2001 (Stafford et al. 2001, Stafford 2003).

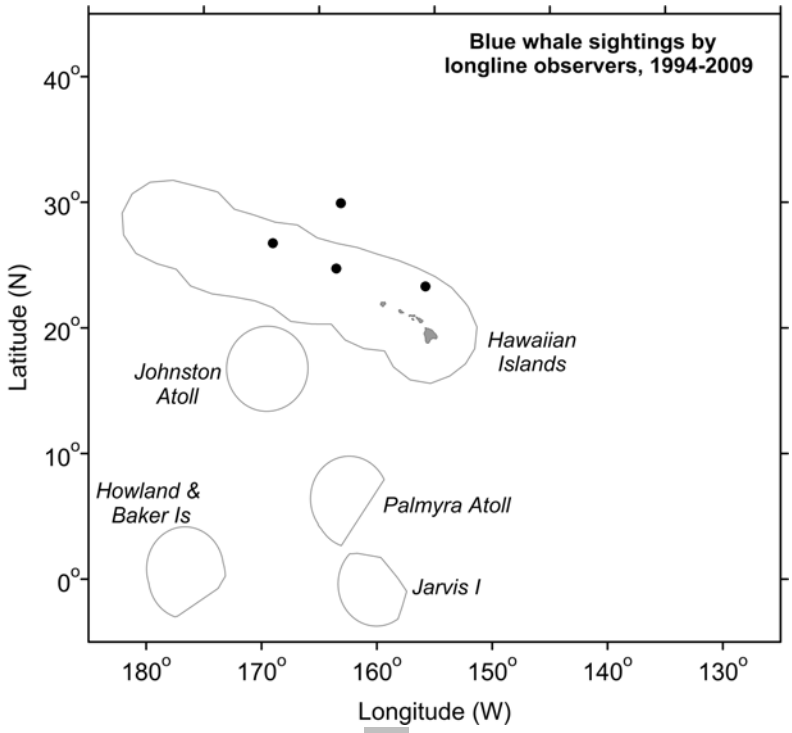


Figure 1. Locations of ~~two~~ four blue whale sightings made by observers aboard Hawaii-based longline fishing vessels ~~in~~ between July 1994 and ~~February 1997~~ December 2009 (NMFS/PIR unpublished data). Solid lines represent the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ).

Recent analyses of acoustic data obtained throughout the North Pacific Ocean (Stafford et al. 2001; Stafford 2003) has revealed two distinct blue whale call types, suggesting two North Pacific stocks: eastern and ~~western~~ central (formerly western). The regional occurrence patterns indicate that blue whales from the eastern North Pacific stock winter off Mexico, central America, and as far south as 8° S (Stafford et al. 1999), and feed during summer off the U. S. West Coast and to a lesser extent in the Gulf of Alaska, ~~and in central North Pacific waters~~. This stock has previously been documented to feed in waters off California (and occasionally as far north as British Columbia; Calambokidis et al. 1998) in summer/fall (from June to November) migrating south to productive areas off Mexico (Calambokidis et al. 1990) and as far south as the Costa Rica Dome (10° N) in winter/spring (Mate et al. 1999, Stafford et al. 1999). Blue whales belonging to the ~~western~~ central Pacific stock appear to feed in summer southwest of Kamchatka, south of the Aleutians, and in the Gulf of Alaska (Stafford 2003; Watkins et al. 2000), and in winter they migrate to lower latitudes in the western Pacific and less frequently in the central Pacific, including Hawaii (Stafford et al. 2001). The only published sighting record of blue whales near Hawaii is that of Berzin and Rovnin (1966). Two sightings have been made by observers on Hawaii-based longline vessels (Figure 1; NMFS/PIR, unpublished data). Additional evidence that blue whales occur in this area comes from acoustic recordings made off Oahu and Midway Islands (Northrop et al. 1971; Thompson and Friedl 1982), which included at least some within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ). The recordings made off Hawaii showed bimodal peaks throughout the year (Stafford et al. 2001), with ~~western~~ central Pacific call types heard during winter and eastern Pacific calls heard during summer. For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA)

stock assessment reports, there are two blue whale stocks within the Pacific U.S. EEZ: 1) the ~~western~~ central North Pacific stock (this report), which includes whales found around the Hawaiian Islands during winter, 2) the eastern North Pacific stock, which feeds primarily off California.

POPULATION SIZE

From ship line-transect surveys, Wade and Gerrodette (1993) estimated 1,400 blue whales for the eastern tropical Pacific. ~~A weighted average estimate of 1,744 blue whales is available for California, Oregon and Washington, based on shipboard line-transect surveys in 1996 and 2002 (Barlow 2003a) and photographic mark-recapture estimates (Calambokidis et al. 2003). No data are available to estimate population size for any other North Pacific blue whale population, including the putative central stock that apparently summered along the Aleutians and wintered north of Hawaii.~~ No blue whale sightings were made during a summer 1994 shipboard survey south of the Aleutian Islands (Forney and Brownell 1996), during twelve aerial surveys conducted in 1993-98 within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands (Mobley et al. 2000), or during a summer/fall 2002 shipboard surveys of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ (Barlow ~~2003b~~ 2006). Therefore, no estimate of abundance is available for the ~~western~~ central Pacific blue whale stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

No data are available to provide a minimum population estimate.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

No PBR can be calculated for this stock at this time.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans are reported for all pelagic fisheries, and large whales have been entangled in longline gear off the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta and Henderson 1993, Forney ~~2004~~ 2009). ~~Large whales have been entangled in longline gear off the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta and Henderson 1993, Forney 2004), but no interactions with blue whales were observed in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004)~~. There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no blue whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010).

Historical Mortality

At least 9,500 blue whales were taken by commercial whalers throughout the North Pacific between 1910 and 1965 (Ohsumi and Wada 1972). Some proportion of this total may have been from a population or populations that migrate seasonally into the Hawaiian EEZ. The species has been protected in the North Pacific by the IWC since 1966.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of blue whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. Blue whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the ~~Hawaiian~~ central Pacific stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for blue whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~

Because there have been no reported fishery related mortality or serious injuries of blue whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the total fishery-related mortality and serious injury of this stock can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. Increasing levels of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for blue whales (Reeves et al. 1998).

REFERENCES

~~Barlow, J. 2003a. Preliminary estimates of cetacean abundance off the U.S. West Coast: 1991-2001. Admin. Rept. LJ-03-03. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA, 92037. 26 pp.~~

~~Barlow, J. 2003b. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

Berzin, A. A. and A. A. Rovnin. 1966. Distribution and migration of whales in the northeastern part of the Pacific Ocean, Bering and Chukchi Seas. Izv. Tikhookean. Nauchno-issled, Inst. Rybn. Khoz. Okeanogr. (TINRO) 58:179-207. {In Russian}. (Translated by U.S. Dep. Inter., Bur. Commer. Fish., Seattle, Washington, 1966, pp. 103-106 *In:* Panin, K. I. (ed) Soviet Research on marine mammals of the Far East).

Calambokidis, J, T. Chandler, K. Rasmussen, G.H. Steiger, and L. Schlender. 1998. Humpback and blue whale photographic identification: Report of research in 1997. Final report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, Olympic Coast National Marine Sanctuary, University of California at Santa Cruz, and Cornell University. Cascadia Research, 218½ W. Fourth Ave., Olympia, WA 98501. 41pp.

~~Calambokidis, J, T. Chandler, L. Schlender, G.H. Steiger, and A Douglas. 2003. Research on humpback and blue whale off California, Oregon and Washington in 2002. Final contract report to Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service. 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 49pp.~~

Calambokidis, J., R. Sears, G. H. Steiger, and J. Evenson. 1995. Movement and stock structure of blue whales in the eastern North Pacific. P.19 *In*: Proceedings of the Eleventh Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Orlando, FL, 14-18 December 1995 (Abstract). Society for Marine Mammalogy, Lawrence, KS.

Calambokidis, J., G. H. Steiger, J.C. Cubbage, K.C. Balcomb, C. Ewald, S. Kruse, R. Wells, and R. Sears. 1990. Sightings and movement of blue whales off central California 1986-88 from photo-identification of individuals. Rep. Int. Whaling. Commn., Special Issue 12:343-348.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Forney, K. A. and Brownell, R. L., Jr. 1996. Preliminary report of the 1994 Aleutian Island Marine Mammal Survey. Paper SC/48/O11 presented to the International Whaling Commission, June 1996 (unpublished).

Gilpatrick, J., W. Perryman, M. Lynn, and M. A. DeAngelis. 1996. Geographic populations of blue whales (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the North Pacific Ocean investigated from whaling records and aerial photogrammetry. Paper SC/47/NP4 presented to the International Whaling Commission, May 1995 (unpublished).

Leatherwood, S., R. R. Reeves, W. F. Perrin, and W. E. Evans. 1982. Whales, dolphins, and porpoises of the eastern North Pacific and adjacent Arctic waters: A guide to their identification. NOAA Technical Rept. NMFS Circular 444. 245 pp.

Mate, B.R., B.A. Lagerquist, and J. Calambokidis. Movements of North Pacific blue whales during the feeding season off southern California and their southern fall migration. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 15(4):1246-1257.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.
~~NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, Observer Pogram, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.~~
Northrop, J., W. C. Cummings, and M. F. Morrison. 1971. Underwater 20-Hz signals recorded near Midway Island. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 49:1909-1910.
Ohsumi, S. and S. Wada. 1972. Stock assessment of blue whales in the North Pacific. Int. Whal. Commn. Sci. Comm. Rep., 20 pp.
Perrin, W.F., G.P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Spec. Iss. 15, 629pp.
Reeves, R. R., P. J. Clapham, R. L. Brownell, Jr., and G. K. Silber. 1998. Recovery plan for the blue whale (Balaenoptera musculus). Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, NOAA, Silver Spring, Maryland. 30 pp.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.
Rice, D. W. 1992. The blue whales of the southeastern North Pacific Ocean. pp. 1-3 In. Alaska Fisheries Science Center, Quart. Rept. Oct.-Dec.
Stafford, K.M., S.L. Nieukirk, and C.G. Fox. 1999. An acoustic link between blue whales in the eastern tropical Pacific and the northeast Pacific. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 15(4):1258-1268.
Stafford, K.M., S. L. Nieukirk, and G.G. Fox. 2001. Geographic and seasonal variation of blue whale calls in the North Pacific. J. Cetacean Res. Manage. 3(1):65-76.
Stafford. K.M. 2003. Two types of blue whale calls recorded in the Gulf of Alaska. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 19:682-693
Stewart, B. S., S. A. Karl, P. K. Yochem, S. Leatherwood, and J. L. Laake. 1987. Aerial surveys for cetaceans in the former Akutan, Alaska, whaling grounds. Arctic 40(1):33-42.
Thompson, P. O. and W. A. Friedl. 1982. A long term study of low frequency sound from several species of whales off Oahu, Hawaii. Cetology 45:1-19.
Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.
Watkins, W. A., J. E. George, M. A. Daher, K. Mullin, D. L. Martin, S. H. Haga, and N. A. DiMarzio. 2000. Whale call data for the North Pacific November 1995 through July 1999: Occurrence of calling whales and source locations from SOSUS and other acoustic systems. Technical Report WHOI_00_02 available from Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution. 160pp.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

FIN WHALE (*Balaenoptera physalus physalus*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Fin whales are found throughout all oceans and seas of the world from tropical to polar latitudes. They have been considered rare in Hawaiian waters. Balcomb (1987) observed 8-12 fin whales in a multispecies feeding assemblage on 20 May 1966 approx. 250 mi. south of Honolulu. Additional sightings were reported north of Oahu in May 1976 and in the Kauai Channel in February 1979 (Shallenberger 1981). More recently, a single fin whale was observed north of Kauai in February 1994 (Mobley et al. 1996), and five sightings were made during a 2002 survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2003; Figure 1). A single stranding has been reported on Maui (Shallenberger 1981). Thompson and Friedl (1982; and see Northrop et al. 1968) suggested that fin whales migrate into Hawaiian waters mainly in fall and winter, based on acoustic recordings off Oahu and Midway Islands. Although the exact positions of the whales producing the sounds could not be determined, at least some of them were almost certainly within the U.S. EEZ. More recently, McDonald and Fox (1999) reported an average of 0.027 calling fin whales per 1000^2 km (grouped by 8-hr periods) based on passive acoustic recordings within about 16 km of the north shore of Oahu.

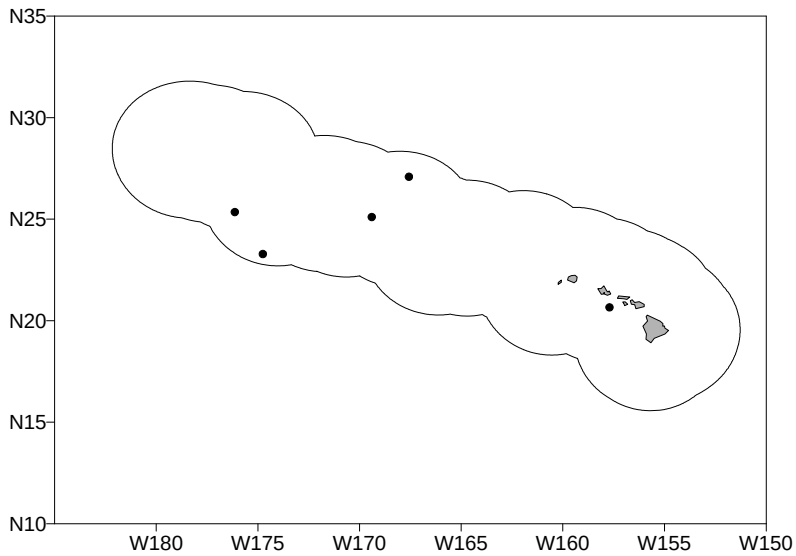


Figure 1. Fin whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2003; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) recognized two stocks of fin whales in the North Pacific: the East China Sea and the rest of the North Pacific (Donovan 1991). Mizroch et al. (1984) cites evidence for additional fin whale subpopulations in the North Pacific. There is still insufficient information to accurately determine population structure, but from a conservation perspective it may be risky to assume panmixia in the entire North Pacific. In the North Atlantic, fin whales were locally depleted in some feeding areas by commercial whaling (Mizroch et al. 1984), in part because subpopulations were not recognized. The Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports recognize three stocks of fin whales in the North Pacific: 1) the Hawaii stock (this report), 2) the California/Oregon/Washington stock, and 3) the Alaska stock. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

POPULATION SIZE

~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993-98 (Mobley et al. 2000). Only one sighting of a single fin whale was made (Mobley et al. 1996), and no abundance estimate was calculated.~~ Using passive acoustic detections from a hydrophone north of Oahu, MacDonald and Fox (1999) estimate an average density of 0.027 calling fin whales per 1000 km^2 within about 16 km from shore. However, the relationship between the number of whales present and the number of calls detected is not known, and therefore this acoustic method does not provide an estimate of absolute abundance for fin whales. A

2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of 174 (CV=0.72) fin whales (Barlow 2003). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate is 101 fin whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (101) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.1 (the default value for an endangered species; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 0.2 fin whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans are reported for all pelagic fisheries, and large whales have been entangled in longline gear off the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta and Henderson 1993, Forney ~~2004~~ 2009). ~~Between 1994 and 2002, no interactions with fin whales were observed in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no fin whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010).

Historical Mortality

Large numbers of fin whales were taken by commercial whalers throughout the North Pacific from the early 20th century until the 1970s (Tønnessen and Johnsen 1982). Approximately 46,000 fin whales were taken from the North Pacific by commercial whalers between 1947 and 1987 (C. Allison, IWC, pers. comm.). Some of the whales taken may have been from a population or populations that migrate seasonally into the Hawaiian EEZ. The species has been protected in the North Pacific by the IWC since 1976.

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of fin whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. Fin whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the Hawaiian stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for fin whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ Because there have been no reported fishery related mortality or serious injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the total fishery-related mortality and serious injury of this stock can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995).

REFERENCES

Allison, C. International Whaling Commission. The Red House, 135 Station Road, Impington, Cambridge, UK CB4 9NP.

Balcomb, K. C., III. 1987. The Whales of Hawaii. Marine Mammal Fund, 99 pp.

Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

McDonald, M. A., and C. G. Fox. 1999. Passive acoustic methods applied to fin whale population density estimation. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 105: 2643-2651.

Mizroch, S. A., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The fin whale, *Balaenoptera physalus* Mar. Fish. Rev. 46(4):20-24.

Mobley, J. R., Jr., M. Smultea, T. Norris, and D. Weller. 1996. Fin whale sighting north of Kaua'i, Hawai'i. Pacific Science 50:230-233.

~~Mobley, J. R., Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Northrop, J., W. C. Cummings, and P. O. Thompson. 1968. 20-Hz signals observed in the central Pacific. J. Acoust. Soc. Am. 43:383-384.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.

Thompson, P. O. and W. A. Friedl. 1982. A long term study of low frequency sound from several species of whales off Oahu, Hawaii. Cetology 45:1-19.

Tønnessen, J. N. and A. O. Johnsen. 1982. The History of Modern Whaling. Hurst, 789 pp.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

BRYDE'S WHALE (*Balaenoptera edeni*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

Bryde's whales occur in tropical and warm temperate waters throughout the world. Shallenberger (1981) reported a sighting of a Bryde's whale southeast of Nihoa in April 1977 (see DeLong and Brownell 1977; Leatherwood et al. 1982: Fig. 39c). Leatherwood et al. (1982) described the species as relatively abundant in summer and fall on the Mellish and Miluoki banks northeast of Hawaii and around Midway Islands, but the basis for this statement was not explained. Ohsumi and Masaki (1975) reported the tagging of "many" Bryde's whales between the Bonin and Hawaiian Islands in the winters of 1971 and 1972 (Ohsumi 1977). A summer/fall 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands resulted in 13 Bryde's whale sightings throughout the study area (Figure 1; Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006).With presently available evidence, there is no biological basis for defining separate stocks of Bryde's whales in the central North Pacific. Bryde's whales also occasionally occur off southern California (Morejohn and Rice 1973). For the MMPA stock assessment reports, Bryde's whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into two areas: 1) Hawaiian waters (this report), and 2) the eastern tropical Pacific (east of 150°W and including the Gulf of California and waters off California). The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

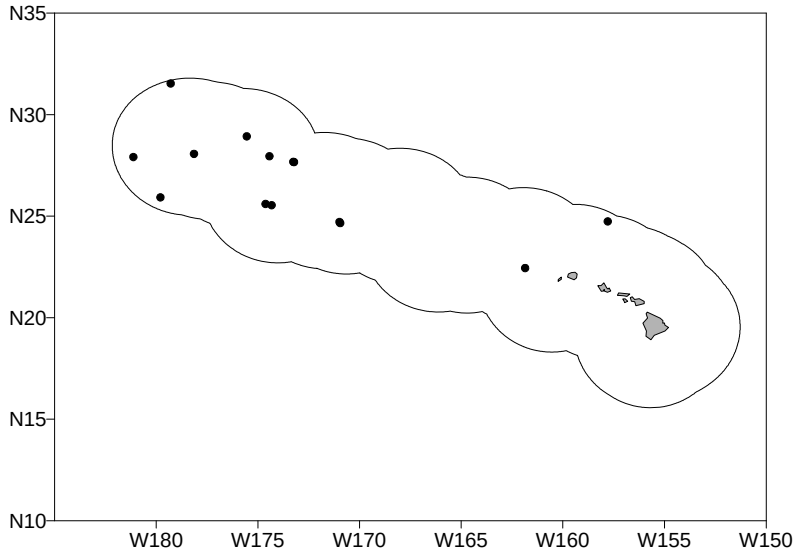


Figure 1. Bryde's whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line represents approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

Tillman (1978) concluded from Japanese and Soviet CPUE data that the stock size in the North Pacific pelagic whaling grounds, mostly to the west of the Hawaiian Islands, declined from approximately 22,500 in 1971 to 17,800 in 1977. An estimate of 13,000 (CV=0.202) Bryde's whales was made from vessel surveys in the eastern tropical Pacific between 1986 and 1990 (Wade and Gerrodette 1993). The area to which this estimate applies is mainly east and somewhat south of the Hawaiian Islands, and it is not known whether these animals are part of the same population that occurs around the Hawaiian Islands. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993, 1995 and 1998 (Mobley et al. 2000). No sightings of Bryde's whales were made.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in an abundance estimate of ~~493 (CV=0.34)~~ 469 (CV=0.45) Bryde's whales (Barlow ~~2003~~ 2006). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate (Barlow 2006) is ~~373~~ 327 Bryde's whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (~~373~~ 327) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.50 (for a stock of unknown status with no known fishery mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of ~~3.7~~ 3.3 Bryde's whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994).~~–~~ Interactions with cetaceans are reported for all pelagic fisheries, and large whales have been entangled in longline gear off the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta and Henderson 1993, Forney ~~2004~~ 2009). ~~Between 1994 and 2002, no interactions with Bryde's whales were observed in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, one Bryde's whale was observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) in international waters (McCracken & Forney 2010). Based on an evaluation of the observer's description of the interaction and following the most recently developed criteria for assessing serious injury in marine mammals (Andersen et al. 2008), this animal was considered not seriously injured (Forney 2009). No Bryde's whales were observed hooked or entangled the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage).

Table 1. Summary of available information on incidental mortality and serious injury of Bryde's whales (Hawaiian stock) in commercial fisheries, within and outside of the Hawaiian Islands EEZ (McCracken & Forney 2010 ~~Forney 2004~~). Mean annual takes are based on ~~1998-2002~~ 2004-2008 data unless otherwise indicated; n/a = not available.

Fishery Name	Year	Data Type	Percent Observer Coverage	Mortality and Serious Injury outside of U.S. EEZ			Mortality and Serious Injury within Hawaiian Islands EEZ		
				Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)	Observed	Estimated (CV)	Mean Annual Takes (CV)
Hawaii-based deep-set longline fishery	2004	observer data	25%	0	0 (-)	0 (-)	0	0 (-)	0
	2005		28%	0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
	2006		22%	0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
	2007		20%	0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
	2008		22%	0	0 (-)		0	0 (-)	
Hawaii-based shallow-set longline fishery	2004	observer data	100%	0	Same as observed	0.2	0	Same as observed	0
	2005		100%	0*			0		
	2006		100%	0			0		
	2007		100%	0			0		
	2008		100%	0			0		
Minimum total annual takes within U.S. EEZ waters									0

*One animal observed not seriously injured.

Historical Mortality

Small numbers of Bryde's whales were taken near the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands by Japanese and Soviet whaling fleets during the early 1970s (Ohsumi 1977). Pelagic whaling for Bryde's whales in the North Pacific ended after the 1979 season (IWC 1981), and coastal whaling for this species ended in the western Pacific in 1987 (IWC 1989).

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of Bryde's whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as "threatened" or "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as "depleted" under the MMPA. ~~The Hawaiian stock of Bryde's whale is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for fin whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ Given the absence of recent fishery-related mortality or serious injuries within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the Hawaiian stock of Bryde's whales is not considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA, and the total fishery mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995).

REFERENCES

Andersen, M. S., K. A. Forney, T. V. N. Cole, T. Eagle, R. Angliss, K. Long, L. Barre, L. Van Atta, D. Borggaard, T. Rowles, B. Norberg, J. Whaley, and L. Engleby. 2008. Differentiating Serious and Non-Serious Injury of Marine Mammals: Report of the Serious Injury Technical Workshop, 10-13 September 2007, Seattle, Washington. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-39. 94p.

~~Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.~~

Barlow, J. 2006. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters estimated from a summer/fall survey in 2002. Marine Mammal Science 22: 446–464.

DeLong, R. L. and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 1977. Hawaiian monk seal (*Monachus schauinslandi*) habitat and population survey in the northwestern (Leeward) Hawaiian Islands, April 1977. Northwest Alaska Fish Cent. Proc. Rep., 43 pp.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

International Whaling Commission. 1981. Japan. Progress report on cetacean research June 1979-May 1980. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 31:195-200.

International Whaling Commission. 1989. Japan. Progress report on cetacean research June 1987 to April 1988. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 39:201-204.

Leatherwood, S., R. R. Reeves, W. F. Perrin, and W. E. Evans. 1982. Whales, dolphins, and porpoises of the eastern North Pacific and adjacent arctic waters: A guide to their identification. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 444, 245 pp.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

Mobley, J. R. , Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.

Morejohn, G. V. and D. W. Rice. 1973. First record of Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera edeni*) off California. Cal. Fish Game 59:313-315.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Ohsumi, S. 1977. Stocks and trends of abundance of the sperm whale in the North Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 27:167-175.

Ohsumi, S. and Y. Masaki. 1975. Japanese whale marking in the North Pacific, 1963-72. Bull. Far Seas Fish. Res. Lab. 12:171-219.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise.

Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.
Shallenberger, E.W. 1981. The status of Hawaiian cetaceans. Final report to U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. MMC-77/23, 79pp.
Tillman, M. F. 1978. Modified Delury estimates of the North Pacific Bryde's whale stock. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 28:315-317.
Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.
Wade, P. R. and T. Gerrodette. 1993. Estimates of cetacean abundance and distribution in the eastern tropical Pacific. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 43:477-493.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

SEI WHALE (*Balaenoptera borealis borealis*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) only considers one stock of sei whales in the North Pacific (Donovan 1991), but some evidence exists for multiple populations (Masaki 1977; Mizroch et al. 1984; Horwood 1987). Sei whales are distributed far out to sea in temperate regions of the world and do not appear to be associated with coastal features. Whaling effort for this species was distributed continuously across the North Pacific between 45-55°N (Masaki 1977). Two sei whales that were tagged off California were later killed off Washington and British Columbia (Rice 1974) and the movement of tagged animals has been noted in many other regions of the North Pacific. There is still insufficient information to accurately determine population structure, but from a conservation perspective it may be risky to assume panmixia in the entire North Pacific. Four sightings of sei whales were recently made during a summer/fall 2002 shipboard survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Figure 1; Barlow 2003). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, sei whales within the Pacific U.S. EEZ are divided into three discrete, non-contiguous areas: 1) waters around Hawaii (this report), 2) California, Oregon and Washington waters, and 3) Alaskan waters. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

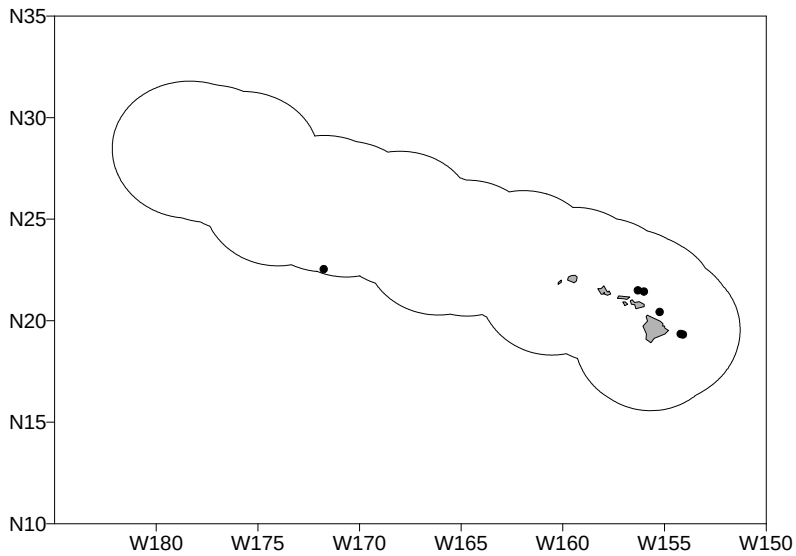


Figure 1. Sei whale sighting locations during the 2002 shipboard cetacean survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2003; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Outer line indicates approximate boundary of survey area and U.S. EEZ.

POPULATION SIZE

Ohsumi and Wada (1974) estimate the pre-whaling abundance of sei whales to be 58,000-62,000 in the North Pacific. Later, Tillman (1977) used a variety of different methods to estimate the abundance of sei whales in the North Pacific and revised this pre-whaling estimate to 42,000. His estimates for the year 1974 ranged from 7,260 to 12,620. All methods depend on using the history of catches and trends in CPUE or sighting rates; there have been no direct estimates of sei whale abundance in the entire North Pacific based on sighting surveys. ~~As part of the Marine Mammal Research Program of the Acoustic Thermometry of Ocean Climate (ATOC) study, a total of twelve aerial surveys were conducted within about 25 nmi of the main Hawaiian Islands in 1993-98 (Mobley et al. 2000), but no sightings of sei whales were made.~~ A 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in a summer/fall abundance estimate of 77 (CV=1.06) sei whales (Barlow 2003). This is currently the best available abundance estimate for this stock, but the majority of sei whales would be expected to be at higher latitudes in their feeding grounds at this time of year.

Minimum Population Estimate

The log-normal 20th percentile of the 2002 abundance estimate is 37 sei whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend. Although the population in the North Pacific is expected to have grown since being given protected status in 1976, the possible effects of continued unauthorized takes (Yablokov 1994) make this uncertain.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for sei whales.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

The potential biological removal (PBR) level for this stock is calculated as the minimum population size within the U.S. EEZ of the Hawaiian Islands (37) times one half the default maximum net growth rate for cetaceans (½ of 4%) times a recovery factor of 0.1 (the default value for an endangered species; Wade and Angliss 1997), resulting in a PBR of 0.1 sei whales per year.

HUMAN-CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans are reported for all pelagic fisheries, and large whales have been entangled in longline gear off the Hawaiian Islands (Nitta and Henderson 1993; Forney ~~2004~~ 2009). ~~Between 1994 and 2002, no interactions with sei whales were observed in the Hawaii-based longline fishery, with approximately 4-25% of all effort observed (Forney 2004). .~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no sei whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010).

Historical Whaling

The reported take of North Pacific sei whales by commercial whalers totaled 61,500 between 1947 and 1987 (C. Allison, IWC, pers. comm.). There has been an IWC prohibition on taking sei whales since 1976, and commercial whaling in the U.S. has been prohibited since 1972.

STATUS OF STOCK

Previously, sei whales were estimated to have been reduced to 20% (8,600 out of 42,000) of their pre-whaling abundance in the North Pacific (Tillman 1977). Sei whales are formally listed as "endangered" under the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and consequently the Hawaiian stock is automatically considered as a "depleted" and "strategic" stock under the MMPA. Because there have been no reported fishery related mortality or serious injuries of sei whales within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ, the total fishery-related mortality and serious injury can be considered to be insignificant and approaching zero. ~~Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for sei whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate.~~ The increasing level~~s~~ of anthropogenic noise in the world's oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995).

REFERENCES

Allison, C. International Whaling Commission. The Red House, 135 Station Road, Impington, Cambridge, UK CB4 9NP.

Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

Horwood, J. 1987. The Sei Whale: Population Biology, Ecology and Management. Croom Helm, London, U.K. 375pp.

Masaki, Y. 1977. The separation of the stock units of sei whales in the North Pacific. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 1:71-77.

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

Mizroch, S. A., D. W. Rice, and J. M. Breiwick. 1984. The sei whale, Balaenoptera borealis. Mar. Fish. Rev. 46:25-29.

~~Mobley, J. R., Jr, S. S. Spitz, K. A. Forney, R. A. Grotefendt, and P. H. Forestall. 2000. Distribution and abundance of odontocete species in Hawaiian waters: preliminary results of 1993-98 aerial surveys. Admin. Rep. LJ-00-14C. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, P.O. Box 271, La Jolla, CA 92038. 26 pp.~~

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Ohsumi, S. and S. Wada. 1974. Status of whale stocks in the North Pacific, 1972. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn. 25:114-126.

Perrin, W.F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 15, 629 pp.

Rice, D. W. 1974. Whales and whale research in the eastern North Pacific. pp. 170-195 In: W. E. Schevill (ed.). The Whale Problem: A Status Report. Harvard Press, Cambridge, MA.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

Tillman, M. F. 1977. Estimates of population size for the North Pacific sei whale. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 1:98-106.

Yablokov, A. V. 1994. Validity of whaling data. Nature 367:108.

Wade, P. R. and R. P. Angliss. 1997. Guidelines for Assessing Marine Mammal Stocks: Report of the GAMMS Workshop April 3-5, 1996, Seattle, Washington. U. S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-12. 93 pp.

Revised ~~03/15/2005~~ 04/15/2010

MINKE WHALE (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata scammoni*): Hawaiian Stock

STOCK DEFINITION AND GEOGRAPHIC RANGE

The International Whaling Commission (IWC) recognizes 3 stocks of minke whales in the North Pacific: one in the Sea of Japan/East China Sea, one in the rest of the western Pacific west of 180°N, and one in the "remainder" of the Pacific (Donovan 1991). The "remainder" stock only reflects the lack of exploitation in the eastern Pacific and does not imply that only one population exists in that area (Donovan 1991). In the "remainder" area, minke whales are relatively common in the Bering and Chukchi seas and in the Gulf of Alaska, but are not considered abundant in any other part of the eastern Pacific (Leatherwood et al. 1982; Brueggeman et al. 1990). In the Pacific, minke whales are usually seen over continental shelves (Brueggeman et al. 1990). In the extreme north, minke whales are believed to be migratory, but in inland waters of Washington and in central California they appear to establish home ranges (Dorsey et al. 1990).

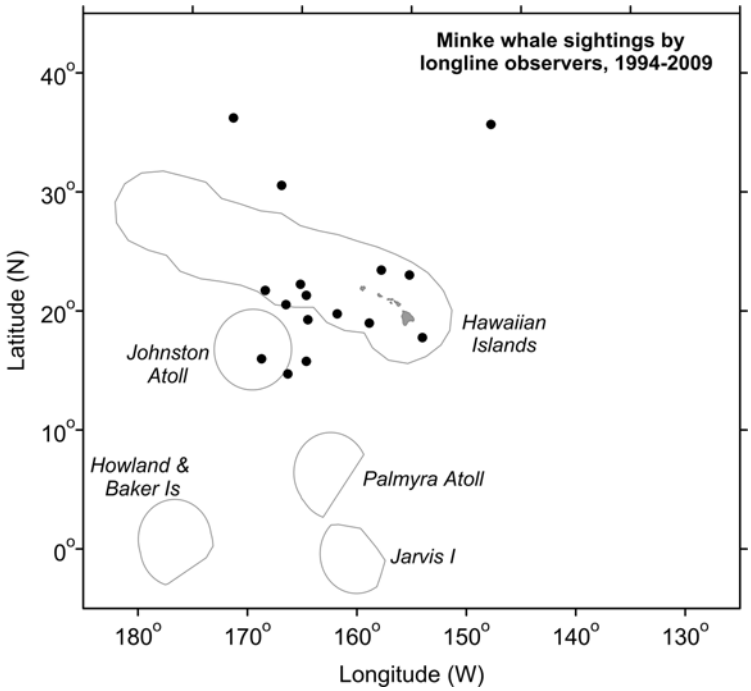


Figure 1. Locations of minke whale sightings from longline observer records (diamonds; NMFS/PIR, unpublished data), and sighting (closed circle) and acoustic detections (open circles) made during the 2002 shipboard survey of U.S. EEZ waters surrounding the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2003; see Appendix 2 for details on timing and location of survey effort). Solid lines represent the U.S. EEZ.

Minke whales have only been recently confirmed to occur seasonally around the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2003, Rankin and Barlow, ~~in prep~~ 2005), and their migration routes or destinations are not known. Minke whales were observed within 22km of Kauai during a nearshore survey in February 2005 (Rankin et al. 2007) and four ~~Four~~ reliable sightings of minke whales were made by observers in the Hawaii-based longline fishery during the months of December-March, 2000-2002 (Figure 1; NMFS/PIR unpublished data). One confirmed sighting of a minke whale was made in November 2002 during a survey of waters within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) of the Hawaiian Islands (Barlow 2003), and additional acoustic detections of this species' distinctive call (known as the 'boing') were made that could not be visually verified (Figure 1). There are no known stranding records of this species from the main islands (Nitta 1991; Maldini et al. 2005). For the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) stock assessment reports, there are three stocks of minke whale within the Pacific U.S. EEZ: 1) a Hawaiian stock (this report), 2) a California/Oregon/ Washington stock, and 3) an Alaskan stock. The Hawaiian stock includes animals found both within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ and in adjacent international waters; however, because data on abundance, distribution, and human-caused impacts are largely lacking for international waters, the status of this stock is evaluated based on data from U.S. EEZ waters of the Hawaiian Islands (NMFS 2005).

POPULATION SIZE

A summer/fall 2002 shipboard line-transect survey of the entire Hawaiian Islands EEZ resulted in one 'off effort' sighting of a minke whale following the acoustic detection of a so-called 'boing' (Barlow 2003; Rankin and Barlow, ~~in prep~~ 2005). This sighting was not part of regular survey operations and, therefore, could not be used to calculate an estimate of abundance (Barlow 2003). Furthermore, the majority of this survey took place during summer and early fall, when the Hawaiian stock of minke whale would be expected to be farther north. There currently is no abundance estimate for this stock of minke whales, which appears to occur seasonally (about

November - March) around the Hawaiian Islands.

Minimum Population Estimate

There is no minimum population estimate for the Hawaiian stock of minke whales.

Current Population Trend

No data are available on current population trend.

CURRENT AND MAXIMUM NET PRODUCTIVITY RATES

No data are available on current or maximum net productivity rate for Hawaiian minke whales.

POTENTIAL BIOLOGICAL REMOVAL

No PBR can be calculated for this stock at this time.

HUMAN CAUSED MORTALITY AND SERIOUS INJURY

Fishery Information

Information on fishery-related mortality and serious injury of cetaceans in Hawaiian waters is limited, but the gear types used in Hawaiian fisheries are responsible for marine mammal mortality and serious injury in other fisheries throughout U.S. waters. Gillnets appear to capture marine mammals wherever they are used, and float lines from lobster traps and longlines can be expected to occasionally entangle cetaceans (Perrin et al. 1994). Interactions with cetaceans have been reported for all Hawaiian pelagic fisheries (Nitta and Henderson 1993), but none of these interactions are known to have involved minke whales (Forney 2009). ~~None were observed hooked or entangled in the Hawaii-based longline fishery between 1994 and 2002, with approximately 4-25% of all effort (measured as the number of sets made) observed by on-board observers (Forney 2004).~~ There are currently two distinct longline fisheries based in Hawaii: a deep-set longline (DSLL) fishery that targets primarily tunas, and a shallow-set longline fishery (SSLL) that targets swordfish. Both fisheries operate within U.S. waters and on the high seas. Between 2004 and 2008, no minke whales were observed hooked or entangled in the SSLL fishery (100% observer coverage) or the DSLL fishery (20-28% observer coverage) (McCracken & Forney 2010).

STATUS OF STOCK

The status of minke whales in Hawaiian waters relative to OSP is unknown, and there are insufficient data to evaluate trends in abundance. It is not listed as “threatened” or “endangered” under the Endangered Species Act (1973), nor as “depleted” under the MMPA. Although information on minke whales in Hawaiian waters is limited, this stock would not be considered strategic under the 1994 amendments to the MMPA because there has been no reported fisheries related mortality or serious injury within the Hawaiian Islands EEZ. Insufficient information is available to determine whether the total fishery mortality and serious injury for minke whales is insignificant and approaching zero mortality and serious injury rate. The increasing levels of anthropogenic noise in the world’s oceans has been suggested to be a habitat concern for whales (Richardson et al. 1995).

REFERENCES

Barlow, J. 2003. Cetacean abundance in Hawaiian waters during summer/fall 2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-03-13. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037.

Brueggeman, J. J., G. A. Green, K. C. Balcomb, C. E. Bowlby, R. A. Grotefendt, K. T. Briggs, M. L. Bonnell, R. G. Ford, D. H. Varoujean, D. Heinemann, and D. G. Chapman. 1990. Oregon-Washington Marine Mammal and Seabird Survey: Information synthesis and hypothesis formulation. U.S. Department of the Interior, OCS Study MMS 89-0030.

Donovan, G. P. 1991. A review of IWC stock boundaries. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 13:39-68.

Dorsey, E. M., S. J. Stern, A. R. Hoelzel, and J. Jacobsen. 1990. Minke whale (Balaenoptera acutorostrata) from the west coast of North America: individual recognition and small-scale site fidelity. Rept. Int. Whal. Commn., Special Issue 12:357-368.

Leatherwood, S., R. R. Reeves, W. F. Perrin, and W. E. Evans. 1982. Whales, dolphins, and porpoises of the eastern North Pacific and adjacent Arctic waters: A guide to their identification. NOAA Technical Rept. NMFS Circular 444. 245pp.

~~Forney, K.A. 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Admin. Rep. LJ-04-07. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 8604 La~~

~~Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

Forney, K.A. 2009. Serious injury determinations for cetaceans caught in Hawaii longline fisheries during 1994-2008. Draft document PSRG-2009-09 presented to the Pacific Scientific Review Group, November 3-5, 2009, Del Mar, CA..

McCracken M., and K.A. Forney. 2010. Preliminary assessment of incidental interactions with marine mammals in the Hawaii longline deep and shallow set fisheries. NMFS, Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center Working Paper WP-10-001. 27p

Maldini, D., L. Mazzuca, and S. Atkinson. 2005. Odontocete stranding patterns in the Main Hawaiian Islands (1937-2002): How do they compare with live animal surveys? Pacific Science 59(1):55-67.

NMFS, Pacific Islands Region, Observer Program, 1602 Kapiolani Blvd, Suite 1110, Honolulu, HI 96814.

Nitta, E. 1991. The marine mammal stranding network for Hawaii: an overview. *In*: J.E. Reynolds III, D.K. Odell (eds.), Marine Mammal Strandings in the United States, pp.56-62. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 98, 157 pp.

Nitta, E. and J. R. Henderson. 1993. A review of interactions between Hawaii's fisheries and protected species. Mar. Fish. Rev. 55(2):83-92.

Perrin, W. F., G. P. Donovan and J. Barlow. 1994. Gillnets and Cetaceans. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn., Spec. Issue 15, 629p.

~~Rankin, S. and J. Barlow. (in prep). Description of stereotyped minke whale vocalizations from the North Pacific Ocean.~~

Rankin, S. and J. Barlow. 2005. Source of the North Pacific “boing” sound attributed to minke whales. J. Acous. Soc. Am. 118(5):3346-335.

Rankin, S., T.F. Norris, M.A Smultea, C. Oedokoven, A.M. Zoidis, E. Silve, J. Rivers. 2007. A visual sighting and acoustic detections of minke whales, *Balaenoptera acutorostrata*. (Cetacea: Balaenopteridae), in nearshore Hawaiian waters. Pacific Science 612(3):395-398.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thompson. 1995. Marine Mammals and Noise. Academic Press, San Diego. 576 p.

The Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) requires NMFS to publish a list of commercial fisheries (List Of Fisheries or "LOF") and classify each fishery based on whether incidental mortality and serious injury of marine mammals is frequent (Category I), occasional (Category II), or unlikely or unknown (Category III). The LOF is published annually in the Federal Register. The categorization of a fishery in the LOF determines whether participants in that fishery are subject to certain provisions of the MMPA, such as registration, observer coverage, and take reduction plan requirements. The categorization criteria as they appear in the LOF is reprinted below:

The fishery classification criteria consist of a two-tiered, stock-specific approach that first addresses the total impact of all fisheries on each marine mammal stock, and then addresses the impact of individual fisheries on each stock. This approach is based on consideration of the rate, in numbers of animals per year, of incidental mortality and serious injury of marine mammals due to commercial fishing operations relative to the Potential Biological Removal (PBR) level for each marine mammal stock. The MMPA (16 U.S.C. 1362 (20)) defines the PBR level as the maximum number of animals, not including natural mortality, that may be removed from a marine mammal stock while allowing that stock to reach or maintain its optimum sustainable population. This definition can also be found in the implementing regulations for section 118 at 50 CFR 229.2.

Tier 1: If the total annual mortality and serious injury across all fisheries that interact with a stock is less than or equal to 10 percent of the PBR level of the stock, all fisheries interacting with the stock would be placed in Category III. Otherwise, these fisheries are subject to the next tier (Tier 2) of analysis to determine their classification.

Tier 2, Category I: Annual mortality and serious injury of a stock in a given fishery is greater than or equal to 50 percent of the PBR level.

Tier 2, Category II: Annual mortality and serious injury of a stock in a given fishery is greater than 1 percent and less than 50 percent of the PBR level.

Tier 2, Category III: Annual mortality and serious injury of a stock in a given fishery is less than or equal to 1 percent of the PBR level.

While Tier 1 considers the cumulative fishery mortality and serious injury for a particular stock, Tier 2 considers fishery-specific mortality and serious injury for a particular stock. Additional details regarding how the categories were determined are provided in the preamble to the final rule implementing section 118 of the MMPA (60 FR 45086, August 30, 1995). Since fisheries are categorized on a per-stock basis, a fishery may qualify as one Category for one marine mammal stock and another Category for a different marine mammal stock. A fishery is typically categorized on the LOF at its highest level of classification (e.g., a fishery that qualifies for Category III for one marine mammal stock and for Category II for another marine mammal stock will be listed under Category II).

Other Criteria That May Be Considered

In the absence of reliable information indicating the frequency of incidental mortality and serious injury of marine mammals by a commercial fishery, NMFS will determine whether the incidental serious injury or mortality qualifies for Category II by evaluating other factors such as fishing techniques, gear used, methods used to deter marine mammals, target species, seasons and areas fished, qualitative data from logbooks or fisher reports, stranding data, and the species and distribution of marine mammals in the area, or at the discretion of the Assistant Administrator for Fisheries (50 CFR 229.2).

This appendix describes commercial fisheries that occur in California, Oregon, Washington, and Hawaiian waters and that interact or may interact with marine mammals. The first three sections describe sources of marine mammal mortality data for these fisheries. The fourth section describes the commercial fisheries for these states. A list of all known fisheries for these states was published as a proposed rule in the Federal Register, 71 FR 20941, 24 April 2006.

1. Sources of Mortality/Injury Data

There are three major sources of marine mammal mortality/injury data for the active commercial fisheries in California, Oregon, and Washington. These sources are the NMFS Observer Programs, the Marine Mammal Authorization

Program (MMAP) data, and the NMFS Marine Mammal Stranding Network (MMSN) data. Each of these data sources has an unique objective. Data on mammal mortality and injury are reported to the MMAP by fishers in any commercial fisheries. Marine mammal mortality and injury is also monitored by the NMFS Marine Mammal Stranding Network (MMSN). Data provided by the MMSN is not duplicated by either the NMFS Observer Program or MMAP reporting. Human-related data from the MMSN include occurrences of mortality due to entrainment in power station intakes, ship strikes, shooting, evidence of net fishery entanglement (net remaining on animal, net marks, severed flukes), and ingestion of hooks.

2. Marine Mammal Reporting from Fisheries

In 1994, the MMPA was amended to implement a long-term regime for managing mammal interactions with commercial fisheries (the Marine Mammal Authorization Program, or MMAP). Logbooks are no longer required - instead vessel owners/operators in any commercial fishery (Category I, II, or III) are required to submit one-page pre-printed reports for all interactions (including those that occur while an observer is onboard) resulting in an injury to or death of a marine mammal. The report must include owner/operator's name and address, vessel name and ID, where and when the interaction occurred, the fishery, species involved, and type of injury (if the animal was released alive). These postage-paid report forms are mailed to all Category I and II fishery participants that have registered with NMFS, and must be completed and returned to NMFS within 48 hours of returning to port for trips in which a marine mammal injury or mortality occurred. The number of self-reported marine mammal interactions is considerably lower than the number reported by fishery observers, even though observer reports are typically based on 20% observer effort. For example, from 2000-2004, there were 112 fisher self-reports of marine mammal interactions in the California swordfish/thresher shark drift gillnet fishery. This compares with 141 observed interactions over the same period, based on only 20% observer coverage. This suggests that fisher self-reports are negatively-biased. A summary comparing fisher self-reports and observer reports of marine mammal interactions for the swordfish drift gillnet fishery is given in Table 1 of this Appendix.

3. NMFS Marine Mammal Stranding Network data

From 2000-2004, there were 1,022 cetacean and 13,215 pinniped strandings recorded in California, Oregon, and Washington states. Approximately 10% of all cetacean and 6% of all pinniped strandings showed evidence of human-caused mortality during this period. Human-related causes of mortality include: entrainment in power station intakes, shooting, net fishery entanglement, and hook/line, set-net and trap fishery interaction. A species summary of all cetacean and pinniped strandings for the period 2000-2004 is given in Table 2 of this Appendix.

4. Fishery Descriptions

Category I, CA/OR thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery (≥14 inch mesh)

Number of permit holders: The numbers of eligible permit holders in California for 2002-2006 were 106, 100, 96, 90, and 88, respectively (data source: California Deparment of Fish and Game website: www.dfg.ca.gov/licensing). Permits are non-transferable and are linked to individual fishermen, not vessels.

Number of active permit holders: The numbers of vessels active in this fishery from 2002-2006 were 50, 43, 43, 40, and 43 respectively. Information on the number of permit holders is obtained from the Status of the U.S. west coast fisheries for Highly Migratory Species through 2004; Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation report available from the Pacific Fishery Management Council website (www.pcouncil.org) and the California Department of Fish and Game.

Total effort: Both estimated and observed effort for the drift-net fishery during the calendar years 1990 through 2006 are shown in Figure 2.
Geographic range: Effort in this fishery ranges from the U.S./Mexico border north to waters off the state of Oregon. For this fishery there are area-season closures (see below). Figures 1-5 show locations of observed sets and Figure 6 shows approximate locations of observed marine mammal entanglements for the period 1998-2002.

Seasons: This fishery is subject to season-area restrictions. From February 1 to May 15 effort must be further than 200 nautical miles (nmi) from shore; from May 16 to August 14, effort must be further than 75 nmi from shore, and from August 15 to January 31 there is only the 3 nmi off-shore restriction for all gillnets in southern California (see halibut and

white seabass fishery below). The majority of the effort occurs from October through December. A season-area closure to protect leatherback sea turtles was implemented in this fishery in August 2001. The closure area prohibits drift gillnet fishing from August 15 through November 15, in the area bounded by straight lines from Point Sur, California (N36^o 17') to N 34° 27' W 123° 35', west to W129^o, north to N 45°, then east to the Oregon coast. An additional season-area closure south of Point Conception and east of W120 degrees longitude is effective during the months of June, July, and August during El Niño years to protect loggerhead turtles (Federal Register, 68 FR 69962, 16 December 2003).

Gear type and fishing method: Typical gear used for this fishery is a 1000-fathom gillnet with a stretched mesh size typically ranging from 18-22 inches (14 inch minimum). The net is set at dusk and allowed to drift during the night after which, it is retrieved. The fishing vessel is typically attached to one end of the net. Soak duration is typically 12-14 hours depending on the length of the night. Net extender lengths of a minimum 36 ft. became mandatory for the 1997-1998 fishing season. The use of acoustic warning devices (pingers) became mandatory 28 October 1997.

Regulations: The fishery is managed under a Fishery Management Plan (FMP) developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

Management type: The drift-net fishery is a limited-entry fishery with seasonal closures and gear restrictions (see above). The state of Oregon restricts landing to swordfish only.

Comments: This fishery has had a NMFS observer program in place since July 1990. Due to bycatch of strategic stocks including short-finned pilot whales, beaked whales, sperm whales and humpback whales, a Take Reduction Team was formed in 1996. Since then, the implementation of increased extender lengths and the deployment of pingers have substantially decreased cetacean entanglement. The fraction of active vessels in this fishery that are not observed owing to a lack of berthing space for observers has been increasing as larger vessels drop out of this fishery.

Category I[1], CA halibut/white seabass and other species set gillnet fishery (>3.5 inch mesh).

Note: This fishery has not targeted angel sharks since 1994, when regulatory changes resulted in nets being fished >3 nmi from shore in southern California. Thus, there is a proposed name change to this fishery to reflect current fishing practices. Halibut are typically targeted using 8.5 inch mesh while the remainder of the fishery targets white seabass and yellowtail using 6.5 inch mesh. In recent years, there has been an increasing number of 6.0-6.5 inch mesh sets fished using drifting methods; this component is now identified as a separate fishery (see "**CA yellowtail, barracuda, white seabass, and tuna drift gillnet fishery (>3.5 and <14 in mesh)**" fishery described below).

Number of permit holders: There is no specific permit category for this fishery. Overall, the current number of legal permit holders for gill and trammel nets, excluding swordfish drift gillnets and herring gillnets for 2002-2006 are, 209, 193, 187, 172, and 166, respectively. Information on permit numbers is available from the California Department of Fish and Game website (http://www.dfg.ca.gov/licensing).

Number of active permit holders: Based on logbook data, there were at least 62 active permit holders during the period 2002-2006. Annual participation in the fishery appears to have declined, as the number of active permit holders by individual year (43, 42, 41, 31, 28) has declined.

Total effort: Fishing effort in the halibut fishery has declined from over 3,200 sets in 2002 to approximately 1,400 sets in 2006. A summary of estimated fishing effort and observer coverage for the years 1990-2003 is shown in Figure 8. Effort in the white seabass and yellowtail portion of this fishery has ranged between 456 and 948 days annually for the period 2002-2006. A portion of the effort in the white seabass and yellowtail fishery utilizes drifting nets (see "CA yellowtail, barracuda, white seabass, and tuna drift gillnet fishery (>3.5 and <14 in mesh)" fishery description in the Category II fishery section below).

[1] Due to the closure of the fishery in central California, which has reduced the threat to stocks of harbor porpoise in this region, the draft 2009 NMFS MMPA List of Fisheries proposes to recategorize this fishery to 'Category II'.

Geographic range: Effort in this fishery previously ranged from the U.S./Mexico border north to Monterey Bay and was localized in more productive areas: San Ysidro, San Diego, Oceanside, Newport, San Pedro, Ventura, Santa Barbara, Morro Bay, and Monterey Bay. Fishery effort is now predominantly in the Ventura Flats area off of Ventura, the San Pedro area between Pt. Vicente and Santa Catalina Island and in the Monterey Bay area. The central California portion of the fishery from Point Arguello to Point Reyes has been closed since September 2002 when a ban on gillnets inshore of 60 fathoms took effect.

Seasons: This fishery operates year round. Effort generally increases during the summer months and declines during the last three months of a year.

Gear type and fishing method: Typical gear used for this fishery is a 200 fathom gillnet with a stretched mesh size of 8.5 inches. The component of this fishery that targets white seabass and yellowtail utilizes 6.5 inch mesh. The net is generally set during the day and allowed to soak for up to 2 days. Soak duration is typically 8-10, 19-24, or 44-49 hours. The depth of water ranges from 15-50 fathoms with most sets in water depths of 15-35 fathoms.

Regulations: This fishery is managed by the California Dept. of Fish and Game in accordance with state and federal laws.

Management type: The halibut and white seabass set-net fishery is a limited-entry fishery with gear restrictions and area closures.

Comments: An observer program for the halibut and white seabass portion of this fishery operated from 1990-94 and was discontinued after area closures were implemented in 1994, which prohibited gillnets within 3 nmi of the mainland and within 1 nmi of the Channel Islands in southern California. NMFS re-established an observer program for this fishery in Monterey Bay in 1999-2000 due to a suspected increase in harbor porpoise mortality in Monterey Bay. In 1999 and 2000, fishery mortality exceeded PBR for the Monterey Bay harbor porpoise stock, which at that time, was designated as strategic [the stock is currently non-strategic]. In the autumn of 2000, the California Department of Fish and Game implemented the first in a series of emergency area closures to set gillnets within 60 fathoms along the central California coast in response to concerns over mortality of common murres and threats to sea otters. This effectively reduced fishing effort to negligible levels in 2001 and 2002 in Monterey Bay. A ban on gill and trammel nets inside of 60 fathoms from Point Reyes to Point Arguello became effective in September 2002. Mortality of marine mammals continues in the southern California portion of this fishery, as evidenced by fisher self-reports under the Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP) from 2000-2005. During this time, fishermen reported mortality of 60 California sea lions, 20 harbor seals, one northern elephant seal and one unidentified common dolphin. NMFS renewed observer coverage in halibut/white seabass set gillnet fishery in 2006 and through 2007, observers recorded bycatch data from 260 sets. No cetaceans were observed entangled during this period, but there were 34 California sea lions, two harbor seals, and one unidentified pinniped observed killed.

~~Category I, Hawaii swordfish, tuna, billfish, mahi mahi, wahoo, and oceanic shark longline/set line fishery.~~[2]

~~Note: The classification of this fishery was elevated to Category I in 2004 based on revised PBR levels of false killer whales and observed false killer whale mortality in this fishery (Federal Register 69 FR 48407, 1, 10 August 2004).~~

~~Number of permit holders: The number of Hawaii longline limited access permit holders is 164. Not all such permits are renewed and used every year (approximately 126 were renewed in 2003). Most holders of Hawaii longline limited access permits are based in, or operate out of, Hawaii. Longline general permits are not limited by number. Approximately 67 longline general permits were issued in 2003, about 48 of which were active. In 2003 all but two holders of longline general permits were based in, or operated out of, American Samoa. The remaining two, neither of which was active in 2003, were based in the Northern Mariana Islands (Federal Register 69 FR 17329, 2 April 2004).~~

~~Number of active permit holders: From 1998-2002 there were 115, 122, 125, 101, and 102 vessels actively fishing, respectively. There were 126 permits renewed in 2003 (Federal Register 69 FR 17329, 2 April 2004). In 2004, there were~~

[2] This fishery description was provided in part by Chris Yates (NMFS) and from published fishery regulations in the Federal Register; 69 FR 48407, published 10 August 2004.

~~125 Hawaii longline limited access permits renewed, with 119 active. In 2004, there were 40 active permits in American Samoa.~~

~~Total effort: For the years 1998-2002, there were 1,181, 1,165, 1,135, 1,075, and 1,193 trips made, respectively. The number of hooks set has steadily increased since 1997 (15.5 million) and peaked in 2002 with 27 million hooks set. In 2002, most effort occurred within the U.S. EEZ (approximately 15 million hooks set), while 12 million hooks were set outside the U.S. EEZ. At Kingman Reef and Palmyra Atoll there were 2.1 million hooks set in 2002. In 2003, there were 1,214 trips recorded (with tuna as the target species). There were a total of 29.8 million hooks set in 2003, of these, 15 million occurred outside the U.S. EEZ, 11 million within the Main Hawaiian Islands EEZ, 2.7 million within the Northwest Hawaiian Islands EEZ, and the remaining 0.9 million within other U.S. possession EEZs. The preliminary estimate of hooks fished in 2004 is 32 million hooks. 2003 logbook data for American Samoa consisted of 932 trips by 51 vessels, which made 6,220 sets, with 14.2 million hooks fished. Preliminary logbook data from 2004 in American Samoa consists of 623 trips by 40 vessels, which made 4,804 sets, with 11.6 million hooks fished.~~

~~Geographic range: This fishery encompasses a huge geographic range extending North-South from 40° N to the equator and East-West from Kure Atoll to as far as 135° W. Fishing for swordfish generally occurs north of Hawaii, (as much as 2,000 miles from Honolulu), whereas fishing for tunas occurs around the Main Hawaiian Islands (MHI) and south of the Hawaiian Islands. New regulations published in 2004 lift previous area closures north of the equator.~~

~~Seasons: This fishery operates year-round. Effort is generally lower in the third quarter of the year.~~

~~Gear type: The basic unit of gear is the main line, which is made of monofilament and stored on a large hydraulic reel. Eight hundred to 1000 hooks are attached to 30 to 40 miles of main line on a typical fishing day. Shallow sets for swordfish and deep sets for tuna are fished with a requirement that the fishermen must declare prior to departure which set type will be employed. (There was no Hawaii based shallow set swordfish fishery from 2001 to 2003). All shallow swordfish sets are required to utilize size 18/0 circle hooks with a 10 degree offset and mackerel bait (the use of squid bait is prohibited). Deployment and retrieval of gear must occur at night. For deep sets, all float lines must be at least 20 meters in length; with a minimum of 15 branch lines between any two floats (except basket-style longline gear which may have as few as 10 branch lines between any two floats); without the use of light sticks; and resulting in the possession or landing of no more than 10 swordfish (Xiphias gladius) at any time during a given trip. As used in this definition "float line" means a line used to suspend the main longline beneath a float and ``light stick" means any type of light emitting device, including any fluorescent "glow bead", chemical, or electrically powered light that is affixed underwater to the longline gear . There are currently no Hawaii longline vessels deploying basket gear.~~

~~While similar, swordfish and tuna gear differ in the depth at which they are deployed, the number of hooks deployed, and the time of day at which they are set. Both styles use a monofilament mainline that is generally 3.2–4.0 mm in diameter that is stored, deployed, and retrieved using a large hydraulic reel (some vessels may have two). In general, swordfish gear is deployed at an average depth (deepest) of 70m, with 600-1000 hooks deployed per day (3-6 hooks between floats), and the line is set at night and hauled during daylight hours. Additionally, float lines are usually less than the required twenty meters (~10m) for tuna fishing. Because some swordfish vessels carry two reels of mainline, it is not uncommon for swordfish vessels to set as much as 60 miles of line in a day. In contrast, tuna gear is set much deeper (~200m), with 1500-2200 hooks deployed per day (20-35 hooks between floats). The line is set in the morning and hauled in the evening. In addition, tuna mainline is deployed using a hydraulic line shooter. Regulations permit a minimum of 15 hooks between floats. There is no minimum for trips targeting swordfish. The line shooter sends the line off the vessel faster than the vessel is moving, creating deep arcing caternaries in the line. This allows them to target deep-dwelling tunas. Swordfish mainline is set at the same speed as the vessel to keep the line in shallower depths. Finally, lightsticks are prohibited during tuna (deep set) fishing operations. These are allowed in the swordfish fishery.~~

~~The leaders attached to the mainline also differ between the two fisheries. A tuna leader is usually comprised of a hook immediately followed by a length of wire (1-2 mm thick) which is attached to a weighted swivel. The rest of the tuna leader in comprised of ~2mm thick monofilament and a snap for attachment to the mainline. The swordfish gear is comprised of a 18/0 or larger circle hook attached to a ~ 10 m length of ~2 mm monofilament line to a weighted swivel followed by another ~10m length of ~2mm monofilament. All attachments are made using loops secured by crimps.~~

~~Vessel operators are required to call NMFS for possible observer placement 72 hours prior to departure. At that time they must declare if they intend to go on a shallow-set or deep-set fishing trip. Regulations prohibiting the presence of lightsticks and float lines shorter than 20m aboard vessels on declared deep-set trips preclude fishermen from changing~~

~~fishing trip types while at sea – additionally a vessel returning from a deep-set trip cannot land more than 10 swordfish (50 CFR 660.22).~~

~~Additional requirements for protecting seabirds went into effect 18 January 2006 for vessels fishing above 23 degrees north latitude (Federal Register 70 FR 75075, 19 December 2005). Fishermen will be given a choice between side setting and employing a suite of seabird mitigation measures. Currently, regulations require deep setting vessels to dye their bait blue, thoroughly thaw the bait, and throw all offal on the opposite side of the vessel from which fishing operations are taking place. (There have been no observations of marine mammals feeding on offal discarded from Hawaii based longline vessels.) Additionally, these vessels are required to use a line shooter – which they would have anyway – and at least forty-five gram weights on the line.~~

~~Regulations: Effort is required to be outside of 50 nautical miles from the entire Northwestern Hawaiian islands (NWHI) because of possible protected species (monk seal) interactions. Several 25 to 75 mile closed areas also exist around the MHI to prevent gear conflicts with smaller fishing vessels. Current regulations require 100% observer coverage for shallow swordfish sets and 20% observer coverage for deep tuna sets. There are fleet-wide annual limits on the number of allowable sea turtle interactions in this fishery (16 leatherbacks or 17 loggerheads). The shallow-set component of the fishery is closed if either threshold is reached, or is expected to be reached (Federal Register 69 FR 17329, April 2, 2004). There is an annual limit of 2,120 shallow sets north of the equator. Vessel operators must obtain single shallow set certificates from NMFS, which are transferable and valid for one calendar year. Hawaii-based longline vessels are prohibited from making more shallow sets north of the equator during a trip than the number of valid shallow set certificates on board the vessel. Within 72 hours of landing a pelagic management unit species, vessel operators are required to submit one valid shallow-set certificate to the Regional Adminstrator for every shallow set fished north of the equator during a fishing trip. On 14 March 2006, the Western Pacific Regional Fishery Management Council voted to initiate an emergency closure of the Hawaii longline swordfish fishery because the fishery had already reached allowable interaction levels with loggerhead turtles in 2006. The shallow set component of the fishery north of the equator was closed on 20 March 2006 (Federal Register 71 FR 14824, 24 March 2006).~~

~~Management type: Federal limited access program. This fishery is managed under a Fishery Management Plan (FMP), developed by the Western Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.~~

~~Comments: This Hawaii longline fishery is active year-round and targets swordfish and tuna. Other species are caught incidentally. Interactions with bottlenose dolphins, false killer whales, humpback whales, short-finned pilot whales, spinner dolphins, short beaked common dolphins, pantropical spotted dolphins, Blainville's beaked whale, sperm whales, and Risso's dolphins have been documented[3]. Longline hooks have also been recovered from Hawaiian monk seals, but these were not observed during longline fishing operations. Due to interactions with protected species, especially turtles, this fishery has been observed since February 24, 1994. Initially, observer coverage was less than 5%, increased to 10% in 2000, and has exceeded 20% in 2001 and 2002. In 2003, observer coverage was 22.2% (based on vessel departures), with 6.4 million hooks observed from 3,204 sets. Observed injuries of marine mammals in this fishery in 2003 included 2 false killer whales, 1 unidentified cetacean and 1 unidentified whale. Additionally, there was one observed death of a bottlenose dolphin (Pacific Islands Regional Office preliminary report dated 9 February 2004). In 2004, observer coverage was 24.6% (based on vessel departures), with 7.9 million hooks observed from 3,958 sets. Observed injuries of marine mammals in this fishery in 2004 included 5 false killer whales, 1 humpback whale and 1 short finned pilot whale. Additionally, there was one observed death of a false killer whale. In the shallow set component of this fishery, observer coverage in 2004 was 100% (88 sets and 76,750 hooks observed). No marine mammal interactions were observed in the shallow set component of the fishery (Pacific Islands Regional Office preliminary report dated 25 January 2005).~~

Category I, Hawaii deep-set (tuna target) longline/set line fishery

Note: The Hawaii-based longline fisheries of the Pelagic Fishery Ecosystem Plan (FEP) consist of two separately managed longline fisheries. One is the deep-set (tuna targeted) fishery which is classified as a Category I fishery under the MMPA. This fishery is discussed here. The classification of this fishery was elevated to Category I in 2004 based on revised PBR

~~[3] K.A. Forney 2004. Estimates of cetacean mortality and injury in two U.S. Pacific longline fisheries, 1994-2002. Southwest Fisheries Science Center Administrative Report LJ-04-07, available from Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 8604 La Jolla Shores Drive, La Jolla, CA 92037. 17 pp.~~

levels of false killer whales and observed false killer whale mortality in this fishery (Federal Register 69 FR 48407 1, 10 August 2004). The other Hawaii-based longline fishery is the Hawaii shallow-set longline (swordfish targeted) fishery which is classified as a Category II fishery under the MMPA and is discussed in the Category II section of this Appendix.

Number of permit holders: The number of Hawaii longline limited access permit holders is 164. Not all such permits are renewed and used every year. Permit holders may use the permits for either deep-set or shallow-set fishing, but must notify NMFS how they will fish before each trip. Most holders of Hawaii longline limited access permits are based in, or operate out of, Hawaii.

Number of active deep-set longline vessels targeting tuna: From 2005 to 2008, the number of active longline vessels based and landing in Hawaii was 124, 127, 129, and 127, respectively (http://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/fmsd/reports.php).

Total effort: The number of trips ranged from a low of approximately 500 (in 1992) to 1,400 in 2005. Figure 4 shows the number of fishing trips by longline vessels based and landing in Hawaii, by year and trip type, 1991-2009. The number of sets for the deep-set tuna fishery in 2005, 2006, 2007, and 2008 was 16,549, 16,397, 17,809, and 17,881, respectively. The number of hooks set in 2005, 2006, 2007, and 2008 was 33.7 million, 34.5 million, 38.8 million, and 40.1 million, respectively.

Geographic range: The Hawaii-based pelagic, deep-set longline fishery operates inside and outside the EEZ, primarily around the main Hawaiian Islands and Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, with some trips to the EEZs around the remote U.S. Pacific islands (however there are restricted areas, please refer to "Regulations"). Vessels vary their fishing grounds depending on their target species. Most of the deep-set fishing occurs south of 20° N.

Seasons: This fishery operates year-round, although vessel activity increases during the fall and is greatest during the winter and spring months.

Gear type: Deep-set longline gear typically consists of a continuous main line set on the surface and supported in the water column horizontally by floats with branch lines connected at intervals to the main line. In addition radio buoys are also used to keep track of the mainline as it drifts at sea. A line shooter is used on deep-sets to deploy the mainline faster than the speed of the vessel, thus allowing the longline gear to sink to its target depth (average target depth is 167 m, target depth for bigeye tuna is approximately 400 m). The main line is typically 30 to 100 km (18 to 60 nm) long. A minimum of 15, but typically 20 to 30, weighted branch lines (gangions) are clipped to the mainline at regular intervals between the floats. Each gangion terminates with a single baited hook. The branch lines are typically 11 to 15 meters (35 to 50 feet) long. Sanma (saury) or sardines are used for bait. Lightsticks are not typically attached to the gangions on this type of longline set. Deep-set longline gear is set in the morning and hauled in the afternoon.

Regulations: This fishery is managed under the Pelagics FEP and subject to Federal regulation. Measures that are currently applicable to the fishery include, but are not limited to, limited access (requirement for a permit), vessel and gear marking requirements, vessel length restrictions, Federal catch and effort logbooks, large longline restricted areas around the Hawaiian Archipelago, vessel monitoring system (VMS), annual protected species workshops, and the use of sea turtle, seabird, and marine mammal handling and mitigation gear and techniques. The vessel operator must notify NMFS prior to departure whether the vessel is undertaking a deep-set or shallow-set trip. Once the trip type is set, it cannot be changed during the trip. Vessel operators must take a NMFS contracted observer if requested by NMFS – target observer coverage is 20 percent of trips. If any marine mammal interaction (hooking or entanglement) resulting in injury or mortality occurs, the vessel operator must complete and mail a pre-addressed, postage paid form to NOAA Fisheries within 48 hours of the end of the trip. Additional information on all applicable regulations for the deep-set longline fishery is available at http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/SFD/SFD_regs_2.html.

Management type: Federal limited access program. This fishery is managed under a Fishery Ecosystem Plan (FEP) developed by the Western Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

Comments: Non-target species are caught incidentally. Interactions with common bottlenose dolphins, false killer whales, humpback whales, short-finned pilot whales, pantropical spotted dolphins, Blainville's beaked whale, and Risso's dolphins have been documented. Longline hooks have also been recovered from Hawaiian monk seals, but these were not observed

during longline fishing operations. Due to interactions with protected species, especially turtles, this fishery has been observed since February 24, 1994. Initially, observer coverage was less than 5%, increased to 10% in 2000, and exceeded 20% in 2001, 2002, and 2003. Observer coverage was 20.1 %, 21.7%, and 20.6% in 2007, 2008, and 2009 respectively. *Observed* marine mammal injures in 2007 included 4 false killer whales, 1 short-finned pilot whale, and 2 unidentified cetaceans. Observed mortality included 1 Risso's dolphin. Observed marine mammal injuries in 2008 included 3 false killer whales, 3 short-finned pilots whales, 1 Risso's dolphin, 2 unidentified cetaceans, and 2 unidentified whales. Observed mortality in 2008 included 1 spotted dolphin. Observed injuries of marine mammals in 2009 included 9 false killer whales, 1 bottlenose dolphin, and 3 unidentified whales. Observed mortality of marine mammals in this fishery in 2009 included 1 false killer whale.

Category II, Hawaii shallow-set (swordfish target) longline/set line fishery

Note: The Hawaii-based longline fisheries of the Pelagic Fishery Ecosystem Plan (FEP) consist of two separately managed longline fisheries. One is the deep-set (tuna targeted) fishery which is classified as a Category I fishery under the MMPA. The other is the Hawaii shallow-set longline (swordfish targeted) fishery which is classified as a Category II fishery under the MMPA and is discussed here.

Number of permit holders: The number of Hawaii longline limited access permit holders is 164. Not all such permits are renewed and used every year. Permit holders may use the permits for either deep-set or shallow-set fishing, but must notify NMFS how they will fish before each trip. Most holders of Hawaii longline limited access permits are based in, or operate out of, Hawaii**.** Longline general permits are not limited by number. These general permits are open access and usable in Guam, CNMI, and the Pacific Remote Island Areas; they are usually not more than a half dozen a year.

Number of active shallow-set longline vessels targeting swordfish: From 2005 to 2008, the number of active shallow-set longline vessels based in and landing in Hawaii was 33, 35, 28, and 27, respectively

Total effort: The number of trips since 1991 has ranged from zero (2002-2003) to approximately 300 in 1993. Figure 4 shows the number of fishing trips by longline vessels based and landing in Hawaii, by year and trip type, 1991-2009. The number of sets for the shallow-set swordfish fishery in 2005, 2006, 2007, and 2008 was 1,645, 850, 1,570, and 1,587, respectively. The number of hooks set in 2005, 2006, 2007, and 2008 was 1.4 million, 0.7 million, 1.4 million, and 1.5 million, respectively.

Geographic range:
The most productive swordfishing areas for Hawaii-based longline vessels are north of Hawaii outside the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) on the high seas, and this fishery operates almost entirely north of Hawaii (north of approximately 20° N). In some years, when influenced by seawater temperature, this fishery may operate mostly north of 30° N.

Seasons: Shallow-set effort is highest in either the first or second quarter of the calendar year and drops off substantially in the latter half of the year.

Gear type: Shallow-set longline gear typically consists of a continuous main line set on the surface and supported in the water column horizontally by floats with branch lines connected at intervals to the main line. In addition radio buoys are also used to keep track of the mainline as it drifts at sea. Longline fishing for swordfish is known as shallow-set longline fishing as the bait is set at depths of 30 – 90 m. The portion of the mainline with branchlines attached is suspended between floats at about 20 – 75 m of depth, and the branchlines hang off the mainline another 10 – 15 m. Only 4 – 6 branchlines are clipped to the mainline between floats, and a typical set for swordfish uses about 700 – 1,000 hooks. Shallow-set longline gear is set at night, with luminescent light sticks attached to the branchlines. Formerly, J-hooks and squid bait were used, but since 2004, circle hooks and mackerel-type bait have been required. These gear restrictions were implemented to reduce sea turtle bycatch.

Regulations: This fishery is managed under the Pelagics FEP and subject to Federal regulation. Measures that are currently applicable to the fishery include, but are not limited to, limited access (requirement for a permit), vessel and gear marking requirements, vessel length restrictions, Federal catch and effort logbooks, 100-percent observer coverage, large longline restricted areas around the Hawaiian Archipelago, vessel monitoring system (VMS), annual protected species

workshops, and the use of sea turtle, seabird, and marine mammal handling and mitigation gear and techniques. The vessel operator must notify NMFS prior to departure whether the vessel is undertaking a shallow-set or a deep-set trip. Once the trip type is set, the type cannot be changed during the trip. All shallow-set trips must have a NMFS contracted observer. If any marine mammal interaction (hooking or entanglement) resulting in injury or mortality occurs, the vessel operator must complete and mail a pre-addressed, postage paid form to NOAA Fisheries within 48 hours of the end of the trip. More information on all applicable regulations is available at http://www.fpir.noaa.gov/SFD/SFD_regs_2.html.

Management type: Federal limited access program. This fishery is managed under a Fishery Ecosystem Plan (FEP) by the Western Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

Comments: Non-target species are caught incidentally. Interactions with common bottlenose dolphins, false killer whales, humpback whales, short-finned pilot whales, striped dolphins, Bryde's whales, Risso's dolphins, sperm whales, spinner dolphins, pygmy sperm or dwarf sperm whales, and common dolphins have been documented. The shallow-set fishery was completely closed in 2001 and reopened in 2004. One hundred percent observer coverage is required in this fishery. *Observed* injuries of marine mammals in this fishery October 2007 through 2008 included 1 false killer whale, 3 Risso's dolphins, 1 humpback whale, 1 pygmy sperm whale, 1 striped dolphin, and 1 unidentified whale. Observed mortality for the period included 1 Risso's dolphin. Observed injuries of marine mammals in 2009 included 1 false killer whale, 3 Risso's dolphins, and 1 unidentified whale. No observed mortality was reported in 2009.

Category II, Hawaii Shortline Fishery

Note: The Hawaii shortline fishery was added to the 2010 List of Fisheries as a Category II fishery under the MMPA based on analogy with the Category I "HI deep-set (tuna-target) longline/set line" and Category II "HI shallow-set (swordfish-target) longline/set line" fisheries (Federal Register 74 FR 58859, 16 November 2009).

Number of permit holders: There are no specific fishing permits issued for this fishery. However, all persons with a State of Hawaii Commercial Marine License (CML) may participate in any fishery, including the "HI shortline" fishery.

Number of active shortline vessels: Of those persons possessing CMLs, shortline participation has varied between 5 and 11 vessels from 2003 - 2008.

Total effort: From 2003-2008, there was an average of 135,757 pounds (lbs) of fish landed each year. In 2008 alone, 104,152 lbs of fish were landed.

Geographic range: The Category II "HI shortline" fishery is a small-scale system operating off the State of HI, and targeting bigeye tuna (*Thunnus obesus*) or the lustrous pomfret (*Eumigistes illustris*). This fishery was developed to target these fish species when they concentrate over the summit of Cross Seamount, 290 km (180 mi) south of the State of HI.

Seasons: This fishery has no seasonal component and may operate year-round.

Gear type: The gear style is designed specifically to target the aggregating fish species over seamount structures. The primary gear type used is a horizontal main line (monofilament) less than 1 nautical mile long, and includes two baskets of approximately 50 hooks each. The gear is set before dawn and has a short soak time, with the gear retrieved about two hours after it is set.

Regulations: All persons with a State of Hawaii Commercial Marine License (CML) may participate in the "HI shortline" fishery. The mainline length must be less than 1 nautical mile.

Management type: Hawaii State managed fishery.

Comments: Currently, there is no reporting system in place to document potential marine mammal interactions in this fishery. However, there are anecdotal reports of interactions off the north side of Maui, but the species and extent of interactions are unknown.

Category II, CA yellowtail, barracuda, white seabass, and tuna drift gillnet fishery (>3.5 and <14 in mesh)

Note: This fishery has developed recently as an offshoot of the "**CA other species, large mesh (>3.5 in) set gillnet fishery**" (see Category I fishery section above). Fishermen use the same gear as in the set gillnet fishery (typically 6.5 inch mesh nets, 100-200 fathoms in length, except that they instead utilize drifting nets to target white seabass and yellowtail. Albacore tuna and barracuda are also targeted in this fishery.

Number of permit holders: There are approximately 24 active permit holders in this fishery.

Total effort: From 2002-2006, there were 221, 193, 120, 184, and 175 small-mesh drift gillnet sets fished, respectively, as determined from California Department of Fish and Game logbook data.

Geographic range: This drift gillnet component of this fishery operates primarily south of Point Conception. Observed sets have been clustered around Santa Cruz Island, the east Santa Barbara Channel, and Cortez and Tanner Banks. Some effort has also been observed around San Clemente Island and San Nicolas Island.

Seasons: This fishery operates year round. Targeted species is typically determined by market demand on a short-term basis.

Gear type and fishing method: Typical gear used for this fishery is a 150 to 200-fathom gillnet, which is allowed to drift. The mesh size depends on the target species but typical values observed are 6.0 and 6.5 inches.

Regulations: This fishery is managed by the California Dept. of Fish and Game in accordance with State and Federal laws.

Management type: This fishery is a limited-entry fishery with gear restrictions and area closures.

Comments: This fishery primarily targets white seabass and yellowtail but also targets barracuda and albacore tuna. From 2002-2004, there have been 63 sets observed from 17 vessel trips. Marine mammal mortality includes two long-beaked common dolphin and 3 California sea lions. Also, 4 California sea lions were entangled and released alive during this period. In 2003, there was one coastal bottlenose dolphin stranded with 3.5-inch gillnet wrapped around its tailstock, the responsible fishery is unknown. Observer coverage in this fishery was 12% in 2002, 10% in 2003, and 17% in 2004.

Category II, CA swordfish longline fishery

Number of permit holders: As recently as 2004, there were 20-30 vessels participating in the fishery. Only one vessel was active in 2005. This decline in participation was due to the prohibition in shallow set swordfishing east of W150 longitude.

Number of active permit holders: In January 2006, there was only one vessel participating in this fishery, which fished for tuna using deep set methods outside the U.S. EEZ. The remaining vessels from this fishery now participate in the Hawaii longline fishery.

Total Effort: An estimated 1 - 1.5 million hooks were fished annually when 20-30 California-based vessels participated in the fishery. In 2005, there were only two trips fished by one vessel. Ten sets were observed in the first trip and it is unknown how many sets were made during the second trip because no observer was present.

Geographic range: The fishery management plan (FMP) for highly migratory species prohibits targeting swordfish with shallow set fishing methods east of W150 longitude. In March 2006, the Pacific Fishery Management Council approved an application for an exempted fishing permit (EFP) that would allow one vessel to utilize shallow set longline methods within the U.S. EEZ, with the same shallow-set regulations used in the Hawaii fishery (circle hooks and fish bait). An environmental assessment of this proposal will be prepared by the Highly Migratory Species Management Team (HMSMT) for review at a future Council meeting. This EFP will be effective no sooner than 2007 if it receives final approval.
Seasons: The fishery operates year-round.

Gear type: Typically, vessels fish 24 to 72 km of mainline, rigged with 22-m gangions at approximately 60-m intervals. Anywhere from 800 to 1,300 hooks are deployed in a set, with large squid (Illex sp.) used for bait. Variously colored lightsticks are used, for fishing takes place primarily during the night when more swordfish are available in surface waters. The mainline is deployed in 4-7 hours and left to drift unattached for 7-10 hours. Retrieval typically takes about 7-10 hours. A description of the gear used for deep sets targeting tuna is given in the Hawaii longline fishery section.

Regulations: Longline vessels are prohibited from operating within the 200-nmi limit, but may unload their catch in California ports and are required to have a California state commercial fishing license.

Management type: The California longline fishery is managed under a Highly Migratory Species Fishery Management Plan (FMP) developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS. . The FMP was partially approved by NMFS on February 4, 2004. NMFS published a final rule on March 11, 2004 which prohibits shallow longline sets of the type normally targeting swordfish on the high seas in the Pacific Ocean east of 150˚ W. longitude. A mandatory observer program became effective for this fishery in August 2002.

Comments: Between October 2001 and February 2004, 23 trips were observed by California-based longline observers, with 469 sets observed (<15% observer coverage). Between October 2001 and November 2003 the longline observer

program reported one injured Risso's dolphin and one unidentified dolphin killed. Examination of photographs of the dead dolphin led marine mammal identification experts to conclude that the animal was most likely a striped dolphin.

Category II, California Anchovy, Mackerel, and Sardine Purse Seine Fishery. [4]

Number of permit holders: There are 63 limited-entry permits (Pacific Fishery Management Council. 2005. Status of the Pacific Coast coastal pelagic species fishery and recommended acceptable biological catches. Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation Report 2005).

Number of active permit holders: There are 61 vessels actively fishing.

Total effort: The fishery is managed under a capacity goal, with gross tonnage of vessels used as a proxy for fishing capacity. Capacity for the fleet is approximately 5,400 gross tons. Harvest guidelines for sardine and mackerel are also set annually.

Geographic range: These fisheries occur along the coast of California predominantly from San Pedro, including the Channel Islands, north to San Francisco.

Seasons: This fishery operates year round. Targeted species vary seasonally with availability and market demand.

Gear type and fishing method: Purse seine, drum seine and lampara nets utilizing standard seining techniques.

Regulations: This is a limited-entry fishery.

Management type: The fishery is managed under a Coastal Pelagic Species Fisheries Management Plan developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

A NMFS pilot observer program began in July 2004 and continued through January 2006. A total of 93 sets have been observed. Observed marine mammal interactions with the fishery have included one California sea lion killed, 54 sea lions released alive, and one sea otter released alive. Under the MMAP self-reporting program, the following mortality was reported: In 2003, four California sea lions drowned after chewing through a bait barge net used by the anchovy lampara net fishery.

Category II, California tuna purse seine fishery.

Note: This fishery was previously included in the CA anchovy, mackerel, and sardine purse seine fishery (see above). Vessels in the anchovy, mackerel, and sardine fishery target tuna when oceanographic conditions result in an influx of tuna into southern California waters. Data for this fishery were obtained from the 'Status of the U.S. West Coast Fisheries for Highly Migratory Species through 2004', available at the Pacific Fishery Management Council website (http://www.pcouncil.org).

Number of permit holders: There are 63 limited-entry permits (Pacific Fishery Management Council. 2005. Status of the Pacific Coast coastal pelagic species fishery and recommended acceptable biological catches. Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation Report 2005).

Number of active permit holders: Between one and 23 vessels actively purse seined for tunas during the period 2000-2004.

[4] Information for this fishery came from the following sources: Pacific Fishery Management Council. 2005. Status of the Pacific Coast coastal pelagic species fishery and recommended acceptable biological catches. Stock assessment and fishery evaluation – 2005; California Coastal Pelagic Species Pilot Observer Program Informational Report 12 October 2005 (NMFS SW Region, unpublished); Lyle Enriquez NMFS Southwest Regional Office (personal communication) and the Marine Mammal Authorization Program, Registration and Reporting System. This fishery was formerly known as the "CA anchovy, mackerel, and tuna purse seine fishery" and was renamed in the NMFS MMPA List of Fisheries for 2007 (Federal Register Volume 72, No. 59, 14466). The "tuna" component of this fishery was designated as a separate fishery in the 2007 List of Fisheries and is named the "CA tuna purse seine fishery" (see fishery description below).

Total effort: The number of vessels landing bluefin, yellowfin, skipjack, and albacore in 2000-2004 varied between one and 23. Logbooks are not required for this fishery, and the overall number of sets fished is unknown.

Geographic range: Observed sets in this fishery have occurred in the southern California Bight.

Seasons: Observed sets occurred in August and September. The timing of fishing effort varies with the availability of tuna species in this region.

Gear type and fishing method: Small coastal purse seine vessels with a <640 mt carrying capacity target bluefin, yellowfin, albacore and skipjack tuna during warm-water periods in southern California.

Regulations: This is a limited-entry fishery.

Management type: This fishery is managed under a Highly Migratory Species Management Plan developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

Comments: A pilot observer program for this fishery began in July 2004 and ended in January 2006. A total of 9 trips and 15 sets were observed with no marine mammal interactions.

Category II, WA Puget Sound Region salmon drift gillnet fishery.

Number of permit holders: This commercial fishery includes all inland waters south of the US-Canada border and east of the Bonilla/Tatoosh line, at the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Treaty Indian salmon gillnet fishing is not included in this commercial fishery. In 1999, the U.S. and Canada reached an agreement that significantly reduced the U.S. share of sockeye salmon. In order to compensate the non-treaty U.S. fishermen for the impact of this reduction, a federally funded buyback program was established. By the 2001 fishing season, the number of available drift gillnet permits had been reduced from 675 (1999) to 216. The intent of the buyback program was to reduce the number of drift gillnet permits to 200 (pers. comm., David Cantillon, NMFS, Northwest Region).

Number of active permit holders: Under the cooperative program that integrates issuance of Marine Mammal Authorization Certificates into the existing State license process, NMFS receives data on vessels that have completed the licensing process and are eligible to fish. These vessels are a subset of the total permits extant (725 in 2001), and the remainder of the permits are inactive and do not participate in the fishery during a given year. The number of "active" permits is assumed to be equal to or less than the number of permits that are eligible to fish. From 1997-2001, the number of active permits was 633, 559, 199, 248, and 182, respectively.

Total effort: Effort in the Puget Sound salmon drift gillnet fishery is regulated by systematic openings and closures that are specific to area and target salmon species. Since 1994, the number of active vessels in the Puget Sound drift gillnet fishery has declined. In addition, at least one major portion of the fishery, the previously observed sockeye fishery in areas 7 and 7A, has experienced reductions in available fishing time (openings). The number of days and total number of hours that the sockeye fishery remained open, approached the 1994 level only once (1997) in the period from 1995 through 1998. In the remaining years the available sockeye fishing time was less than half of the 1994 level. In recent years, poor sockeye returns and market conditions have combined to reduce participation in the fishery beyond the reductions created originally by the federal buyback program. In 2001, drift gillnets fished for only one opening, and 182 gear units were fished in all areas as compared to the 559 cited for 1998. Owing to the buyback program and reduced salmon runs, it is expected that the number of active permits will remain low.

Geographic Range: The fishery occurs in the inland marine waters south of the U.S./Canada border and east of the Bonilla/Tatoosh line at the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca. The inland waters are divided into smaller statistical catch areas which are regulated independently.

Seasons: This fishery has multiple seasons throughout the year that vary among local areas dependent on local salmon runs. The seasons are managed to access harvestable surplus of robust stocks of salmon while minimizing impacts on weak stocks.

Gear type and fishing methods: Vessels operating in this fishery use a drift gillnet of single web construction, not exceeding 300 fathoms in length. Minimum mesh size for gillnet gear varies by target species. Fishing directed at sockeye and pink salmon are limited to gillnet gear with a 5-inch minimum mesh and a 6 inch maximum, with an additional "bird mesh" requirement that the first 20 meshes below the corkline be constructed of 5-inch opaque white mesh for visibility; the chinook season has a 7-inch minimum mesh; the coho season has a 5-inch minimum mesh; and the chum season has a 6- to 6.25-inch minimum mesh. The depth of gillnets can vary depending upon the fishery and the area fished. Normally they range from 180 to 220 meshes in depth, with 180 meshes as a common depth. It is the intention of the fisher to keep the net off the bottom. The vessel is attached to one end of the net and drifts with the net. The entire net is periodically retrieved onto the vessel and catch is removed. Drift times vary depending on fishing area, tidal condition and catch.

Regulations: The fishery is a limited-entry fishery with seasonal openings, area closures, and gear restrictions.

Management type: The fishery occurs in State waters and is managed by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife consistent with the U.S.-Canada Pacific Salmon Commission management regimes and the ocean salmon management objectives of the Pacific Fishery Management Council. U.S. and Canadian Fraser River sockeye and pink salmon fisheries are managed by the bilateral Fraser Panel in Panel Area waters. This includes the entire U.S. drift gillnet fishery for Fraser sockeye and pink salmon. For U.S. fisheries, Fraser Panel Orders are given effect by federal regulations that consist of In-season Orders issued by the NMFS Regional Administrator of the NMFS Northwest Region. These regulations are filed in the Federal Register post-season.

Comments: In 1993, observers were placed onboard vessels in a pilot program to monitor seabird and marine mammal interactions with fishing effort for several target salmon species in a number of areas throughout the Puget Sound region. In 1994 observer effort was concentrated in the sockeye fishery in areas 7 and 7A, where interactions with seabirds and marine mammals were most likely to occur. Incidental takes of harbor porpoise, Dall's porpoise and harbor seals have been documented in the fishery. The overall take of marine mammals for the salmon drift gillnet fisheries in Puget Sound is unlikely to have increased since the fisheries were last observed, owing to reductions in the number of participating vessels and available fishing time.

Category II, OR swordfish surface longline fishery.

Number of permit holders: The number of permits issued annually from 2000-2005 has ranged between one and seven (pers. comm., Jean McCrae, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, Marine Resources Program).

Number of active permit holders: Based on landings of swordfish with this gear type, there were no active permit holders in this fishery from 2000-2005.

Total effort: From 2000-2005, there were no reported swordfish landings using longline gear.

Geographic range: The Fishery Management Plan prohibits targeting highly migratory species such as swordfish with longlines within the U.S. EEZ, thus any fishing would have to occur outside the EEZ. However, shallow set methods used for swordfish are also prohibited east of W150 longitude.

Seasons: This fishery could occur year-round, however, effort would generally terminate by late fall.

Gear type: Fishing gear consists of a buoyed mainline fitted with leaders and baited hooks. The mainline is fished near the surface suspended from buoys (rather than anchored to the bottom as in groundfish longline fisheries). Swordfish longlines may not exceed 1000 fathoms in length and must be attached at one end to the vessel when fishing. The gear is typically set in the evening and retrieved in the morning.

Regulations: The fishery is a limited-entry fishery with gear and bycatch restrictions.

Management type: The fishery is managed under a Highly Migratory Species Fisheries Management Plan developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

Category II, OR blue shark surface longline fishery.

Number of permit holders: The number of Oregon Developmental Fishery Permits for fishing blue shark using a floating longline is limited to 10. From 2000-2005, there were fewer than 5 permits issued annually for this fishery (pers. comm., Jean McCrae, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, Marine Resources Program).

Number of active permit holders: There were no active permits in the blue shark longline fishery off Oregon from 2000-2005. The effort in this fishery prior to 1998 was estimated to be low based on the number of permits issued and very limited landings.

Total effort: From 2000-2005, there were no reported landings of blue sharks using longline gear.

Geographic range: This fishery occurs off the coast of Oregon. The Fishery Management Plan prohibits targeting highly migratory species such as blue sharks with longlines within the U.S. EEZ, thus any fishing would have to occur outside the EEZ.

Seasons: This fishery occurs year-round, however, effort in this fishery generally terminates by late fall.

Gear type: Fishing gear consists of a buoyed mainline fitted with leaders and baited hooks. The mainline is fished near the surface suspended from buoys (rather than anchored to the bottom as in groundfish longline fisheries). Shark longlines must be marked at each terminal surface end with a pole and flag, an operating light, a radar reflector, and a buoy showing clear identification and gear owner. The gear is typically set in the evening and retrieved in the morning.

Regulations: The fishery is a limited-entry fishery with gear and bycatch restrictions.

Management type: The fishery is managed under a Highly Migratory Species Fisheries Management Plan developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and NMFS.

Category II, CA squid purse seine fishery.[5]

Number of Permit Holders: A permit has been required to participate in the squid fishery since April 1998. Originally, only two types of permits were issued, either a vessel or light boat permit during the moratorium period from 1998 to 2004. Since the adoption of the Market Squid Fishery Management Plan (MSFMP) in 2005, a total of seven different permit types are now allowed under the restricted access program. Permit types include both transferable and non-transferable vessel, brail and light boat permits whose qualifying criteria are based on historical participation in the fishery during the moratorium period. Market squid vessel and brail permits allow a vessel to use lights to attract and capture squid using either purse seines or brail gear. Light boat owner permits only allow the use of attracting lights to attract and aggregate squid. In addition, three experimental non-transferable permits are allowed for vessel fishing outside of historical fishing areas north of San Francisco. In the 2006/2007 season there were 91 vessel permits, 14 brail permits, 64 light boat permits and 3 experimental permits issued. A permit is not required when fishing for live bait or when landing two short tons or less, which is considered incidental.

Number of Active Permit Holders: The number of active permits varies by year depending on market conditions and availability of squid. During the 2006/2007 season (1 April 2006 – 31 March 2007) there were approximately 84 vessels active during some portion of the year. Twenty-nine vessels harvested 86% of the total landings greater than two tons. The 1999/2000 season had the highest squid landings to date (115,437mt), with 132 vessels making squid landings.

Total Effort: Logbooks have been mandatory for the squid fishery since May 2000. Results for the 2006 calendar year indicate that each hour of fishing required 1.4 hours of search time by light boats. Combined searching and fishing effort

[5]This fishery description was provided by Dianna Porzio and Dale Sweetnam, California Department of Fish and Game. Details of marine mammal interactions with this fishery were obtained from NOAA Fisheries, Southwest Regional Office.

resulted in 6.9 metric tons (mt) of catch per hour. In the 2006/2007 season, the fishery made 1,611 landings. This is a 47% decrease from the previous season. In addition, the average landing decreased from 23.9 mt to 21.7 mt.

Geographic Range: Since the 1960's there have been two distinct fisheries in operation north and south of Point Conception. Since the mid-1980's the majority of the squid fishing harvest has occurred in the southern fishery, with efforts focused around the Channel Islands and along the mainland from Port Hueneme to La Jolla. In the 2006/2007 season, the southern fishery landed 98% of the catch with the majority of landings occurring around the northern Channel Islands. In contrast, during the 2005/2006 season, landings in the southern fishery were primarily around Catalina Island. The northern fishery, centered primarily in Monterey Bay, has been in operation since the mid-1860's and has historical significance to California. During the 2002/2003 season, a moderate El Niño condition resulted in nearly 60% of the catch being landed in northern California.

Seasons: The fishery can occur year-round; however, fishing efforts differ north and south of Point Conception. Typically, the northern fishery operates from April through September while the southern fishery is most active from October through March. El Niño conditions generally hamper the fishery in the southern fishery and squid landings are minimal during these events. In contrast, landings in the northern fishery often increase during El Niño events and then are depressed for several years after.

Gear Type: There are several gears employed in this fishery. From 1996 to 2006, the vast majority (95%) of vessels use either purse (69%) or drum (26%) seine nets. Other types of nets used include brail (5%) and lampara nets (<1%). Another gear type associated with the fishery is attracting lights (30,000 watts maximum) that are used to attract and aggregate spawning squid in shallow waters.

Regulations: Since March 2005, the fishery operates under a restricted access program that requires all vessels to be permitted. A mandatory logbook program for fishing and lighting vessels has been in place since May 2000. A /monitoring program has been in place since 2000 that samples the landings is designed to evaluate the impact of the fishery on the resource. Attracting lights were regulated with each vessel restricted to no more than 30,000 watts of light during fishing activities. These lights must also be shielded and oriented directly downward to reduce light scatter. The lighting restrictions were enacted to avoid risks to nesting brown pelicans and interactions with other seabird species of concern. A seabird closure area restricting the use of attracting lights for commercial purposes in any waters of the Gulf of the Farallones National Marine Sanctuary was enacted. A seasonal catch limitation of 107,047 mt (118,000 short tons) was established to limit further expansion of the fishery. Commercial squid fishing is prohibited between noon on Friday and noon on Sunday of each week to allow an uninterrupted consecutive two-day period of spawning. Additional closure areas to the fishery to protect squid spawning habitat include the Channel Islands Marine Protected Areas (MPAs) and the newly established MPAs along the central California coast as well as areas closed to the use of purse seine gear including the leeward side of Catalina Island, Carmel and Santa Monica Bays.

Management Type: The market squid fishery is under California State management. The fishery was largely unregulated until 1998 when it came under regulatory control of the California Fish and Game Commission and the Department of Fish and Game. The MSFMP was enacted on March 28, 2005. The MSFMP was developed to ensure sustainable long-term conservation and to be responsive to environmental and socioeconomic changes. Market squid is also considered a monitored species under the Pacific Fishery Management Council's (PFMC) Coastal Pelagic Species Fishery Management Plan.

Comments: During the 1980's, California's squid fishery grew rapidly in fleet size and landings when international demand for squid increased due to declining fisheries in other parts of the world. In 1997 industry-sponsored legislation halted the growth of fleet size with a moratorium on new permits. Landing records were set several times during the 1990's, but landings seem to fluctuate with changing environmental and atmospheric conditions of the California Current. Encounters with marine mammals and sea birds are documented in logbooks. Seal bombs are used regularly, but fishermen report that they no longer have an effect. A pilot observer program began in July 2004 and has documented one unidentified common dolphin death in 135 sets through January 2006. In addition, there have been 96 California sea lions and three harbor seals released alive (NMFS, Southwest Region, unpublished data). In addition to the observed death, there were three strandings of Risso's dolphin from 2002-2003 where evidence of gunshot wounds was confirmed, suggesting interaction with this fishery (NMFS Southwest Regional Office, unpublished data). The squid fishery operates primarily at

night and targets spawning aggregations of adult squid. In recent years the amount of daylight fishing has increased, especially in Monterey, in part due to better sonar gear, but also to reduce interactions with California sea lions. The PFMC adopted the egg escapement method to monitor the impact of market squid fishery since no reliable biomass estimate has been developed. It is a proxy for Maximum Sustainable Yield (MSY), setting an egg escapement threshold level at which to evaluate the magnitude of fishing mortality on the spawning potential of the squid stock. The egg escapement method was developed on conventional spawning biomass "per-recruit" theory. In general, the MSY Control Rule for market squid is based on evaluating levels of egg escapement associated with the exploited population. The egg escapement threshold, initially set at 30%, represents a biological reference point from which to evaluate fishery related impacts.

Category III, CA Dungeness crab pot

Notes: NMFS is reviewing several pot and trap fisheries along the U.S. west coast, in response to entanglements of humpback whales in pot and trap gear. An update on these fisheries will appear in the MMPA Proposed List of Fisheries for 2009. For all commercial pot and trap fisheries in California, a general trap permit is required, in addition to any specific permits required for an individual fishery. All traps are required to be tended and serviced at least every 96 hours, weather permitting. Descriptions of those pot and/or trap fisheries for which interactions with marine mammals have been documented or suspected are included in this Appendix.

Number of permit holders: The Dungeness crab fishery is a limited access fishery requiring a vessel-based permit that is transferable. This program was initiated in 1994 based on landing histories. The number of vessels participating on an annual basis does vary, but approximately 400 vessels have been landing crab in recent years.

Number of active permit holders: Approximately 400 vessels have been landing crabs in recent years.

Total effort: There is no restriction on the number of traps that may be fished at one time by a single vessel. Some vessels use as many as 1000 or more traps at the peak of the season (December/January).

Geographic range: This fishery operates in central and northern California.

Seasons: The fishery is divided into two management areas. The central region (south of the Mendocino-Sonoma county line) fishery opens November 15 and continues through June 30. The northern region (north of the Mendocino-Sonoma county line) is annually scheduled to open on December 1, but may be delayed by CDF&G based on the condition of market size crabs, and continues until July 15.

Gear type: For each trap fished there is one vertical line in the water, though only in the northern region, is fishing strings illegal. All traps are required to be marked with buoys bearing the commercial fishing license number. The normal operating depth for Dungeness crab is between 35 and 70 m. Traps are typically tended on a daily basis.

Regulations: There is no daily logbook requirement for the commercial Dungeness crab fishery. There is a recreation fishery for Dungeness crab, which allows for 10 crab per day to be harvested except when fishing on a commercial passenger fishing vessel (CPFV) in central California, the limit is 6 crab per person. There is no reliable estimate for the effort or landings in the sport fishery except that CPFVs are required to track catch and effort by species.

Management type: The Dungeness crab pot fishery is managed by the California legislature, CDF&G and also by the tri-state committee for Dungeness, which includes the states of Oregon and Washington.

Comments: Humpback whale entanglements with Dungeness crab gear have not been confirmed, but are suspected as the responsible fishery based on the location and timing of fishing effort and observed humpback entanglements.

Category III, OR Dungeness crab pot

Notes: Dungeness crab is the most significant pot/trap fishery in the state of Oregon. Over the long term, the fishery has averaged around 10 million lb of landings per year; although since 2003, annual landings have been approximately 25 to 30 million lb. This fishery requires an Oregon issued limited-entry permit, which is transferable.

Number of permit holders: There were 433 permit holders in 2006.

Number of active permit holders: A total of 364 vessels landed crabs in 2006.

Total effort: In 2006, the fishery made a transition to a three-tiered pot limitation program which allows a maximum of 200, 300, or 500 pots to be fished at any one time depending on previous landing history. The pot limitation is implemented through a buoy tag requirement. All Dungeness crab pots require buoy tags with the identifying associated permit attached. The expected result of the buoy tags and tier limits is to reduce the number of pots in Oregon waters down from 200,000 to approximately 150,000.

Geographic range: Oregon waters.

Seasons: The Dungeness crab season runs from December 1 to August 14. The highest landings are always recorded in December through February, at the beginning of the season.

Gear type: Pots.

Regulations: All Oregon pot/trap gear must be marked on its terminal ends with pole and flag, light, radar reflector, and buoy with the owner/operator number clearly marked. By law, gear may not be left unattended for more than seven days. All vessel operators and deck hands must have a commercial fishing license or crewmembers license.

Management type: State management, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Comments: Humpback whale entanglements with Dungeness crab gear have not been confirmed, but are suspected as the responsible fishery based on the location and timing of fishing effort and observed humpback entanglements.

Category III, CA spot prawn fishery

Number of permit holders: A three-tiered limited access permit system is used in this fishery to accommodate changes in the fishery that occurred when trawling methods were banned and replaced with trap fishing in 2003. Permits are linked to the vessel owner and only Tier 1 permits are transferable. Tier 1 permits allow a maximum of 500 traps in use at a time. Eighteen vessels had Tier 1 permits in 2007. Tier 2 permits allow 150 traps in use at a time. There were three vessels utilizing Tier 2 permits in 2007. Tier 3 permits were issued to allow vessels that previously used trawl gear to switch to trap gear to target spot prawn. There were nine Tier 3 permits issued in 2007. Information on 2007 license statistics was obtained from the CA Department of Fish and Game website, http://www.dfg.ca.gov/licensing/statistics/statistics.html.

Number of active permit holders: A total of 30 vessels participated in this fishery in 2007.

Total effort: Landings have increased every year since 2003. The total number of traps set is unknown, although the theoretical maximum number of traps that may be fished annually is approximately 13,000.

Geographic range: The fishery operates from Monterey south. Over half of the landings are made in Los Angeles and San Diego. Traps are typically set in waters of 182 m (100 fathoms) or more. South of Point Arguello, traps must be fished in waters 91 m (50 fathoms) or deeper.

Seasons: North of Point Arguello, the fishery is open from February 1 to October 30. North of Point Arguello, the open season is August 1 to April 30.

Gear type: Strings of 25 to 50 traps are fished in deep waters (>182 m).

Regulations: For all commercial pot and trap fisheries in California, a general trap permit is required, in addition to any specific permits required for an individual fishery. All traps are required to be tended and serviced at least every 96 hours,

weather permitting. There is a daily logbook requirement in this fishery. There is no buoy marking requirement and no recreational fishery for this species.

Management type: This fishery is managed under state authority by the California Department of Fish and Game.

Comments: One humpback whale was seriously injured in 2006 as a result of entanglement in spot prawn trap gear.

Category III, WA/OR/CA sablefish pot

Notes: Sablefish is likely the most commonly targeted groundfish caught in pot gear in off the U.S. west coast.
Number of permit holders: There are 32 limited-entry permits (LEPs) to catch sablefish with pot gear. Open access privileges are also available to fishermen.

Number of active permit holders: Including all vessels which made landings with an LEP or under open access rules, a total of about 150 vessels participated in this fishery in 2007. This total fluctuates on an annual basis.
Total effort: Estimated annual landings indicate usually over 1 million lbs of sablefish are landed per year in this fishery.

Geographic range: The fishery is well distributed from central California north to the U.S./Canadian border. Most of the effort occurs out in deeper waters (200-400 m).

Seasons: Most fishing effort occurs January through September.

Gear type: Traps <6 ft. in any dimension.

Regulations: A general trap permit is all that is required for open access to this fishery by the states along the U.S. west coast. LEPs are divided into a three-tiered system which allocates annual landing limits to individual permits based on the status of the stock. Daily logbook reporting is required.

Management type: Sablefish is managed under the federal Groundfish Fishery Management Plan. This is the only trap fishery regulated by the federal government; all others are managed by the states.

Comments: One humpback whale was seriously injured in 2006 as a result of entanglement in sablefish trap gear.

Category III, CA rock crab

Number of permit holders: There were 134 permits issued in 2007.

Number of active permit holders: Unknown, but it is likely that most issued permits are active.

Total effort: Annual landings averaged approximately 1 million pounds from 2000 to 2005.

Geographic range: The fishery operates throughout California waters. Most landings are made south of Morro Bay, California, with approximately 65% of all landings coming from the Santa Barbara area.

Seasons: There are no seasonal restrictions, though some area closures exist.

Gear type: There is no restriction on the number of traps that may be fished at one time by the vessel but the typical number of traps operated at any given time is less than 200. Traps are usually buoyed singularly or in pairs, but fishing strings (multiple traps attached together between two buoys) is allowed. Buoys are required to be marked with the license number of the operator. The normal working depth of traps in this fishery is 10 to 35 fathoms.

Regulations: There is no daily logbook requirement for the commercial rock crab fishery.

Management type: The fishery is managed by the California Department of Fish and Game.

Comments: The recreational bag limit is 35 crabs per day, but there is no reliable estimate of the effort or landings in the sport fishery.

Category III, CA halibut bottom trawl.

Notes: This is a newly-listed fishery in the 2007 MMPA NMFS List of Fisheries (Federal Register Volume 72, No. 59, 14466). Information on fishing effort was provided by Stephen Wertz, California Department of Fish and Game.

Number of permit holders: There were 60 permits issued in 2006.

Number of active permit holders: There were 31 active permit holders in 2006.

Total effort: Thirty one vessels made 3,711 tows statewide in 2006, totaling 3,897 tow hours, in 332 days of fishing effort.

Geographic range: The fishery operates from Bodega Bay in northern California to San Diego in southern California, from 3 to 200 nautical miles offshore. Trawling is prohibited in state waters (0 to 3 nmi offshore) and within the entire Monterey Bay, except in the designated "California halibut trawl grounds", between Point Arguello and Point Mugu beyond 1 nautical mile from shore. Trawls used in this region must have a minimum mesh size of 7.5 in and trawling is prohibited here between 15 March and 15 June to protect spawning adults.

Seasons: Fishing is permitted year-round, except in state waters. State waters are closed between 15 March and 15 June.

Gear type: Otter trawls, with a minimum mesh size of 4.5 inches are required in federal waters, while fishing in state waters has a 7.5 inch mesh size requirement.

Regulations: Fishing in state waters is limited to the period 14 March – 16 June in the 'California halibut trawl grounds' in southern California between Point Arguello and Point Mugu. All other fishing must occur in federal waters beyond 3 nautical miles from shore.

Management type: The fishery is managed by the California Department of Fish and Game.

Comments: No marine mammal interactions have been documented for this fishery, but the gear type and fishing methods are similar to the WA/OR/CA groundfish trawl fishery (also category III), which is known to interact with marine mammals.

Category III, CA herring gillnet fishery.[6]

The herring fishery is concentrated in four spawning areas which are managed separately by the California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG); catch quotas are based on population estimates derived from acoustic and spawning-ground surveys. The largest spawning aggregations occur in San Francisco Bay and produces more than 90% of the herring catch. Smaller spawning aggregations are fished in Tomales Bay, Humboldt Bay, and Crescent City Harbor. During the early 1990's, there were 26 round haul permits (either purse seine or lampara nets). Between 1993 and 1998, all purse seine fishers converted their gear to gillnets with stretched mesh size less than 2.5 inches (which are not known to take mammals) as part of CDFG efforts to protect herring resources. The fishery is managed through a limited-entry program. The California Department of Fish and Game website lists a total of 447 herring gillnet permits for 2005 (http://www.dfg.ca.gov/mrd/herring/index.html). Of these, 406 permits exist for San Francisco Bay, 34 in Tomales Bay, 4 in Humboldt Bay, and 3 in Crescent City Harbor. This fishery begins in December (San Francisco Bay) or January (northern California) and ends when the quotas have been reached, but no later than mid-March.

Category III, WA Willapa Bay salmon drift gillnet fishery.

[6] Pers. Comm. Becky Ota, State Herring Manager, Senior Biologist.

Number of permit holders: The total number of permit holders for this fishery in 1995 and 1996 was 300, but this number has declined in subsequent years. In 1997 there were 264 total permits and 243 in 1998. The NMFS 2001 List of Fisheries lists an estimate of 82 vessels/persons in this fishery.

Number of active permit holders: The number of active permit holders is assumed to be equal to or less than the number of permits eligible to fish in a given year. The number of permits renewed and eligible to fish in 1996 was 300 but declined to 224 in 1997 and 196 permits were renewed for 1998. The 1996-98 counts do not include permits held on waivers for those years, but do include permits that were eligible to fish at some point during the year and subsequently entered into a buyback program. The number of permits issued for this fishery has been reduced through a combination of State and federal permit buyback programs. Vessels permitted to fish in the Willapa Bay are also permitted to fish in the lower Columbia River drift gillnet fishery.

Total effort: Effort in this fishery is regulated through area and species openings. The fishery was observed in 1992 and 1993 when fishery opening were greater than in recent years. In 1992 and 1993 there were 42 and 19 days of open fishing time during the summer "dip-in" fishery. The "dip-in" fishery was closed in 1994 through 1999. Available openings have also declined in the fall chinook/coho fisheries. In 1992/93 respectively there were 44 and 78 days of available fishing time. There were 43, 45, 22 and 16.5 available open fishing days during 1995 through 1998.

Geographic range: This fishery includes all inland marine waters of Willapa Bay. The waters of the Bay are further divided into smaller statistical catch areas.

Seasons: Seasonal openings coincide with local salmon run timing and fish abundance.

Gear type: Fishing gear used in this fishery is a drift gillnet of single web construction, not exceeding 250 fathoms in length, with a minimum stretched mesh size ranging upward from 5 inches depending on target salmon species. The gear is commonly set during periods of low and high slack tides. It is the intention of the fisher to keep the net off the bottom. The vessel is attached to one end of the net and drifts with the net. The entire net is periodically retrieved onto the vessel and catch is removed. Drift times vary depending on fishing area, tidal condition, and catch.

Regulations: This fishery is a limited-entry fishery with seasonal openings and gear restrictions.

Management type: The salmon drift gillnet fishery is managed by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Comments: Observers were placed onboard vessels in this fishery to monitor marine mammal interactions in the early 1980s and in 1990-93. Five incidentally taken harbor seals were recovered by observers in the fishery from 1991through 1993 (3 in ‘92 and 2 in ‘93). Two incidentally taken northern elephant seals were recovered by observers from the fishery in 1991 but no takes of this species were observed. The summer fishery (July- August) in Willapa Bay has been closed since it was last observed in 1993 and available fishing time declined from 1996 through 1998.

Category III, WA Grays Harbor salmon drift gillnet fishery.

Number of permit holders: This commercial drift gillnet fishery does not include Treaty Indian salmon gillnet fishing. The total number of permit holders for this commercial fishery in 1995 and 1996 was 117 but this number has declined in subsequent years. In 1997 there were 101 total permits and 87 in 1998.

Number of active permit holders: The NMFS 2001 List of Fisheries lists a total of 24 vessels/persons operating in this fishery. The number of active permit holders is assumed to be equal to or less than the number of permits eligible to fish in a given year. The number of permits renewed and eligible to fish in 1996 was 117 but declined to 79 in 1997 and 59 permits were renewed for 1998. The 1996-98 counts do not include permits held on waivers for those years but do include permits that were eligible to fish at some point during the year and subsequently entered a buyback program. The number of permits issued for this fishery has been reduced through a combination of State and federal permit buyback programs. Vessels permitted to fish in Grays Harbor are also permitted to fish in the lower Columbia River salmon drift gillnet fishery.

Total effort: Effort in this fishery is regulated through area and species openings. The fishery was observed in 1992 and 1993 when fishery openings were greater than in recent years. In 1992 and 1993 there were 42 and 19 days of open fishing time during the summer "dip-in" fishery. The "dip-in" fishery was closed in 1994 through 1999. Available openings have also declined in the fall chinook/coho fisheries. There were 11, 17.5, 9 and 5 available open fishing days during the 1995 through 1998 fall season.

Geographic range: Effort in this fishery includes all marine waters of Grays Harbor. The waters are further divided into smaller statistical catch areas.

Seasons: This fishery is subject to seasonal openings which coincide with local salmon run timing and fish abundance.

Gear type: Fishing gear used in this fishery is a drift gillnet of single web construction, not exceeding 250 fathoms in length, with a minimum stretched mesh size ranging of 5 inches depending on target salmon species. The gear is commonly set during periods of low and high slack tides and retrieved periodically by the tending vessel. It is the intention of the fisher to keep the net off the bottom. The vessel is attached to one end of the net and drifts with the net. The entire net is periodically retrieved onto the vessel and catch is removed. Drift times vary depending on fishing area, tidal condition, and catch.

Regulations: The fishery is a limited-entry fishery with seasonal openings and gear restrictions.

Management type: The salmon drift gillnet fishery is managed by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Comments: Observers were placed onboard vessels in this fishery to monitor marine mammal interactions in the early 1980s and in 1990-93. Incidental take of harbor seals was observed during the fishery in 1992 and 1993. In 1992, one harbor seal was observed entangled dead during the summer fishery and one additional seal was observed entangled during the fall fishery but it escaped uninjured. In 1993, one harbor seal was observed entangled dead and one additional seal was recovered by observers during the summer fishery. The summer fishery (July-August) in Grays Harbor has been closed since it was last observed in 1993. Available fishing time in the fall chinook fisheries declined from 1996 through 1998.

Category III, WA, OR lower Columbia River salmon drift gillnet fishery.

Number of permit holders: The total number of permit holders was 856 (344 from Oregon and 512 from Washington) when the fishery was last observed in 1993. In 1995 through 1998 the number of permits was 747, 693, 675 and 620 respectively. The number of permits issued for this fishery by Washington has been reduced through a combination of State and federal buy-back programs. This reduction is reflected in the overall decline in the total number of permits.

Number of active permit holders: The number of active permits is a subset of the total permits issued for the fishery. For example, in 1995, 110 vessels (of the 747 vessels holding permits) landed fish in the mainstem fishery.

Total effort: Effort in this fishery is regulated through species related seasonal openings and gear restrictions. The fishery was observed in 1991, 1992 and 1993 during several seasons of the year. The winter seasons (openings) for 1991 through 1993 totaled 13, 9.5, and 6 days respectively. The winter season has subsequently been reduced to remnant levels to protect upriver ESA listed salmon stocks. In 1995 there was no winter salmon season, in 1996 the fishery was open for 1 day. In 1997 and 1998 the season was shifted to earlier in the year and gear restrictions were imposed to target primarily sturgeon. The fall fishery in the mainstem was also observed 1992 and 1993 as was the Young's Bay terminal fishery in 1993, however, no marine mammal mortality was observed in these fisheries. The fall mainstem fishery openings varied from 1 day in 1995 to just under 19.5 days in 1997 and 6 days in 1998. The fall Youngs Bay terminal fishery fluctuated between 60 and 70 days for the 1995 through 1998 period which was similar to the fishery during the period observed.

Geographic range: This fishery occurs in the main stem of the Columbia river from the mouth at the Pacific Ocean upstream to river mile 140 near the Bonneville Dam. The lower Columbia is further subdivided into smaller statistical catch areas which can be regulated independently.

Seasons: This fishery is subject to season and statistical area openings which are designed to coincide with run timing of harvestable salmon runs while protecting weak salmon stocks and those listed under the Endangered Species Act. In recent years, early spring (winter) fisheries have been sharply curtailed for the protection of listed salmon species. In 1994, for example, the spring fishery was open for only three days with approximately 1900 fish landed. In 1995 the spring fishery was closed and in 1996 the fishery was open for one day but fishing effort was minimal owing to severe flooding. Only 100 fish were landed during the one day in 1996.

Gear type: Typical gear used in this fishery is a gillnet of single web construction, not exceeding 250 fathoms in length, with a minimum stretched mesh size ranging upwards from 5 inches depending on target salmon species. The gear is commonly set during periods of low and high slack tides. It is the intention of the fisher to keep the net off the bottom. The vessel is attached to one end of the net and drifts with the net. The entire net is periodically retrieved onto the vessel and catch is removed. Drift times vary depending on fishing area, tidal condition, and catch.

Regulations: The fishery is a limited-entry fishery with seasonal openings, area closures, and gear restrictions.

Management type: The lower Columbia River salmon drift gillnet fishery is managed jointly by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Comments: Observers were placed onboard vessels in this fishery to monitor marine mammal interactions in the early 1980s and in 1990-93. Incidental takes of harbor seals and California sea lions were documented, but only during the winter seasons (which have been reduced dramatically in recent years to protect ESA-listed salmon). No mortality was observed during the fall fisheries.

Category III, WA, OR salmon net pens.

Number of permit holders: There were 12 commercial salmon net pen ("grow out") facilities licensed in Washington in 1998. There are no commercial salmon net pen or aquaculture facilities currently licensed in Oregon. Non-commercial salmon enhancement pens are not included in the list of commercial fisheries.

Number of active permit holders: Twelve salmon net pen facilities in Washington.

Total effort: The 12 licensed facilities on Washington operate year-round.

Geographic range: In Washington, net pens are found in protected waters in the Straits (Port Angeles), northern Puget Sound (in the San Juan Island area) as well as in Puget Sound south of Admirality Inlet. There are currently no commercial salmon pens in Oregon.

Seasons: Salmon net pens operate year-round.

Gear type: Net pens are large net impoundments suspended below a floating dock-like structure. The floating docks are anchored to the bottom and may also support guard (predator) net systems. Multiple pens are commonly rafted together and the entire facility is positioned in an area with adequate tidal flow to maintain water quality.

Regulations: Specific regulations unknown.

Management type: In Washington, the salmon net pen fishery is managed by the Washington Department of Natural Resources through Aquatic Lands Permits as well as the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Comments: Salmon net pen operations have not been monitored by NMFS for marine mammal interactions, however, incidental takes of California sea lions and harbor seals have been reported.

Category III, WA, OR, CA groundfish trawl.

Approximate number of vessels/persons: In 1998, approximately 332 vessels used bottom and mid-water trawl gear to harvest Pacific coast groundfish. This is down from 383 vessels in 1995. The NMFS List of Fisheries for 2001 lists 585 vessels as participating in this fishery. Groundfish trawl vessels harvest a variety of species including Pacific hake, flatfish, sablefish, lingcod, and rockfish. This commercial fishery does not include Treaty Indian fishing for groundfish.

All observed incidental marine mammal takes have occurred in the mid-water trawl fishery for Pacific hake. The annual hake allocation is divided between vessels that harvest and process catch at sea and those that harvest and deliver catch to shore-based processing facilities. At least one NMFS-trained observer is placed on board each at-sea processing vessel to provide comprehensive data on total catch, including marine mammal takes. In the California, Oregon, and Washington range of the fishery, the number of vessels fishing ranged between 12 and 16 (all with observers) during 1997-2001. Hake vessels that deliver to shore-based processors are issued Exempted Fishing Permits that requires the entire catch to be delivered unsorted to processing facilities where State technicians have the opportunity to sample. In 1998, 13% of the hake deliveries landed at shore-based processors were monitored. The following is a description of the commercial hake fishery.

Number of permit holders/active permit holders: A license limitation ("limited-entry") program has been in effect in the Pacific coast groundfish fishery since 1994. The number of limited-entry permits is limited to 404. Non-tribal trawl vessels that harvest groundfish are required to possess a limited-entry permit to operate in the fishery. Any vessel with a federal limited-entry trawl permit may fish for hake, but the number of vessels that do is smaller than the number of permits. In 1998, approximately 61 limited-entry vessels, 7 catcher/processors and 50 catcher vessels delivering to shoreside and mothership processors, made commercial landings of hake during the regular season. In addition, 6 unpermitted mothership processors received unsorted hake catch.

Total effort: The hake allocation continues to be fully utilized. From 1997 to 1999 the annual allocation was 232,000 mt/year, this is an increase over the 1996 allocation of 212,000 mt and the 1995 allocation of 178,400 mt. In 1998, motherships vessels received 50,087 mt of hake in 17 days, catcher/processors took 70,365 mt of hake in 54 days and shore-based processors received 87,862 mt of hake over a 196 day period.

Geographic range: The fishery extends from northern California (about 40° 30' N. latitude) to the U.S.-Canada border. Pacific hake migrate from south to north during the fishing season, so effort in the south usually occurs earlier than in the north.

Seasons: From 1997 to 1999, season start dates have remained unchanged. The shore-based season in most of the Eureka area (between 42°- 40°30' N latitude) began on April 1, the fishery south of 40°30' N latitude opened April 15, and the fishery north of 42° N latitude started on June 15. In 1998, the primary season for the shore-based fleet closed on October 13, 1998. The primary seasons for the mothership and catcher/processor sectors began May 15, north of 42^{0} N. lat. In 1998, the mothership fishery closed on May 31, the catcher/processor fishery closed on August 7.

Gear type: The Pacific hake trawl fishery is conducted with mid-water trawl gear with a minimum mesh size of 3 inches throughout the net.

Regulations/Management type: This fishery is managed through Federal regulations by the Pacific Fishery Management Council under the Groundfish Fishery Management Plan.

Comments: Since 1991, incidental takes of Steller sea lions, Pacific white-sided dolphins, Dall's porpoise, California sea lions, harbor seals, northern fur seals, and northern elephant seals have been documented in the hake fishery. From 1997-2001, 4 California sea lions, 2 harbor seals, 2 northern elephant seals, 1 Pacific white-sided dolphin, and 6 Dall's porpoise were reported taken in California/Oregon/Washington regions by this fishery.

Category III, Hawaii gillnet fishery.[7]

[7]Descriptions of Hawaii State managed fisheries provided by William Devick, State of Hawaii, Department of Land and Natural Resources, Division of Aquatic Resources, Honolulu Hawaii.

Number of active permit holders: In 1997 there were 129 active commercial fishers. In 1995 there were approximately 115.

Total effort: In 1997 there were 2,109 trips for a total catch of 864,194 pounds with 792,210 pounds sold. This fishery operates in nearshore and coastal pelagic regions.

Seasons: This fishery operates year-round with the exception of juvenile big-eyed scad less than 8.5 inches which cannot be taken from July through October.

Gear type: Gillnets are of stretched mesh greater than 2 inches and stretched mesh size greater than 2.75 inches for stationary gillnets. Stationary nets must be inspected every 2 hours and total soak time cannot exceed four hours in the same location. New restrictions implemented in 2002 include that nets may not: 1) be used more than once in a 24-hour period; 2) exceed a 12 ft stretched height limit; 3) exceed a single-panel; 4) be used at night; 5) be set within 100 ft. of another lay net; 6) be set in more than 80 ft depths; 7) be left unattended for more than ½ hour; 8) break coral during retrieval and nets must be 1) registered with the Division of Aquatic Resources; 2) inspected within two hours after being set; 2) tagged with two marker buoys while fished. In addition to these gear restrictions, non-commercial users of lay nets may not use a net longer than 500 ft, while commercial users may use nets up to 1200 ft in length. Additional mesh restrictions are in place for taking big-eyed scad.

Regulations: Gear and season restrictions (see above).

Management type: Managed by the State of Hawaii Division of Aquatic Resources.

Comments: The principle catches include reef fishes and big-eyed scad (akule) and mackerel scad (opelu). Interactions have been documented with bottlenose dolphins and spinner dolphins.

Category III, Hawaii lobster trap fishery.[8] [9]

Note: The portion of this fishery managed by the State of Hawaii and operating in the MHI is about 1% of the size (total pounds of lobster caught) of the federally managed fishery operating primarily in the NWHI. The description that follows refers to the NWHI fishery unless stated otherwise.

Number of permit holders: There are 15 permit holders under a (1991) federal limited access program.

Number of active permit holders: In 1998 and 1999 there were 5 and 6 vessels that participated, respectively. In the MHI there were 5 active fishers in 1997.

Total effort: The number of trap hauls for 1999 is not available at this time. However, the majority of the effort took place in the 4 harvest guideline areas; Necker Bank, Gardner Pinnacles and Maro Reef, with the remaining effort spread out over 10 unique areas. In 1998 171,000 trap hauls were made by the 5 vessels during 9 trips and in 1997 a total of 177,700 hauls were made. In the MHI 19 trips were made in 1997.

Geographic range: Lobster permits allow fishing operations in the US EEZ from 3 to 200 nmi offshore American Samoa, Guam and Hawaii (including the EEZ areas of the NWHI and MHI). However, no vessels have operated in the EEZ's of American Samoa or Guam since 1983.

Seasons: This fishery operates under a seasonal harvest guideline system opening on July 1. The season ends once the harvest guideline is met, but no later than December 31. In 1998, the harvest guideline was divided into the 4 areas mentioned above with total lobster catch set at (in thousands) 70, 20, 80, and 116, respectively. Area closure occurs once an area's harvest guideline is met. In the MHI, open season is from September through April.

---

[8] Kawamoto, K. and Samuel G. Pooley. 1999. Draft Annual report of the 1998 western pacific lobster fishery.

[9] Kawamoto, K. 1999. Summary of the 1999 NWHI Lobster Fishing Season. NMFS Honolulu Laboratory.

Gear type: One string consists of approximately 100-fathom-plus plastic lobster traps. About 10 such strings are pulled and set each day. Since 1987 escape vents that allow small lobsters to escape from the trap have been mandatory. In 1996, the fishery became "retain all", i.e. there are no size limits or prohibitions on the retention of berried female lobsters. The entry-way of the lobster trap must be less than 6.5 inches to prevent monk seals from getting their heads stuck in the trap. In the MHI, rigid trap materials must have a dimension greater than 1 inch by 2 inches, with the trap not exceeding 10 feet by six feet.

Regulations: Season, gear and quota restrictions (see above) for the NWHI were formulated by the Western Pacific Regional Fishery Management Council and implemented by NMFS. The MHI fishery is managed by the State of Hawaii, Division of Aquatic Resources with season and gear restrictions (see above).

Management type: Limited-access program with bank specific quotas and closures. In the MHI, open access.

Comments: The NWHI fishery targets the red spiny lobster and the common slipper lobster. The ridgeback slipper lobster is also taken. Protected species of concern include monk seals (mentioned above) and turtles. There have been no interactions with these species since 1995, but they have been seen in the vicinity of the fishing gear.

Category III, Hawaii inshore handline fishery.

In 1997 a total of 750 fishers made 8,526 fishing trips in the main Hawaiian Islands, caught 531,449 pounds and sold 475,562 pounds for an ex-vessel landing value of $1,010,758. This fishery occurs in nearshore and coastal pelagic regions. The principal catches include reef fishes and big-eyed scad (akule) and mackerel scad (opelu). In 1995 approximately 650 fishers were active. Interactions have been documented for bottlenose dolphins.

Category III, Hawaii deep sea bottomfish handline and jig fishery.

Note: There are two commercial bottomfish fisheries in Hawaii: a distant water Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) limited-entry fishery under federal jurisdiction and the main Hawaiian Islands bottomfish fishery primarily under the State of Hawaii jurisdiction.

Number of permit holders: The main Hawaiian Islands fishery is open-access with close to 2,000 bottomfish vessels registered with the State of Hawaii, whereas the NWHI is restricted to a maximum of 17 vessels.

Number of active permit holders: In 1997 in the MHI a total of 750 fishers were active. The NWHI are divided into the Mau Zone (closer to MHI) and the Hoomalu Zone. The Hoomalu Zone is a limited-entry zone with 6 vessels participating in 1998, 7 vessels fished the Mau Zone in the same year. Restrictions on new entry into the Mau Zone were implemented in 1998.

Total effort: In 1998 in the MHI approximately 8,500 trips were made with a total catch of 424,000 pounds for an ex-vessel landing value of $1,336,000. This fishery occurs primarily in offshore banks and pinnacles. In the NWHI 332,000 pounds ($894,000) were caught in 1998, below average since 1990.

Seasons: Year round.

Gear type: This fishery is a hook-and-line fishery that takes place in deep water. In the NWHI fishery, vessels are 30 ft or greater and conduct trips of about 10 days. In the MHI the vessels are smaller than 30 ft and trips last from 1 to 3 days.

Regulations: In the MHI, the sale of snappers (opakapaka, onaga and uku) and jacks less than one pound is prohibited. In June of 1998, Hawaii Division of Aquatic Resources (HDAR) closed 19 areas to bottomfishing, and regulations pertaining to seven species (onaga, opakapaka, ehu, kalekale, gindai, hapuupuu and lehi) were enacted.

Management type: The MHI is managed by the HDAR with catch, gear and area restrictions (see above) but no permit limits. The NWHI is a limited access federal program.

Comments: The deep-slope bottomfish fishery in Hawaii concentrates on species of eteline snappers, carangids, and a single species of grouper concentrated at depths of 30-150 fathoms. These fish have been fished on a subsistence basis since ancient times and commercially for at least 90 years. NMFS is considering the possibility of re-categorizing the NWHI bottomfish fishery from Category III to Category II due to concerns for potential interactions between bottomfish fishing vessels and Hawaiian monk seals, although there were none observed during 26 NWHI bottomfish trips during 1990-1993, and none reported. On 12 of the 26 trips, bottlenose dolphins have been observed stealing fish from the lines, but no hookings or entanglements occurred. Effort in this fishery increases significantly around the Christmas season because a target species, a true snapper, is typically sought for cultural festivities.[11] No data are collected for recreational or subsistence fishermen, but their MHI catch is estimated to be about equal to the MHI commercial catch.

Category III, Hawaii tuna handline and jig fishery.

In 1997 a total of 543 fishers made 6,627 trips in the MHI, and caught 2,014,656 pounds and sold 1,958,759 pounds for an ex-vessel value of $3,788,391. This fishery occurs around offshore fish aggregating devices and mid-ocean seamounts and pinnacles. The principal catches are small to medium sized bigeye, yellowfin and albacore tuna. There are several types of handline methods in the Hawaiian fisheries. Baited lines with chum are used in day fishing operations (palu-ahi), another version uses squid as bait during night operations (ika-shibi), and an operation called “danglers” uses multiple lines with artificial lures suspended or dangled over the water. Interactions have been documented for rough-toothed dolphins, bottlenose dolphins, and Hawaiian monk seals.

Table 1. The number of animals injured and/or killed reported to the Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP) compared with data reported from the NMFS Observer Program for the California large mesh drift gillnet swordfish fishery between 2000-2004. The drift gillnet fishery had 20% observer coverage during this period.

	2000		2001		2002		2003		2004	
	MMAP	NMFS	MMAP	NMFS	MMAP	NMFS	MMAP	NMFS	MMAP	NMFS
Species										
Gray whale	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Humpback whale	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
Short-finned pilot whale	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-
Pacific white-sided dolphin	11	2	-	2	-	1	-	-	-	-
Bottlenose dolphin	-	-	1		-	-	-	-	-	-
Common dolphin spp.	17	25	7	7	4	11	7	17	3	7
Risso's dolphin	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	4	-	-
Northern right whale dolphin	4	-	1	5	2	2	0	1	1	1
Unidentified small cetacean	2	-	4	-	2	-	2	-	-	-
California sea lion	13	13	3	2	16	18	4	4	1	7
Steller's sea lion	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-
Northern elephant seal	2	6	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	-
Unidentified seal	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Unidentified sea lion	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-
Unidentified baleen whale	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-
Total Occurrences Reported	52	46	16	17	25	33	13	29	6	16

Table 2. Strandings reported to the NMFS Marine Mammal Stranding Network 2000-2004. hr = human-related strandings.

Species	2000				2001				2002				2003				2004			
	CA	hr	OR/WA	hr	CA	hr	OR/WA	hr	CA	hr	OR/WA	hr	CA	hr	OR/WA	hr	CA	hr	OR/WA	hr
Harbor Porpoise	20	2	6	1	12	4	15	1	20	5	0	0	19	0	34	1	39	3	23	0
Dall's Porpoise	3	0	9	1	2	1	6	0	3	0	0	0	4	1	6	0	4	0	14	0
Pac. White-sided Dolphin	3	0	0	0	6	2	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	6	1	1	0
Risso's Dolphin	6	0	1	0	3	0	0	0	4	2	0	0	5	1	0	0	5	0	0	0
Bottlenose Dolphin	12	0	0	0	14	0	0	0	12	0	0	0	9	1	0	0	13	1	1	0
Common Dolphin (unidentified)	30	1	0	0	33	3	0	0	41	1	0	0	56	1	0	0	11	0	0	0
Short-beaked common dolphin	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	8	0	0	0	10	0	0	0	9	1	0	0
Long-beaked common dolphin	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	45	3	0	0	62	3	0	0	20	4	0	0
Striped Dolphin	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	2	0
N. Right Whale Dolphin	0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	4	0	0	0	2	0	1	0
Rough-toothed Dolphin	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Killer Whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Short-finned Pilot Whale	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Baird's Beaked Whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	2	1	1	0	0	0
Stejneger's Beaked Whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Cuvier's Beaked Whale	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Peruvian Beaked Whale	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Unident. Beaked Whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Unidentified Kogia	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Pygmy Sperm Whale	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	3	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Dwarf Sperm Whale	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sperm Whale	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2	0	1	0	2	1	1	0
Gray Whale	58	8	25	0	5	1	1	0	7	3	1	1	8	3	5	1	18	3	6	2
Minke Whale	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
Blue Whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	2	1	0	0
Fin Whale	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	4	4	2	0	0	0	3	1	0	0
Sei Whale	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
Humpback Whale	4	3	0	0	2	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	2	5	0	0	4	1	1	0
Unidentified Cetacean	1	0	4	1	0	0	0	0	3	0	1	0	6	0	0	0	2	0	3	0
Unidentified Porpoise	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	1	0
Unidentified Dolphin	11	0	2	0	9	0	2	0	29	1	0	0	17	0	2	0	14	0	0	0
Unidentified Whale	1	0	0	0	4	4	0	0	2	2	0	0	1	0	1	0	7	6	0	0
Unident. Balaenopterid	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	0
Northern Fur Seal	3	0	6	0	2	0	1	1	11	0	0	0	5	0	3	2	9	0	0	0
Guadalupe Fur Seal	1	0	0	0	3	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	7	1	0	0
Steller (Nthn) Sea Lion	10	2	5	0	9	0	4	0	6	0	3	0	9	0	16	0	7	1	20	0
California Sea Lion	1268	67	32	5	990	98	27	1	1951	195	8	0	2951	184	51	4	1563	109	125	12
Unidentified Sea Lion	1	0	8	0	0	0	17	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	16	1	0	0	18	0
Unidentified Otariid	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Harbor Seal	230	13	148	8	152	8	170	8	163	18	121	6	211	18	211	7	185	14	325	18
Northern Elephant Seal	211	3	11	0	216	4	11	0	176	7	0	0	299	5	6	0	270	3	8	0
Unidentified Seal	0	0	17	1	0	0	11	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0
Unidentified Pinniped	133	0	8	0	110	0	9	0	291	0	4	0	136	0	45	2	99	1	49	0
Totals for Cetaceans	152	14	48	3	101	18	28	2	189	20	10	5	212	16	58	4	165	23	59	2
Totals for Pinnipeds	1857	85	235	14	1482	111	250	11	2603	220	136	6	3617	207	348	16	2140	129	547	30

Table 3. Characteristics of Category I and Category II gillnet fisheries in California.

Fishery	Species	Mesh Size	Water Depth	Set Duration	Deployment	Miscellaneous
Category I CA/OR thresher shark and swordfish drift gillnet fishery	swordfish/shark	14 to 22 inches	Ranges from 90 to 4600 meters	Typically 8 to 15 hrs	Drift net only	Nets 500 to 1800 meters in length; other species caught: opah, louver, tuna, thresher, blue shark, mako shark
Category I CA halibut and white seabass set gillnet fishery (>3.5 inch mesh)	Halibut	8.5 inch	< 70 meters	24 hrs	Set net	
	Barracuda	3.5 inch		< 12 hrs	Drift net	April – July
	Leopard Shark	7.0 to 9.0 inch	< 90 meters			Fished similar to halibut.
	Perch/Croaker	3.5 to 4.0 inch	< 40 meters	< 24 hrs	Set net	Few boats target these species
	Rockfish	4.5 to 7.5 inch	> 90 meters	12 to 18 hrs	Set net	Net lengths 450 to 1800 meters. Soupfin shark is major bycatch.
	Soupfin shark/white seabass	6.0 to 8.5 inch	> 50 meters	24 hrs	Set net	Few boats target this species.
	Miscellaneous shark	6.0 to 14 inch	< 70 meters	8 to 24 hrs	Drift, some set net	Species include thresher and swell sharks.
Category II CA Yellowtail, barracuda, white seabass, and tuna drift gillnet fishery	White seabass, yellowtail, barracuda, white seabass, and tuna	Typically 6.5 inch	15 to 90 meters	8 to 24 hrs	Mostly drift net	White seabass predominant target species.

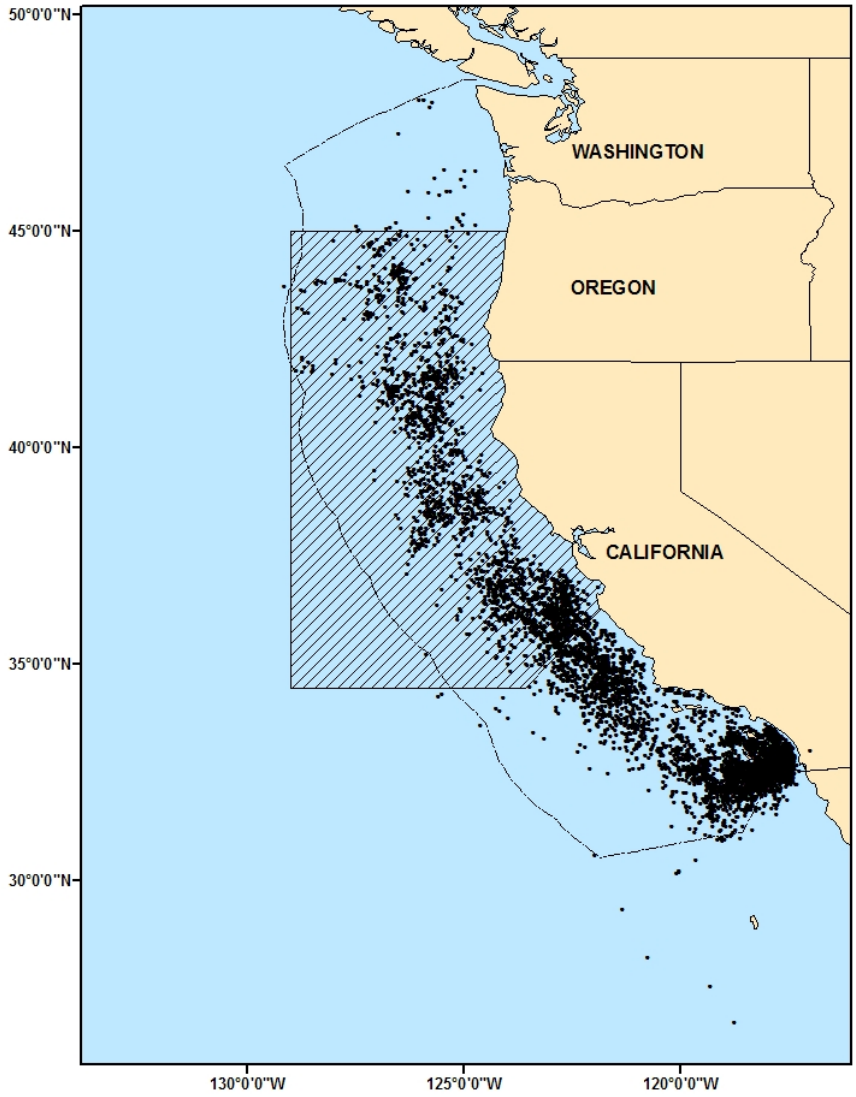


Figure 1. Locations of 7,660 sets observed in the California/Oregon large-mesh drift gillnet fishery for thresher shark and swordfish, 1990-2006. The cross-hatched area has been closed to gillnetting from 15 August to 15 November each year since 2001 to protect leatherback turtles. The outer dashed line represents the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone. Total estimates of fishing effort over this period are approximately 48,000 sets.

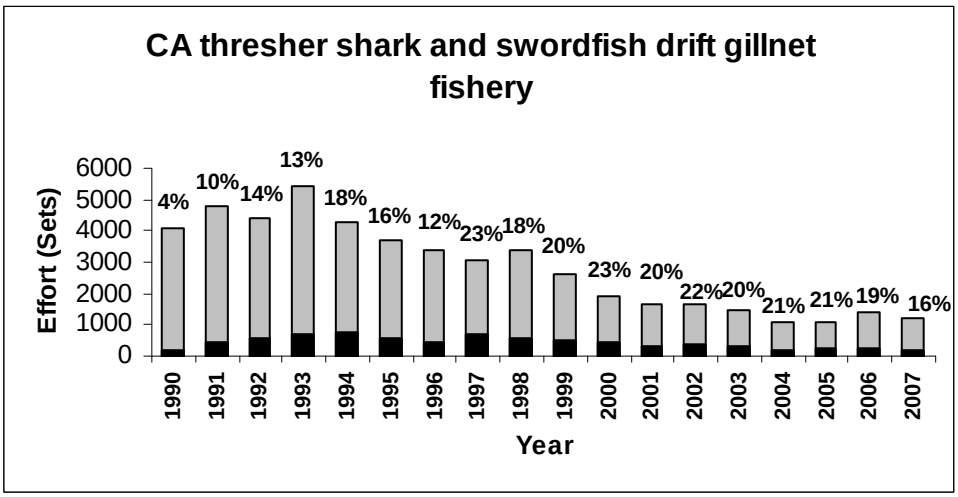


Figure 2. Estimated (gray) and observed (black) days of fishing effort for 1990-2007 in the California/Oregon thresher shark/swordfish drift gillnet fishery (≥ 14 inch mesh). One fishing day is equal to one set in this fishery. Percent observer coverage for each year is shown above the bars.

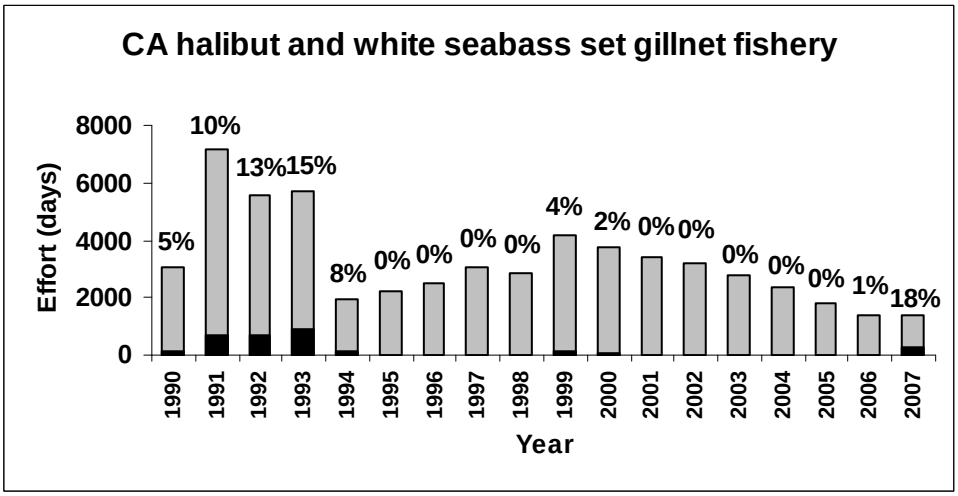


Figure 3. Estimated (gray) and observed (black) days of fishing effort for 1990- 2007 in the California halibut/white seabass set gillnet fishery (> 3.5 inch mesh). The fishery has been observed only sporadically since 1994. Percent observer coverage for each year is shown above the bars. The observer coverage estimate for 2007 is based on the number of sets observed in 2007 (n=248 sets) and 2006 fishing effort obtained from logbooks (n = 1,387 sets).

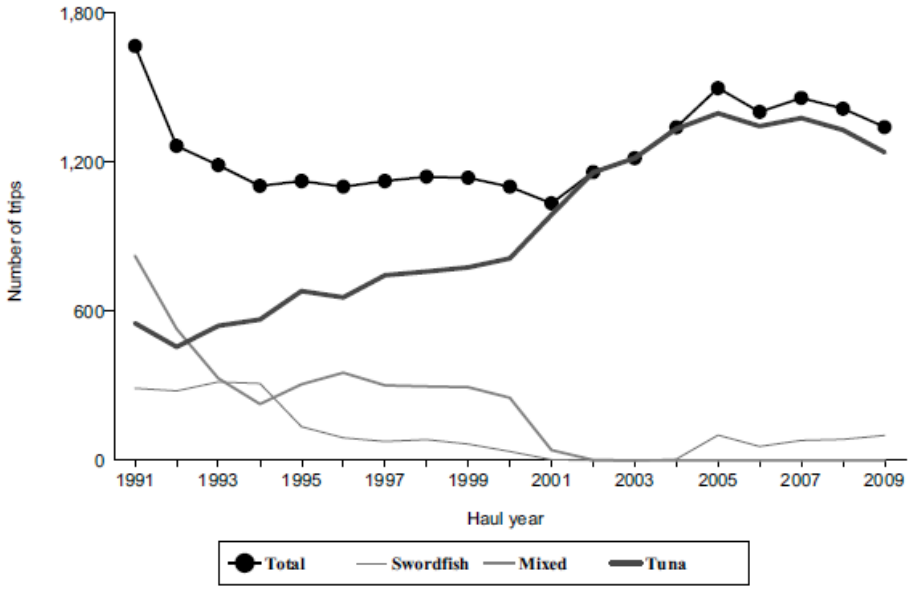
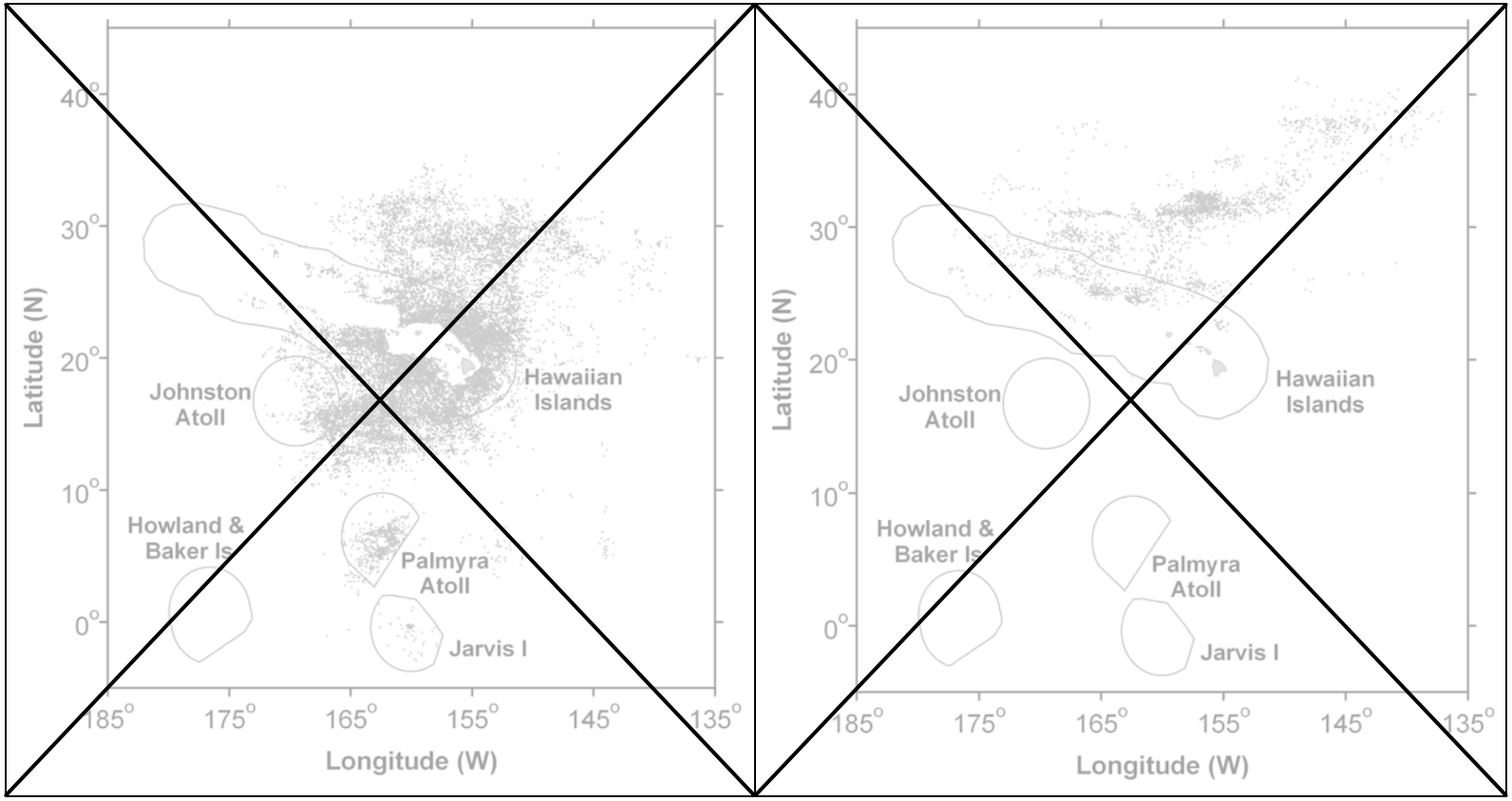


Figure 4. Number of fishing trips by longline vessels based and landing in Hawaii, by year and trip type, 1991-2009. Source: http://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/fmsd/reports.php.



~~**Figure 5.** Observed set locations in the Hawaii-based deep-set (left) and shallow-set (right) longline fisheries, 2002-2006.~~

Appendix 3. 2010 Draft Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports summary.
Shaded lines indicate reports revised in 2010.

Species	Stock Area	NMFS Center	N est	CV N est	N min	R max	Fr	PBR	Total Annual Mortality + Serious Injury	Annual Fishery Mortality + Serious Injury	Strategic Status	Recent Abundance Surveys			SAR Last Revised
California sea lion	U.S.	SWC	238,000	n/a	141,842	0.12	1	8,511	≥232	≥159	N	2003	2004	2005	2007
Harbor seal	California	SWC	34,233	n/a	31,600	0.12	1	1,896	≥389	389	N	1995	2002	2004	2005
Harbor seal	Oregon/Washington Coast	AKC	~~24,732~~	~~0.12~~	~~22,380~~	0.12	1	~~1,343~~	~~≥15.2~~	~~≥13.6~~	N	1999			~~2007~~
			n/a	n/a	n/a			n/a	≥3.8	≥1.8					2010
Harbor seal	Washington Inland Waters	AKC	~~14,612~~	~~0.15~~	~~12,844~~	0.12	1	~~771~~	~~≥34~~	~~≥30~~	N	1999			~~2003~~
			n/a	n/a	n/a			n/a	≥13.0	≥3.8					2010
Northern Elephant Seal	California breeding	SWC	124,000	n/a	74,913	0.117	1	4,382	≥10.4	≥8.8	N	2001	2002	2005	2007
Guadalupe Fur Seal	Mexico to California	SWC	7,408	n/a	3,028	0.12	0.5	91	0	0	Y	1993			2000
Northern Fur Seal	San Miguel Island	AKC	~~9,424~~	~~n/a~~	~~5,096~~	~~0.086~~	~~1~~	~~219~~	~~≥1.0~~	~~≥1.0~~	N	~~2003~~	~~2004~~	~~2005~~	~~2006~~
			9,968	n/a	5,395	0.12	1	324	1.2	0		2004	2005	2007	2010
Monk Seal	Hawaii	PIC	~~1,146~~	n/a	~~1,129~~	0.07	0.1	undet	unk	unk	Y	~~2004~~	~~2005~~	~~2006~~	~~2009~~
			1,161		1,136							2005	2006	2008	2010
Harbor porpoise	Morro Bay	SWC	2,044	0.40	1,478	0.04	~~0.4~~	15	0	0	N	1999	2002	2007	2009
Harbor porpoise	Monterey Bay	SWC	1,492	0.4	1,079		0.45	10	≥1.0	≥1.0	N	1999	2002	2007	2009
Harbor porpoise	San Francisco – Russian River	SWC	9,189	0.38	6,745	0.04	0.5	67	0	0	N	1999	2002	2007	2009
Harbor porpoise	Northern CA/Southern OR	SWC	39,581	0.39	28,833	0.04	1	577	~~≥4~~	~~≥4~~	N	1999	2002	2007	2009
Harbor porpoise	Northern Oregon/Washington Coast	AKC	15,674	0.39	11,383	0.04	0.5	114	≥1.0	≥0.8	N	1991	1997	2002	2009
Harbor porpoise	Washington Inland Waters	AKC	10,682	0.38	7,841	0.04	0.4	63	15.2	15.4	N	1996	2002	2003	2006
Dall's porpoise	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~48,376~~	~~0.24~~	~~39,709~~	0.04	0.4	~~318~~	~~1.6~~	~~1.4~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			42,000	0.33	32,106			257	≥0.4	≥0.4		2001	2005	2008	2010
Pacific white-sided dolphin	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~20,719~~	~~0.22~~	~~17,201~~	0.04	0.45	~~155~~	1.4	1.4	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			26,930	0.28	21,406			193	15.1	10.5		2001	2005	2008	2010
Risso's dolphin	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~11,621~~	~~0.17~~	~~10,054~~	0.04	0.4	~~97~~	~~4.9~~	~~4.9~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			6,272	0.30	4,913			39	1.6	1.6		2001	2005	2008	2010
Common Bottlenose dolphin	California Coastal	SWC	323	0.13	290	0.04	0.5	2.4	0.2	0.2	N	2000	2004	2005	2008
Common Bottlenose dolphin	California/Oregon/Washington Offshore	SWC	~~3,495~~	~~0.31~~	~~2,706~~	0.04	~~0.5~~	~~27~~	~~≥0.2~~	~~≥0.2~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			1,006	0.48	684		0.4	5.5				2001	2005	2008	2010
Striped dolphin	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~17,925~~	~~0.37~~	~~13,251~~	0.04	0.5	~~132~~	0	0	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			10,908	0.34	8,231			82				2001	2005	2008	2010
Common dolphin, short-beaked	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~392,733~~	~~0.18~~	~~338,708~~	0.04	0.5	~~3,387~~	~~77~~	~~77~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			411,211	0.21	343,990			3,440	64	64		2001	2005	2008	2010
Common dolphin, long-beaked	California	SWC	~~15,335~~	~~0.56~~	~~9,880~~	0.04	0.48	~~95~~	~~12.5~~	~~12.5~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			27,046	0.59	17,127			164	13	13		2001	2005	2008	2010
Northern right whale dolphin	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~12,876~~	~~0.30~~	~~10,031~~	0.04	0.4	~~80~~	~~3.8~~	~~3.8~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			8,334	0.40	6,019			48	4.8	3.6		2001	2005	2008	2010
Killer whale	Eastern North Pacific Offshore	SWC	~~353~~	~~0.29~~	~~278~~	0.04	0.5	~~2.8~~	0	0	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			240	0.49	162			1.6				2001	2005	2008	2010
Killer whale	Eastern North Pacific Southern Resident	AKC	85	und	85	0.04	0.1	0.17	0.2	0	Y	~~2004~~	~~2005~~	~~2006~~	~~2008~~
												2006	2008	2009	2010
Short-finned pilot whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~245~~	~~0.97~~	~~123~~	0.04	0.4	~~0.98~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~Y~~	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			760	0.64	465			4.6	0	0	N	2001	2005	2008	2010
Baird's beaked whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~540~~	~~0.54~~	~~353~~	0.04	0.5	~~3.5~~	~~0.2~~	~~0~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			907	0.49	615			6.2	0	0		2001	2005	2008	2010

unk = unknown; undet = undetermined; n/a = not applicable

Appendix 3. 2010 Draft Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports summary.
Shaded lines indicate reports revised in 2010.

Species	Stock Area	NMFS Center	N est	CV N est	N min	R max	Fr	PBR	Total Annual Mortality + Serious Injury	Annual Fishery Mortality + Serious Injury	Strategic Status	Recent Abundance Surveys			SAR Last Revised
Mesoplodont beaked whales	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	1,024	0.77	576	0.04	0.5	~~5.7~~	0	0	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
								5.8				2001	2005	2008	2010
Cuvier's beaked whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~2,830~~	~~0.73~~	~~1,629~~	0.04	~~0.4~~	13	0	0	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			2,143	0.65	1,298		0.5					2001	2005	2008	2010
Pygmy Sperm whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	0.04	0.5	~~undet~~	~~≥0.2~~	~~≥0.2~~	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			579	1.02	271			2.7	0	0		2001	2005	2008	2010
Dwarf sperm whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.5	undet	0	0	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
												2001	2005	2008	2010
Sperm whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~2,853~~	~~0.25~~	~~2,326~~	0.04	~~0.2~~	~~9.3~~	0.2	0.2	Y	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			971	0.31	751		0.1	1.5				2001	2005	2008	2010
Humpback whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~1,391~~	~~0.13~~	~~1,250~~	0.08	~~0.1~~	~~2.5~~	≥ 3.6	~~≥ 3.6~~	Y	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			2,043	0.10	1,878		0.3	11.3		≥ 3.2		2001	2005	2008	2010
Blue whale	Eastern North Pacific	SWC	~~2,842~~	~~0.41~~	~~2,039~~	0.04	~~0.1~~	~~2.0~~	~~1.2~~	0	Y	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			2,497	0.24	2,046		0.3	3.1	1.0			2001	2005	2008	2010
Fin whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~2,636~~	~~0.15~~	~~2,316~~	0.04	0.3	~~14~~	~~1.6~~	0	Y	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			3,044	0.18	2,624			16	1.0			2001	2005	2008	2010
Sei whale	Eastern North Pacific	SWC	~~46~~	~~0.61~~	~~28~~	0.04	0.1	~~0.05~~	0	0	Y	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			126	0.53	83			0.17				2001	2005	2008	2010
Minke whale	California/Oregon/Washington	SWC	~~806~~	~~0.63~~	~~495~~	0.04	0.5	~~5.0~~	0	0	N	~~1996~~	~~2001~~	~~2005~~	~~2008~~
			478	1.36	202			2.0				2001	2005	2008	2010
Rough-toothed dolphin	Hawaii	SWC	~~19,904~~	~~0.52~~	~~13,184~~	0.04	0.5	~~132~~	unk	unk	N			2002	~~2004~~
			8,709	0.45	6,067			61							2010
Rough-toothed dolphin	American Samoa (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.5	unk	unk	unk	unk	n/a	n/a	n/a	2010
Risso's dolphin	Hawaii	SWC	~~2,351~~	~~0.65~~	~~1,426~~	0.04	0.5	~~14~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			2,372	0.97	1,195			12	0	0					2010
Common Bottlenose dolphin	~~Hawaii~~	SWC	~~3,263~~	~~0.60~~	~~2,046~~	0.04	~~0.5~~	~~20~~	~~≥0.2~~	~~≥0.2~~	N			2002	~~2006~~
	Hawaii Pelagic		3,178	0.59	2,006		0.45	18	≥0.4	≥0.4					2010
Common Bottlenose dolphin	Kaua'l and Ni'ihau (new stock)	SWC	147	0.11	134	0.04	0.5	1.3	unk	unk	N	2003	2004	2005	2010
Common Bottlenose dolphin	O'ahu (new stock)	SWC	594	0.54	388	0.04	0.5	3.9	unk	unk	N	2002	2003	2006	2010
Common Bottlenose dolphin	4 Islands Region (new stock)	SWC	153	0.24	125	0.04	0.5	1.3	unk	unk	N	2002	2003	2006	2010
Common Bottlenose dolphin	Hawaii Island (new stock)	SWC	102	0.13	91	0.04	0.5	0.9	unk	unk	N	2002	2003	2006	2010
Pantropical spotted dolphin	Hawaii	PIC	~~10,260~~	~~0.41~~	~~7,362~~	0.04	0.5	~~74~~	~~≥0.8~~	~~≥0.8~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			8,978	0.48	6,701			61	0	0					2010
Spinner dolphin	Hawaii Pelagic	PIC	2,805	0.66	1,691	0.04	0.5	17	0	0	N			2002	~~2004~~
															2010
Spinner dolphin	Hawaii (island) (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.04	unk	unk	unk	N			1994	2010
Spinner dolphin	O'ahu / 4 Islands (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.04	unk	unk	unk	N	1993	1995	1998	2010
Spinner dolphin	Kaua'l / Ni'ihau (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.04	unk	unk	unk	N	1993	1995	1998	2010
Spinner dolphin	Kure / Midway (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.04	unk	unk	unk	N	n/a	n/a	1998	2010
Spinner dolphin	Pearl and Hermes Reef (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.04	unk	unk	unk	N	n/a	n/a	n/a	2010
Spinner dolphin	American Samoa (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.04	unk	unk	unk	unk	n/a	n/a	n/a	2010
Striped dolphin	Hawaii Pelagic	PIC	~~10,385~~	~~0.48~~	~~7,078~~	0.04	~~0.5~~	~~71~~	unk	unk	N			2002	~~2004~~
			13,143	0.46	9,088		0.45	82							2010

unk = unknown; undet = undetermined; n/a = not applicable

Appendix 3. 2010 Draft Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Reports summary.
Shaded lines indicate reports revised in 2010.

Species	Stock Area	NMFS Center	N est	CV N est	N min	R max	Fr	PBR	Total Annual Mortality + Serious Injury	Annual Fishery Mortality + Serious Injury	Strategic Status	Recent Abundance Surveys			SAR Last Revised
Fraser's dolphin	Hawaii	PIC	~~16,836~~	~~1.11~~	~~7,917~~	0.04	0.5	~~79~~	unk	unk	N			2002	~~2004~~
			10,226	1.16	4,700			47	0	0					2010
Melon-headed whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~2,947~~	~~1.11~~	~~1,386~~	0.04	0.5	~~14~~	unk	unk	N			2002	~~2004~~
			2,950	1.17	1,350			14	0	0					2010
Pygmy killer whale	Hawaii	SWC	~~817~~	~~1.12~~	~~382~~	0.04	0.5	~~3.8~~	unk	unk	N			2002	~~2004~~
			956	0.83	520			5.2	0	0					2010
False killer whale	Hawaii Pelagic	SWC	484	0.93	249	0.04	0.5	2.5	~~7.4~~	~~7.4~~	Y			2002	~~2009~~
									7.3	7.3					2010
False killer whale	Palmyra Atoll	SWC	1,329	0.65	806	0.04	0.4	6.4	0.3	0.3	N			2005	~~2009~~
															2010
False killer whale	Hawaii Insular	SWC	123	0.72	76	0.04	~~0.5~~	~~0.8~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	N	2000	2002	2004	~~2009~~
							0.4	0.61	0.60	0.60					2010
False killer whale	American Samoa (new stock)	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.5	unk	unk	unk	unk	n/a	n/a	n/a	2010
Killer whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~430~~	~~0.72~~	~~250~~	0.04	0.5	~~2.5~~	unk	unk	N			2002	~~2004~~
			349	0.98	175			1.8	0	0					2010
Pilot whale, short-finned	Hawaii	PIC	8,846	0.49	5,986	0.04	~~0.5~~	~~60~~	~~0.8~~	~~0.8~~	N			2002	~~2006~~
							0.4	52	0.7	0.7					2010
Blainville's beaked whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~2,138~~	~~0.77~~	~~1,204~~	0.04	~~0.4~~	~~9.6~~	~~0.8~~	~~0.8~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			2,872	1.17	1,314		0.5	13.0	0	0					2010
Longman's Beaked Whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~766~~	~~1.05~~	~~371~~	0.04	0.5	~~3.7~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			1,007	1.25	443			4.4	0	0					2010
Cuvier's beaked whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~12,728~~	~~0.83~~	~~6,919~~	0.04	0.5	~~69~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			15,242	1.43	6,269			63	0	0					2010
Pygmy sperm whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~7,251~~	~~0.77~~	~~4,082~~	0.04	0.5	~~41~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			7,138	1.12	3,341			33	0	0					2010
Dwarf sperm whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~19,172~~	~~0.66~~	~~11,555~~	0.04	0.5	~~116~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			17,519	0.74	10,043			100	0	0					2010
Sperm whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~7,082~~	~~0.30~~	~~5,531~~	0.04	0.1	~~11~~	0	0	Y			2002	~~2004~~
			6,919	0.81	3,805			7.60							2010
Blue whale	~~Western North Pacific~~	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.1	undet	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	Y			2002	~~2004~~
	Central North Pacific								0	0					2010
Fin whale	Hawaii	PIC	174	0.72	101	0.04	0.1	0.2	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	Y			2002	~~2004~~
									0	0					2010
Bryde's whale	Hawaii	PIC	~~493~~	~~0.34~~	~~373~~	0.04	0.5	~~3.7~~	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
			469	0.45	327			3.3	0	0					2010
Sei whale	Hawaii	PIC	77	1.06	37	0.04	0.1	0.1	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	Y			2002	~~2004~~
									0	0					2010
Minke whale	Hawaii	PIC	unk	unk	unk	0.04	0.5	undet	~~unk~~	~~unk~~	N			2002	~~2004~~
									0	0					2010
Humpback whale	American Samoa	SWC	unk	unk	150	0.106	0.1	0.4	0	0	Y	2006	2007	2008	2009

unk = unknown; undet = undetermined; n/a = not applicable